

Owner's Manual

2017 A8

Audi
Vorsprung durch Technik

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi - we value your trust in us.

Your new Audi will allow you to experience the best in groundbreaking technology and premium quality equipment a vehicle has to offer. We recommend that you read your Owner's Manual thoroughly so that you quickly become acquainted with your Audi and make use of all of its features.

In addition to explaining how the different features work, we provide many useful tips and information concerning your safety, how to care for your vehicle and how to maintain your vehicle's value. We also give you useful tips and information on how to drive your vehicle more efficiently and in an environmentally friendly manner.

We hope you enjoy driving your Audi and we wish you safe and pleasant motoring.

AUDI AG

4H0012721BD

Table of contents

About this Owner's Manual 6

Cockpit 7
Cockpit overview 7
Controls at a glance 7
Instrument cluster 9
Multifunction steering wheel 11
Driver information system 12
Time and date display 16
Head-up Display 16
Indicator lights 17
On Board Diagnostic System (OBD) 25

Starting and driving 27
Opening and closing 27
Central locking 27
Luggage compartment lid 33
Child safety lock 36
Power window 37
Sunroof 38
Panorama glass roof 39
Valet parking function 40
Garage door opener (HomeLink) 41

Lights and Vision 43
Exterior lighting 43
Interior lighting 46
Vision 47
Windshield wipers 50
Digital compass 52

Seats and storage 54
General information 54
Front seats 54
Rear seats 55
Head restraints 58
Memory function 59
12 volt sockets 60
115 volt socket 61
Full-length center console 62
Storage 63
Luggage compartment 65
Pass-through with ski bag 66
Refrigerator 67

Warm and cold 69
Deluxe automatic climate control 69

Driving 73
General information 73
Steering 75
Starting and stopping the engine 76
Start/Stop system 78
Electromechanical parking brake 81
Starting from a stop 82
Automatic transmission 83

Trailer mode 89
Driving with a trailer 89
Trailer mode notes 91

Driver assistance 92
Assist 92
Speed warning system 92
Cruise control system 92
Audi adaptive cruise control 94
Audi active lane assist (lane departure assist) 102
Audi side assist 104
Night vision assist with pedestrian and wild animal detection 107
Audi drive select (drive settings) 110

Parking systems 114
General information 114
Parking system plus 115
Rearview camera 116
Peripheral cameras 119
Adjusting the display and the warning tones 124
Error messages 124
Trailer hitch 124

Intelligent Technology 126
Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 126
Brakes 128
Electromechanical steering, dynamic steering 129
All wheel drive (quattro) 130
Energy management 130
Notice about data recorded by the Event Data Recorder and vehicle control modules 132

Infotainment system 134
Multi Media Interface 134
Traffic safety information 134
Introduction 134
Switching the MMI on and off 134
Adjusting the volume 134
Infotainment display 135
MMI operation 135
MMI touch 136
Letter/number speller 137
Menus and symbols 138

Voice recognition system 141
Operating 140
Command overview information 141
Global commands 142
Telephone 142
Navigation 143
Info 144
Radio 144
Media 145

Telephone 146
Introduction 146
Setup 146
Opening the telephone 147
Dialing a telephone number 148
Storing a phone number 149
Accepting/ending a call 149
During a phone call 149
Emergency call functions 150
Opening the directory 150
Searching for a contact 151
Using contacts 152
Importing and exporting contacts 153
Storing a new contact 153
Name tags 154
Memory capacity 154
Additional settings 154
Troubleshooting 156

Audi connect 157
Introduction 157
Setup 157
Operating the browser 158
Overview of Audi connect services 159
Wi-Fi hotspot 160
Configuring a data connection 161
About Audi connect 162
Troubleshooting 164

Navigation 165
Opening navigation 165
Entering a destination 165
Starting/canceling route guidance 170
Operating the map 170
Online map view 171
Additional settings 172
Accessing traffic information 175
Other settings 176
Troubleshooting 176

Radio 177
Accessing the radio 177
Radio functions 178
Other settings 178
Troubleshooting 179

Media drives and connections 180
Introduction 180
Notes 180
SD card reader 181
DVD drive 181
DVD changer 182
Jukebox 182
Bluetooth audio player 183
Wi-Fi audio player 184
Audi music interface 185
Supported media and file formats 186
Troubleshooting 188

Playing media 189
Accessing media 189
Media functions 190
Other settings 190

Rear Seat Entertainment 193
RSE components overview 193
Switching the RSE on and off 193
Adjusting the volume 194
Symbols 194
Audio output 195
Adjusting the sound 195
Restarting the RSE (reset) 196
Display settings 196
Parental control 196

4H0012721BD

Other settings ... 196
Headphones ... 197
Media drives/connections ... 200
Navigation ... 200
Entertainment systems ... 201
Video playback information ... 202
Troubleshooting ... 203

System settings ... 204
Setting the time and date ... 204
Adjusting the sound ... 204
Adjusting the system volume ... 205
Other settings ... 205

Safety ... 207
Driving safety ... 207
Basics ... 207
Correct passenger seating positions ... 208
Driver's and front passenger's footwell ... 212
Pedal area ... 212
Storing cargo correctly ... 213
Reporting Safety Defects ... 214

Audi pre sense ... 216
Preventative passenger protection ... 216

Safety belts ... 218
General information ... 218
Why use safety belts? ... 219
Safety belts ... 221
Belt tensioners ... 224

Airbag system ... 226
Important information ... 226
Front airbags ... 230
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System ... 236
Knee airbags ... 240
Side airbags ... 243
Side curtain airbags ... 245

Child safety ... 248
Important information ... 248
Child seats ... 254
Securing child seats ... 258
LATCH system (Lower anchorages and tethers for children) ... 261
Additional information ... 266

Maintenance and Care ... 267
Checking and Filling ... 267
Gasoline ... 267
Refueling ... 268
Catalytic converter ... 271
Engine compartment ... 271
Engine oil ... 274
Cooling system ... 277
Brake fluid ... 279
Battery ... 279
Windshield washer system ... 281
Service interval display ... 282

Wheels ... 283
Wheels and Tires ... 283
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (A8, S8) 301
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (S8 plus) ... 302

Care and cleaning ... 306
General information ... 306
Car washes ... 306
Cleaning and care information ... 307
Placing your vehicle out of service ... 311

Troubleshooting ... 312
Emergency assistance ... 312
General information ... 312
Equipment ... 312
Replacing wheels ... 313
Spare tires ... 319

Fuses and bulbs ... 322
Electrical fuses ... 322
Bulbs ... 326

Emergency situations ... 327
General ... 327
Starting by pushing or towing ... 327
Starting with jumper cables ... 327
Using the jump start cable ... 328
Towing with a tow truck ... 329
Raising the vehicle ... 331

Technical data and accessories ... 333
Technical data ... 333
Vehicle specifications ... 333
Notes about technical data ... 333

Dimensions 334
Capacities 334
Weights 334
Gasoline engines 335

Consumer information 336
Warranty coverages 336
Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada 336
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 336
Maintenance 336
Accessories and technical changes 338
Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunication or Electronic Systems 339

Index 340

4H0012721BD

This Owner's Manual applies to all versions of this model. It contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings for using your vehicle.

Keep this manual in your vehicle at all times. This is especially important if you loan your vehicle to others or sell it.

This owner's manual describes the **equipment range** specified for this model at the time of printing. Individual equipment options described may only be available at a later date or may only be offered in certain countries.

Some sections in this manual do not apply to all vehicles. When this is the case, the beginning of the section indicates the **validity**, for example “Applies to vehicles: with cruise control system”. Optional or vehicle-specific equipment is also identified with an asterisk “*”.

The **illustrations** are designed as a general guide and on your vehicle may look slightly different than what is illustrated.

All **directions**, such as “left”, “right”, “front” and “rear”, are based on the vehicle's direction of travel.

* Optional equipment or vehicle-specific equipment

▶ The section continues on the next page.

⇨ ⚠ Cross reference to a “WARNING”within a section. If a page number is indicated, the WARNING is located outside of the section.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains additional useful information.

WARNING

Text with this symbol contains information about safety and how to reduce the risk of serious personal injury or death.

Note

Text with this symbol contains information about reducing the risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Text with this symbol contains information on protecting the environment.

Cockpit overview

Controls at a glance

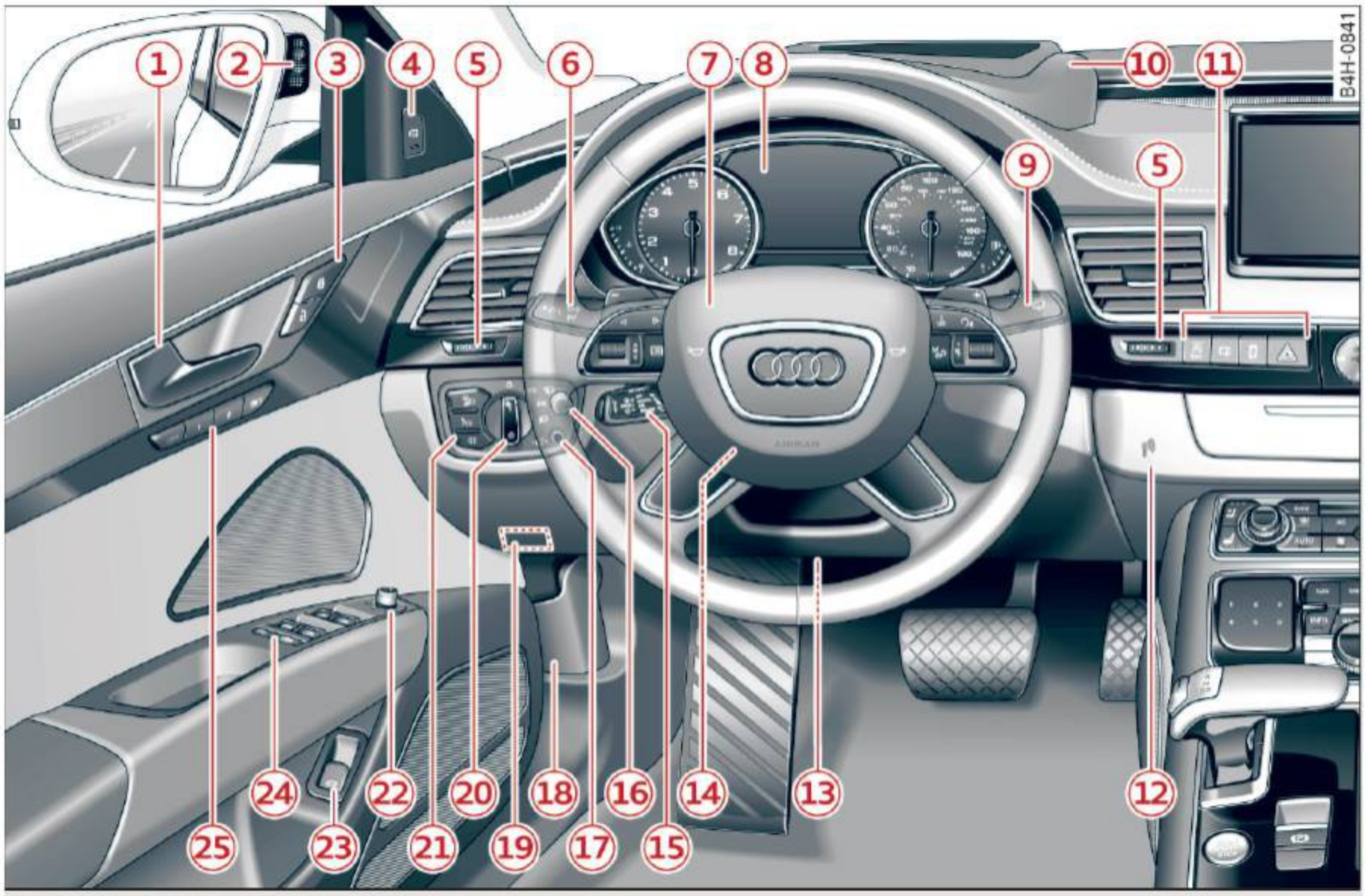


Fig. 1 Cockpit: left section

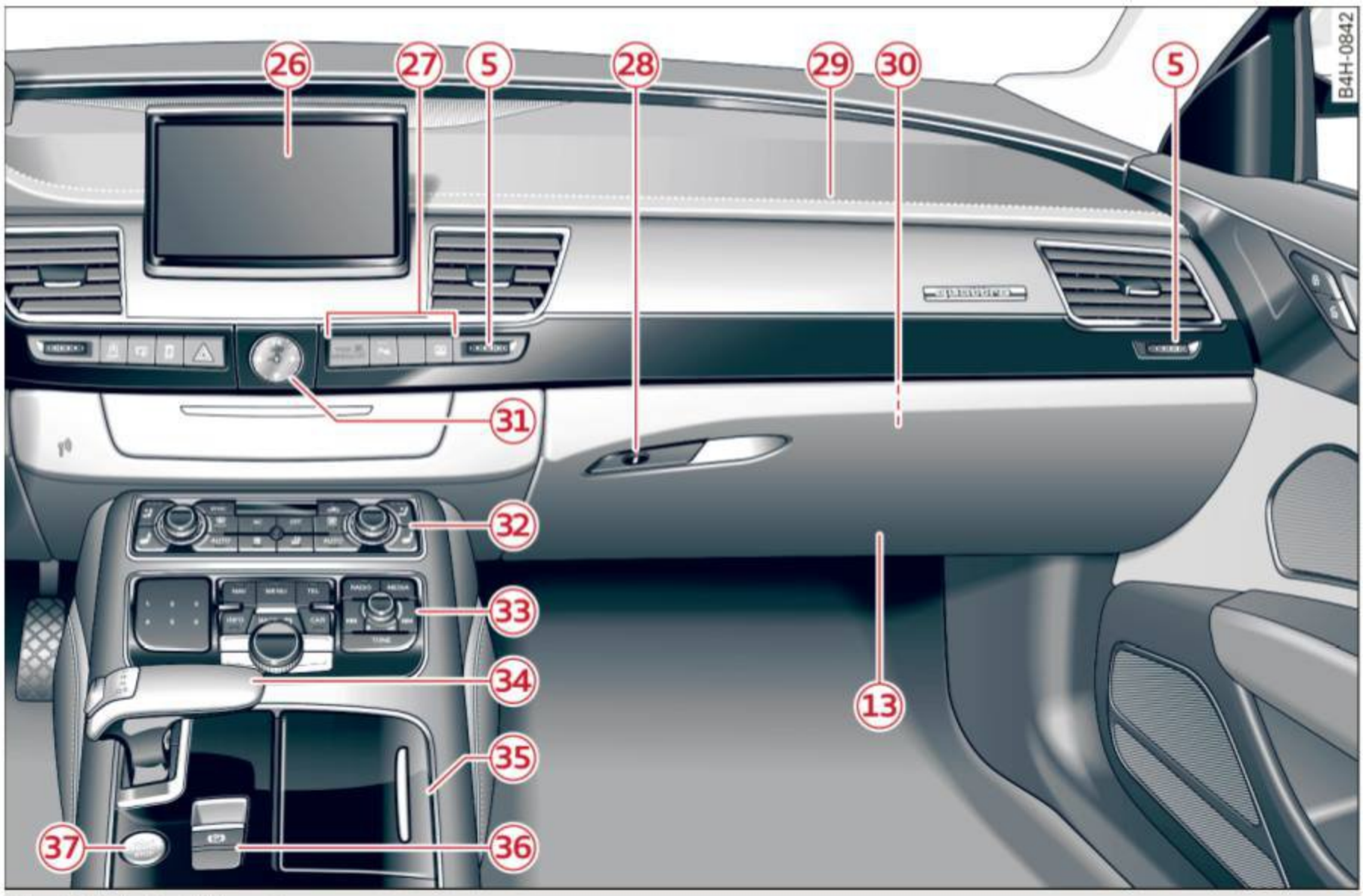


Fig. 2 Cockpit: right section

① Door handle
② Side assist display 104
③ Central locking switch 31
④ Side assist button 104
⑤ Air vents with thumbwheel
⑥ Lever for:
– Turn signals and high beams . . . 44
– High beam assistant 44
– Active lane assist 102
⑦ Multifunction steering wheel with:
– Horn
– Driver's airbag 230
– Driver information system controls 12
– Audio/video, telephone, navigation and voice recognition controls 11
– Shift paddles and M button for manual shifting 86
⑧ Instrument cluster 9
⑨ Windshield washer system lever . 50
⑩ Head-up Display 16
⑪ Buttons/indicator light for:
– Start/Stop system 78
– Extending/retracting the Infotainment display 135
– Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 127
– Emergency flashers 46
⑫ Starting the engine if there is a malfunction 78
⑬ Knee airbag 240
⑭ Buttons for:
– Steering wheel adjustment 75
– Steering wheel heating 72
⑮ Lever for:
– Cruise control system 92
– Adaptive cruise control 94
⑯ Button for switching the Head-up display on/off, adjusting the height 16
⑰ Instrument illumination 43, 47
⑱ Hood release 271
⑲ Data link connector for On Board Diagnostic System (OBD II) 25
⑳ Light switch
㉑ Buttons for:
– All-weather lights 43
– Night vision assist 107
– Rear fog lights 43
㉒ Exterior mirror adjustment 47
㉓ Switch for luggage compartment lid 33
㉔ Buttons for:
– Power windows 37
– Child safety lock 36
㉕ Memory function buttons 59
㉖ Infotainment system display 135
㉗ Buttons/indicator light for:
– PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 237
– Parking system 114
– Power sunshade (rear blind) . . . 49
㉘ Glove compartment 63
㉙ Front passenger's airbag 230
㉚ Valet Parking function 40
㉛ Analog clock 16
㉜ Climate control system 70
㉝ Infotainment system unit 134
㉞ Selector lever (automatic transmission) 83
㉟ Center console with cup holder . . 63
㊱ Buttons for:
– Electromechanical parking brake . . 81
㊲ START ENGINE STOP button . . . 76

Tips

Some the equipment listed here is only installed in certain models or is available as an option.

Instrument cluster

Instrument cluster overview

The instrument cluster is the central information center for the driver.

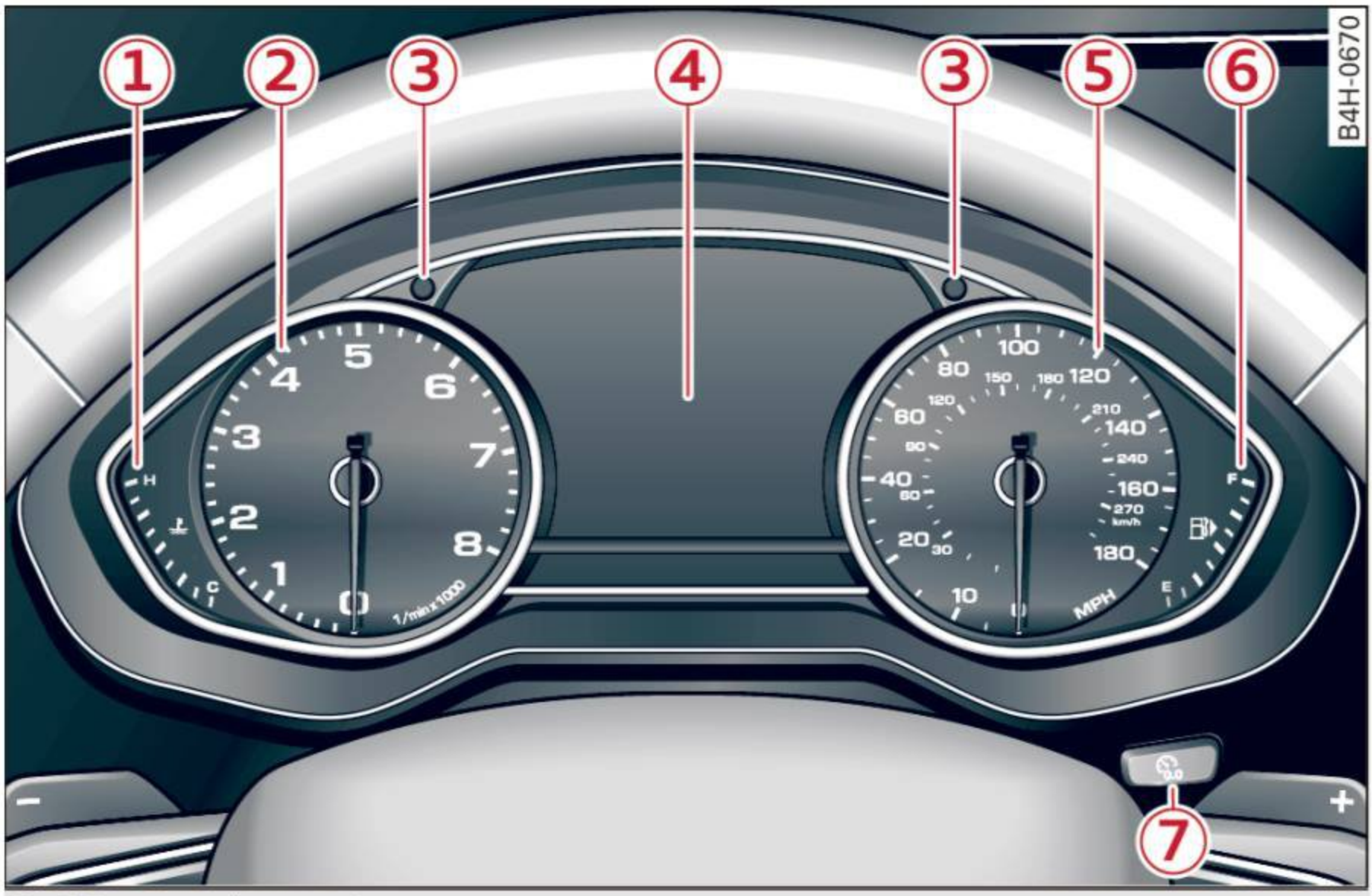


Fig. 3 Instrument cluster overview

① Engine coolant temperature gauge . . 9
② Tachometer 10
③ Turn signals 44
④ Display with
– Driver information system 12
– Indicator lights 17
⑤ Speedometer
⑥ Fuel level 10
⑦ Trip odometer reset button 10

Tips

The instrument illumination for the needles and dials turns on when the ignition is turned on and the lights are turned off. The illumination for the gauges reduces automatically and eventually turns off as brightness outside increases. This function reminds the driver to turn the low beams on at the appropriate time.

Coolant temperature indicator

The coolant temperature display ① ⇨ *page 9, fig. 3* only functions when the ignition is switched on. To prevent engine damage, please observe the following notes about the temperature ranges.

Cold range

If only the LEDs at the bottom of the gauge turn on, the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. Avoid high engine speeds, full accelerating and heavy engine loads.

Normal range

The engine has reached its operating temperature once the LEDs up to the center of the gauge turn on. If the indicator light in the display turns on, the coolant temperature is too high ⇨ *page 20*. ▶

Note

– Auxiliary headlights and other accessories in front of the cooling-air intake impair the cooling effect of the coolant. This increases the risk of the engine overheating during high outside temperatures and heavy engine load.
– The front spoiler also helps to distribute cooling air correctly while driving. If the spoiler is damaged, the cooling effect will be impaired and the risk of the engine overheating will increase. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM).

You should shift to the next lowest gear when the speed is below 1,500 RPM. The beginning of the red zone in the tachometer indicates the maximum permissible engine speed for all gears once the engine has been broken in and when it is warmed up to operating temperature. Before reaching this zone, you should shift into the next highest gear, select the D selector lever position, or remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

Note

The needle in the tachometer (2) ⇨ *page 9, fig. 3* may only be in the red area of the gauge for a short time or there is a risk of engine damage. The location where the red zone begins varies depending on the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Upshifting early helps you to save fuel and reduce operating noise.

Fuel level

The display (6) only works when the ignition is switched on. If the fuel level drops below 4 gal (15 L), a red LED will light up and the indicator light will turn on ⇨ *page 24*. The red LED will blink when the fuel level is very low.

The fuel tank capacity of your vehicle is listed in the **Technical Data** section ⇨ *page 334*.

Note

Never drive until the tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel will then enter the exhaust system. This can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Odometer



Fig. 4 Instrument cluster: odometer and reset button

Upper odometer

The trip odometer shows the distance driven since it was last reset. It can be used to measure short distances.

The trip odometer can be reset to zero by pressing the reset button.

Lower odometer

The lower odometer shows the total distance that the vehicle has driven.

Malfunction indicator

If there is a malfunction in the instrument cluster, **DEF** will appear in the trip odometer display. Have the malfunction corrected as soon as possible.

Multifunction steering wheel

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel

You can operate various MMI functions and the driver information system, change the volume, and turn the voice recognition system on and off with the multifunction steering wheel.*



Fig. 5 Driver information system

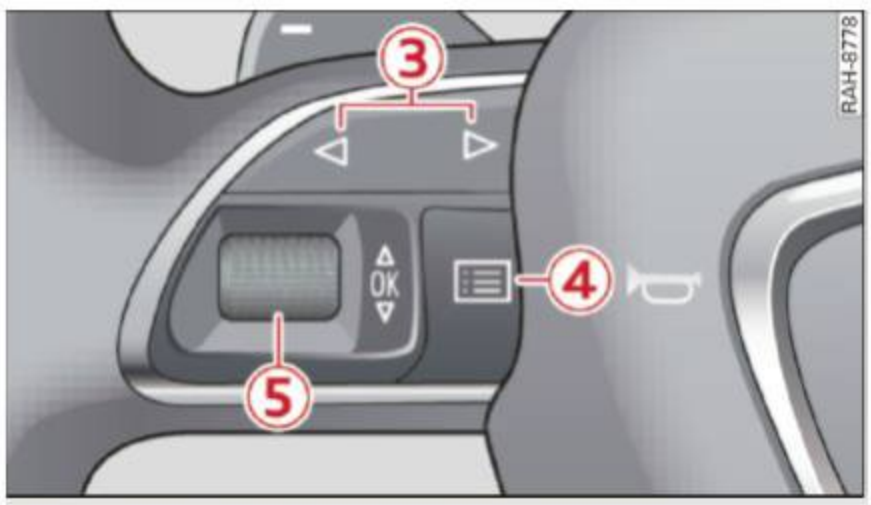


Fig. 6 Multifunction steering wheel operation

Requirement: the ignition and the MMI must be switched on ⇨ *page 134*.

Operating the driver information system

The driver information system contains multiple tabs ① ⇨ *fig. 5* that display various information ②.

The following tabs are available, depending on vehicle equipment:

First tab	Vehicle information, assistance systems
Second tab [a]	Indicator lights, driver messages, speed warning system
Third tab [b]	Night vision assist* ⇨ *page 107*
Fourth tab	Radio/media ⇨ *page 13*
Fifth tab	Telephone* ⇨ *page 14*
Sixth tab	Navigation* ⇨ *page 15*

a) This tab is only visible if at least one indicator light or message is shown or if the corresponding system is switched on.

b) This tab is only visible if Night vision assist* has been activated.

③ Button ◁ ▷

– **Switching tabs**: press the ◁ ▷ button repeatedly until the desired tab is shown (for example, Radio).

④ Button

– **Opening/closing the submenu**: press the button.

⑤ Left thumbwheel

– **Selecting a function in a menu/list**: turn the left thumbwheel to the desired function (for example, selecting a frequency).
– **Confirming a selection**: press the left thumbwheel.
– **Zooming in/out on the map**: when a map is displayed, turn the left thumbwheel to zoom in and out on the map.
– **Quick scrolling through lists**: turn the left thumbwheel quickly.

Additional function buttons

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel

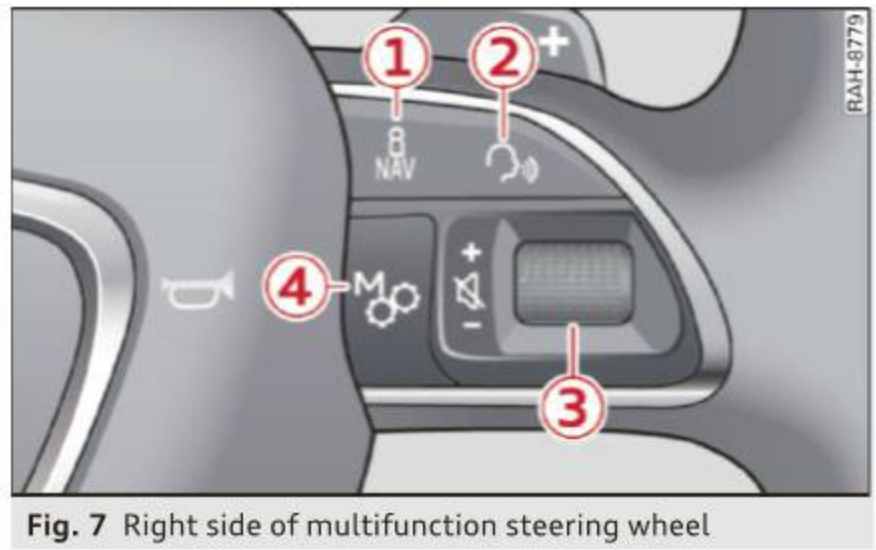


Fig. 7 Right side of multifunction steering wheel

① button

– **Repeating the last navigation prompt**: press the button.
– **Changing the voice guidance volume**: turn the right thumbwheel up or down during voice guidance.

② button

– **Switching the voice recognition system* on**: press the button briefly on the multifunction steering wheel. Say the desired command after the **Beep**.
– **Switching the voice recognition system* off**: press and hold the button. **Or**: say the command **Cancel**.

For more information about the voice recognition system, see ⇨ *page 141*.

③ Right thumbwheel

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or a system message (for example, from the voice recognition system*) when the sound is playing.

– **Increasing or decreasing the volume**: turn the right thumbwheel up or down.
– **Muting or pausing**: turn the right thumbwheel down. **Or**: press the right thumbwheel.
– **Unmuting or resuming**: turn the right thumbwheel up. **Or**: press the right thumbwheel.

④ Manual shifting

See ⇨ *page 86*.

Driver information system

On-board computer



Fig. 8 Instrument cluster: fuel consumption display

You can call up the following information in the on-board computer:

– Date
– Driving time from the short-term memory
– Average consumption from the short-term memory
– Average speed from the short-term memory
– Distance driven from the short-term memory
– Current fuel consumption
– Short-term memory overview
– Long-term memory overview

The short-term memory collects driving information from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If you continue driving within two hours after switching the ignition off, the new values are included when calculating the current trip information.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. You can select the time period for evaluating trip information yourself.

Fuel consumption

The current fuel consumption can be shown using a bar graph ⇨ *fig. 8*. The average consumption stored in the short-term memory is also displayed. If the bar is green, your vehicle is saving fuel through one of the following functions:

– **Recuperation**: electrical energy can be stored in the vehicle battery when the vehicle is coasting or driving downhill. The bar will move toward .
– **Cylinder on demand system***: the engine automatically switches four cylinders (4.0L TFSI) or six cylinders (6.3L FSI) off when lower power output is required and other conditions are met. This change is not noticeable to the passengers. The cylinders will switch on again when higher power output is needed.

Efficiency program

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency program



Fig. 9 Instrument cluster: energy consumers

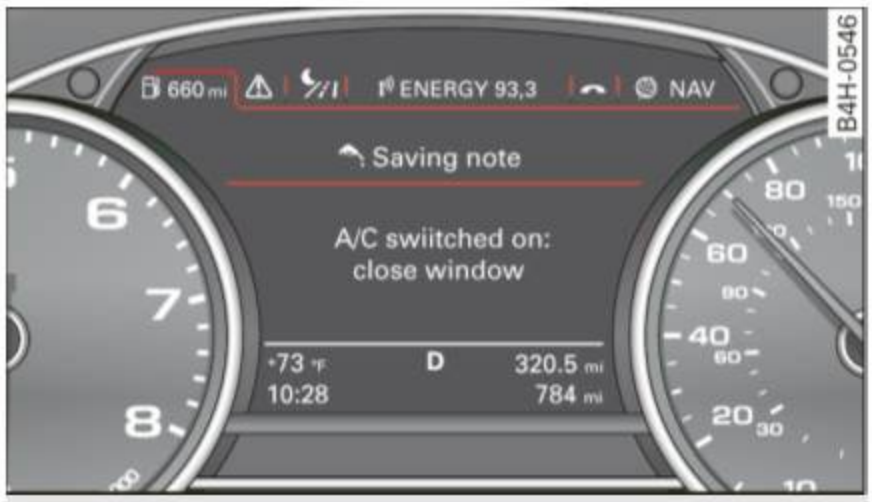


Fig. 10 Instrument cluster: economy tip

The efficiency program can help you to use less fuel. It shows other consumers that are using fuel and economy tips give advice on how to drive efficiently. The efficiency program receives distance and consumption data from the on-board computer.

To display the efficiency program, open the **Vehicle functions** menu and select the **Efficiency program** menu item.

Other consumers

The **Energy consumers** view lists other equipment that is currently affecting fuel consumption. The display shows up to three other equipment items (B) ⇨ *fig. 9*. The equipment using the most power is listed first. If more than three items using power are switched on, the equipment that is currently using the most power is displayed.

A gauge (A) also shows the current total consumption of all other consumers.

Economy tips

In certain situations, economy tips appear automatically for a short time in the efficiency program ⇨ *fig. 10*. If you follow these economy tips, you can reduce your vehicle's fuel consumption.

To turn an economy tip off immediately after it appears, press any button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Tips

- If you erase the data in the efficiency program, the values in the on-board computer will also be reset.
- Once you have turned an economy tip off, it will only appear again after you turn the ignition on again.
- The economy tips are not displayed in every instance, but rather in intervals over a period of time.

Radio

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel

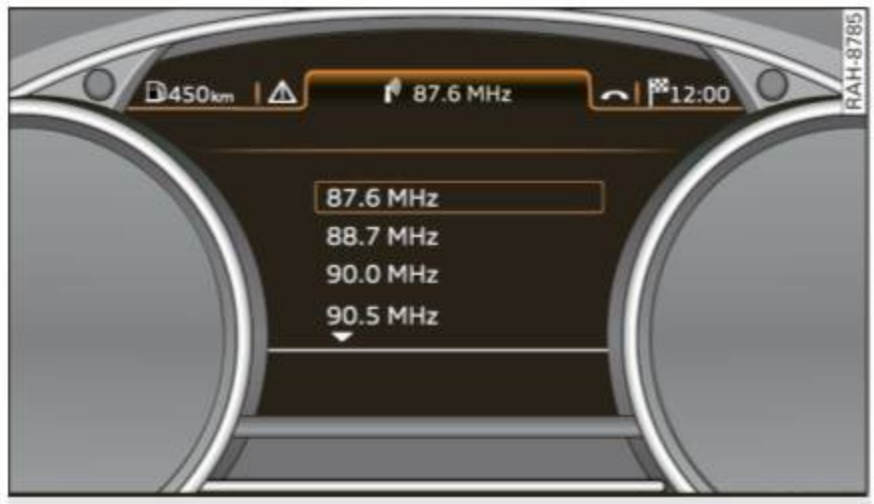


Fig. 11 Radio menu

Requirement: radio mode must be started ⇨ *page 177* and the radio/media tab must be displayed.

▸ Press the [≡] button on the multifunction steering wheel.

- **Selecting the frequency band**: select and confirm a frequency band.
- **Selecting a station from the station list**: select and confirm a radio station.
- **Selecting a station from the presets list**: select and confirm **Presets** and then select a radio station.

Media

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel



Fig. 12 Media menu

Requirement: a media drive must contain audio/video files ⇨ *page 180* and the radio/media tab must be displayed.

- ▸ **Playing an audio/video file**: select and confirm a file.
- ▸ **Pausing/continuing playback**: Press the right thumbwheel. To resume playback, press the right thumbwheel again.
- ▸ **Restarting playback of an audio file**: select the file that is currently playing, if necessary. Press the left thumbwheel.

The following functions are available when you press the ▤ button:

– **Selecting a source**: select and confirm a source such as the **Jukebox**.
– **Selecting a radio station using the source list**: select and confirm a frequency band and then select a station from the station list.

Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel and telephone



Fig. 13 Telephone menu

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 146* and the telephone tab must be displayed ⇨ *fig. 13*.

- ▸ Press the ▤ button on the multifunction steering wheel.

– **Calling a contact in the directory**: select and confirm **Directory**. Select and confirm a contact.
– **Calling a contact in a call list**: select and confirm **Dialed numbers**, **Missed calls** or **Received calls**. Select and confirm a contact.

Directory contacts: the driver information system only displays directory contacts that have a phone number stored. If several phone numbers are stored with a contact, the list of stored numbers is displayed first when the entry is selected. For more information about the displayed symbols, refer to ⇨ *page 150*.

Caller information: the *name*, *phone number* or **Unknown** appears in the driver information system display depending on if the caller has been stored in the directory and if the phone number has been transmitted.

– **Accepting a call**: press the left thumbwheel when there is an incoming call.
– **Ignoring a call**: select and confirm **Ignore** when there is an incoming call.
– **Ending a phone call**: select and confirm **End call**.

Functions during a phone call

– **Making an additional phone call***: select and confirm **Hold** > ▤ button > **Directory** or *an entry in one of the call lists*.
– **Accepting an incoming call when there is an active call and a call on hold**: select and confirm **Replace**. The active call is replaced with the incoming call.

Additional functions:

Mute*: if you select and confirm this function, the other person on the phone cannot hear you. You can hear the other person.

Holding/resuming a call: you can put a current call on hold and resume a call. ▶

Swap call*: you can alternate between two phone calls at the same time. One of the calls will be on hold. **End call** ends the active phone call. A call that was placed on hold stays on hold and can be taken off hold with **Resume**.

Conference*: a call on hold and up to five active parties (depending on the network) can be added to a conference call. To make an additional call, put all participants in the current conference call on hold using **Hold**. If you press the button, you can make an additional calls from the directory or one of the call lists. **Resume** takes all parties off hold.

Tips

- The telephone functions can only be controlled with the multifunction steering wheel if the telephone equipment was installed *at the factory*.
- The telephone and call options depend on the cell phone service provider and the cell phone. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.
- The call options depend on the cell phone and service provider. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.
- The **Call waiting** function must be activated in your cell phone and in the MMI to be alerted when there is an incoming call during an active call.

Navigation

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel and navigation system



Fig. 14 Lane display



Fig. 15 Turn display

Requirement: a destination or a route plan must be entered ⇨ *page 165*, route guidance must be started ⇨ *page 170* and the navigation tab must be displayed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the active route guidance will be displayed in the street view* in the driver information system:

① Total mileage to the destination or stopover
② Displaying an expressway, highway or main road as preparation for an upcoming change in direction
③ Distance to the next maneuver
④ The name of the expressway, highway or main road onto which you will be turning
⑤ Additional information (on-board computer)
⑥ Calculated arrival time
⑦ A bar graph appears when a direction arrow is displayed. The fewer bars are shown, the shorter the distance is until the turn.
⑧ Direction arrow for the upcoming maneuver
⑨ Current vehicle position

The following functions are also available when route guidance is active:

- **Repeating the last navigation prompt**: press the button.
- **Changing the voice guidance volume**: turn the right thumbwheel up or down during voice guidance.
- **Selecting Street view/Arrow view**: press the button and select and confirm **Street view** or **Arrow view**.

If you have not started route guidance, a compass will display in the navigation tab. ▶

WARNING

The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation for reaching your destination. Obey traffic lights, stopping restrictions, one-way streets, lane change restrictions, etc.

Tips

An asterisk "*" in front of the street name indicates that the information about this street or this section of the route is not complete in the navigation data that the MMI contains. Obey traffic laws in one-way streets and pedestrian zones.

Time and date display

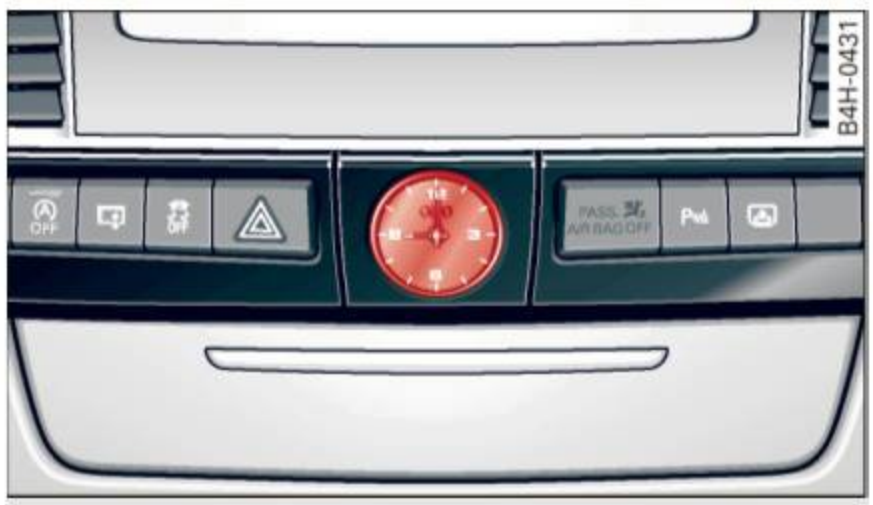


Fig. 16 Center console: analog clock

The date and time are shown in the instrument cluster display. There is also an analog clock in the center console ⇨ *fig. 16*.

When you open the driver's door, the date and time appear in the display for 30 seconds. When the ignition is switched on, the time is always displayed in the status line Ⓒ regardless of the current display.

You can set the time on both clocks and the date (display) in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 204*.

Head-up Display

Applies to: vehicles with Head-up Display



Fig. 17 Example: indicators in the Head-up Display



Fig. 18 Instrument panel: knob for the head-up display

The Head-up Display projects certain warnings or selected information from the assist systems* or navigation* on the windshield. The display appears within the driver's field of vision.

Switching on/off

▸ To switch the Head-up Display on or off, press the knob ⇨ *fig. 18*.

Adjusting the height

The height of the display can be adjusted to the individual driver.

▸ Make sure you are seated correctly ⇨ *page 208*.
▸ Turn the knob to adjust the display.

Settings in the Infotainment system

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Driver assist** > **Head-up display** > **Head-up display contents** or **Display brightness**. ▶

Display content

In the Infotainment system, you can specify which information should be displayed: This could be Navigation information* or Night vision assist*, for example.

The display of certain information and some of the red indicator lights cannot be hidden in the Infotainment system.

Display brightness

You can adjust the display brightness in the Infotainment system. The display brightness decreases automatically as the amount of light decreases. The background brightness is adjusted with the instrument illumination ⇨ *page 47*.

Note

To prevent scratches on the glass covering the head-up display, do not place any objects in the projection opening.

Tips

– Sunglasses with polarization filters and unfavorable lighting conditions can have a negative effect on the display.
– An optimum display depends on the seat position and the height adjustment of the head-up display.
– A special windshield is needed for the head-up display function.
– For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *table on page 308*.

Indicator lights

Description

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster blink or turn on. They indicate functions or malfunctions.

With some indicator lights, messages may appear and warning signals may sound. The indicator lights and messages in the center of the displays may be replaced by other displays. To show them again, select the tab for indicator lights and messages using the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 12*. If there are several malfunctions, you can display them one at a time using the thumbwheel.

Some indicator lights in the display can display in several colors.

Overview

Some indicator lights turn on briefly as a function check when you switch the ignition on. These systems are marked with a ✓ in the following tables. If one of these indicator lights does not turn on, there is a malfunction in that system.

Red indicator lights	
BRAKE	**USA models:** Brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 19*
	**Canada models:** Brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 19*
PARK	**USA models:** Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 20*
	**Canada models:** Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 20*
	Cooling system ⇨ *page 20*
	Engine oil pressure ⇨ *page 21*
	Engine oil level ⇨ *page 21*
	Generator ⇨ *page 21*
	Engine stop while driving ⇨ *page 21*
	Safety belt ✓ ⇨ *page 20*
	Electromechanical steering✓ ⇨ *page 129*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 21*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 22*

	**USA models:** speed warning system ⇨ *page 92*
	**Canada models:** speed warning system ⇨ *page 92*
	Adaptive cruise control* ✓ ⇨ *page 96*
	Air suspension ⇨ *page 22*
	Night vision assist* ⇨ *page 108*
	Night vision assist* ⇨ *page 108*

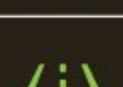
Yellow indicator lights

	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 22*
	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 22*
	**USA models:** Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ✓ ⇨ *page 22*
	**Canada models:** Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ✓ ⇨ *page 22*
	**USA models:** safety systems ⇨ *page 23*
	**Canada models:** safety systems ⇨ *page 23*
	Brake pads ⇨ *page 23*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 20*
	Tire pressure monitoring system ✓ ⇨ *page 301*
	Tire pressure monitoring system ⇨ *page 301*
	Engine control (gasoline engine) ✓ ⇨ *page 23*

	Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) ✓ ⇨ *page 23*
	Engine speed limitation ⇨ *page 23*
	Engine oil level ⇨ *page 21*
	Engine oil sensor ⇨ *page 24*
	Engine warm-up request ⇨ *page 24*
	Battery charge ⇨ *page 21*
	Tank system ⇨ *page 24*
	Washer fluid level ⇨ *page 24*
	Windshield wipers ⇨ *page 24*
	Remote control key ⇨ *page 77*
	Remote control key ⇨ *page 78*
	Battery in remote control key ⇨ *page 29*
	Bulb failure indicator ⇨ *page 24*
	Rear fog lights ⇨ *page 24*
	Headlight range control system ⇨ *page 24*
	Adaptive light* ⇨ *page 44*
	Light/rain sensor ⇨ *page 25*
	Active lane assist* ⇨ *page 103*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 87*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 87*

	Steering lock ⇨ *page 21*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 22*
	Brake booster ⇨ *page 23*
	Electromechanical power steering, dynamic steering* ✓ ⇨ *page 129*
	Air suspension ⇨ *page 22*
	Sport differential* ⇨ *page 25*

Other indicator lights

	Turn signals ⇨ *page 25*
CRUISE	**USA models:** Cruise control system ⇨ *page 92*
	**Canada models:** Cruise control system ⇨ *page 92*
	Adaptive cruise control* ⇨ *page 96*
	Adaptive cruise control* ⇨ *page 96*
	Adaptive cruise control* ⇨ *page 96*
	Active lane assist* ⇨ *page 103*
	Start/Stop system* ⇨ *page 78*
	Start/Stop system* ⇨ *page 78*
	High beam assistant ⇨ *page 44*
	High beams ⇨ *page 44*, ⇨ *page 44*

BRAKE / (!) Brake system

If this indicator light turns on, there is a malfunction in the brake system.

BRAKE (USA models) / (!) (Canada models) Stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance if necessary.

BRAKE (USA models)/(!) (Canada models) Brakes: malfunction! Please stop vehicle safely

If the ABS indicator light ABS (USA models) / (ABS) (Canada models), the ESC indicator light, and the brake system indicator light BRAKE (USA models) / (!) (Canada models) all turn on and this message appears, then the ABS, ESC and braking distribution are malfunctioning ⇨ ⚠.

Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance ⇨ ⚠.

BRAKE (USA models) / (!) (Canada models) Parking brake: System fault! See owner's manual

– If the indicator light and the message appear **when the vehicle is stationary or after switching the ignition on**, check if you can release the parking brake. If you cannot release the parking brake, see your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If you can release the parking brake and the message still appears, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.
– If the indicator light and message appear **while driving**, the hill start assist or emergency braking function may be malfunctioning. It may not be possible to set the parking brake or release it once it has been set. Do not park your vehicle on hills. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Applies to: USA models

If the BRAKE and (!) turn on at the same time, the brake pads are worn out ⇨ *page 23*.

⚠ WARNING

– Read and follow the warnings in ⇨ *page 271, Working in the engine compartment* before opening the hood and checking the brake fluid level. ▶

– If the brake system indicator light does not turn off or it turns on while driving, the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low, and this increases the risk of an accident. Stop the vehicle and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– If the brake system indicator light turns on together with the ABS and ESC indicator lights, the ABS/ESC regulating function may be malfunctioning. Functions that stabilize the vehicle are no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk that the vehicle will slide. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

PARK/Ⓟ Electromechanical parking brake

If the PARK (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) indicator light turns on, the parking brake was set.

PARK (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) Caution: Vehicle parked too steep

If the indicator light blinks and the message appears, there is not enough braking power to secure the vehicle. The brakes have overheated. The vehicle could roll away even on a small incline.

PARK (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) Press brake pedal to release parking brake

To release the parking brake, press the brake pedal and press the Ⓟ button at the same time or start driving with hill start assist ⇨ *page 82*.

Parking brake!

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

For additional information on the parking brake, see ⇨ *page 81*.

Cooling system

Switch off engine and check coolant level!

The coolant level is too low.

Do not continue driving and switch the engine off. Check the coolant level ⇨ *page 277*.

– If the coolant level is too low, add coolant ⇨ *page 278*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.

Coolant temperature too high! Please let engine run with vehicle stationary

Let the engine run at idle for a few minutes to cool off, until the indicator light turns off.

– If the indicator light does not turn off, do not continue driving the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

WARNING

– Never open the hood if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. This increases the risk of burns. Wait until you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping.
– The engine compartment in any vehicle can be a dangerous area. Stop the engine and allow it to cool before working in the engine compartment. Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 271*.

Note

Do not continue driving if the indicator light turns on - this increases the risk of engine damage.

Safety belt

The indicator light stays on until the driver's and front passenger's safety belts are fastened. Above a certain speed, there will also be a warning tone.

Tips

For additional information on safety belts, see ⇨ *page 218*.

Generator/vehicle battery

Electrical system: malfunction! Battery is not being charged

There is a malfunction in the alternator or the vehicle electrical system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately. Because the vehicle battery is discharging, turn off all unnecessary electrical equipment such as the radio. See your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility if the battery charge level is too low.

Low battery charge: Battery will be charged while driving

The starting ability may be impaired.

If this message turns off after a little while, the vehicle battery charged enough while driving.

If the message does not turn off, have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility repair the malfunction.

Engine

Engine stopped: No power steering and brake support.

There is a malfunction in the engine or in the fuel supply system.

More force is needed to steer and brake the moving vehicle when the engine is stopped. If the vehicle is rolling, try to bring it to a stop off to the side from moving traffic. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

WARNING

If the engine stops while driving, you will need to use more force to brake the vehicle. This increases the risk of an accident. There will still be power steering if the ignition is switched on while the vehicle is rolling and there is sufficient battery charge. Otherwise, you must use greater force when steering.

Engine oil pressure

Turn off engine and check oil level

Stop the engine and do not continue driving. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 276*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add engine oil ⇨ *page 276*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.

– If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still turns on, turn the engine off and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tips

The oil pressure warning is not an oil level indicator. Always check the oil level regularly.

Engine oil level

Please add oil immediately.

Add engine oil immediately ⇨ *page 274*.

Add oil max. x qt (l) You may continue driving

Add the displayed amount of oil immediately ⇨ *page 274*.

Steering lock

Do not drive vehicle: Steering defective

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. You cannot turn the ignition on.

Do **not** tow your vehicle because it cannot be steered. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering lock: System fault Please contact dealer

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. ▶

WARNING

Do not tow your vehicle when there is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock - this increases the risk of an accident.

Engine start system

Engine start system fault. Please contact dealer

Do **not** switch the ignition off because you may not be able to switch it on again.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine start system fault. Please contact dealer

There is a malfunction in the engine starting system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Air suspension

Air suspension: System fault Driving slowly at maximum 35 mph is possible.

There is a malfunction that can result in restricted driving stability.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately at a maximum speed of 35 mph (60 km/h) to have the malfunction corrected.

Air suspension: Service mode. Vehicle can only be moved with restrictions

Carefully drive to your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the service mode deactivated.

Air suspension: System fault

There is a system malfunction that can result in restricted driving stability or reduced ground clearance.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Air suspension: Vehicle is too low. Ground clearance limited

The ground clearance is very low due to a system malfunction. Wait until the air suspension system has restored normal ground clearance. Otherwise, conditions such as an uneven road surface can lead to vehicle damage.

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)

If the indicator light blinks while driving, the ESC or ASR (Anti-Slip Regulation) is actively regulating.

If the indicator light turns on, the system has switched the ESC off. In this case, you can switch the ignition off and then on to switch the ESC on again. The indicator light turns off when the system is functioning fully.

If the indicator light turns on, the ESC was switched off using the button ⇨ *page 126*.

Stabilization control (ESC/ABS): malfunction! See owner's manual

If the indicator light and the ABS indicator light ABS (USA models) / (Canada models) turn on and this message appears, there is a malfunction in the ABS system or electronic differential lock. This also causes the ESC to malfunction. The brakes still function with their normal power, but ABS is not active.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

If the BRAKE (USA models) / (Canada models) brake system indicator light turns on together with the ABS and ESC indicator lights, the ABS and ESC regulating function may have malfunctioned. Functions that stabilize the vehicle are no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to swerve, which increases ▶

the risk that the vehicle will slide. Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

For additional information on ESC and ABS, refer to ⇨ *page 126*.

Safety systems

The AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light monitors the safety systems.

If the AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light turns on or blinks, there is a malfunction in a safety system such as the airbag or belt tensioner system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Have the malfunction in the safety systems inspected immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk that the systems may not activate during a collision, which increases the risk of serious injury or death.

Brake booster

Brake servo: limited functionality. You can continue driving. Contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the brake booster. The brake booster is available, but its effectiveness is reduced. Braking behavior may be different from how it normally functions and the brake pedal may vibrate.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Brake pads

Brake pads!

The brake pads are worn.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the brake pads checked.

Applies to: USA models

The indicator light turns on together with the BRAKE indicator light

EPC Engine control (gasoline engine)

EPC Engine start system fault. Please contact dealer

There is an engine control malfunction.

Immediately drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL)

The malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) is part of the On Board Diagnostic system (OBD II). The symbol turns on when the ignition is switched on and turns off again once the engine is started and running at a steady idle speed. This indicates that the MIL is functioning correctly.

The indicator light turns on if there is a malfunction in the engine electronics. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 25*.

The indicator light can also turn on if the fuel filler cap is not closed correctly ⇨ *page 269*.

Engine speed limitation

Applies to: vehicles with engine speed limitation

Maximum engine speed XXXX RPM

The engine speed is automatically limited to the RPM shown in the instrument cluster display. This protects the engine from overheating.

The engine speed limitation deactivates once the engine is no longer in the critical temperature range and you have released the accelerator pedal once.

If the engine speed limitation was activated by an engine control malfunction, the EPC indicator ▶

light also turns on. Make sure that the speed does not go above the speed displayed. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine oil sensor

Oil level! Sensor defective

The sensor to check the engine oil level has failed. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine warm-up request

Please warm up engine

Fuel has entered the engine oil, either from low outside temperatures or frequent short drives. Drive until the engine is warm so that the fuel in the engine oil will evaporate. Avoid high engine speeds, full accelerating and heavy engine loads when doing this.

Tank system

Please refuel

If the indicator light turns on for the first time and the message appears, there are about 4 gallons (15 liters) of fuel left in the tank.

Fuel tank system malfunction! Please contact dealer

There is a malfunction in the fuel tank system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

More information on refueling is available on page ⇨ *page 268*.

Washer fluid level

Please refill washer fluid

Fill the washer fluid for the windshield washer system and the headlight washer system when the ignition is switched off ⇨ *page 281*.

Windshield wipers

Windshield wiper defective

There is a malfunction with the windshield wipers.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Bulb failure indicator

If the indicator light turns on, a bulb has failed. The message indicates the location of the bulb.

If the indicator light also turns on, then a rear fog light has failed. The position of the indicator light corresponds with the location on the vehicle.

Vehicle lights: system fault!

There is a malfunction in the headlights or the light switch.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

- Light bulbs are under pressure and can explode when bulbs are replaced, which increases the risk of injury.
- With HID headlights* (xenon-plus headlights), the high-voltage component must be handled correctly. Otherwise, there is a risk of fatal injury.

Headlight range control system

Headlight range control system: system fault!

There is a malfunction in the headlight range control system, which may cause glare for other drivers. ▶

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Light/rain sensor

Automatic headlights/ automatic wipers: System fault

The light/rain sensor is malfunctioning.

The low beams remain switched on at all times for safety reasons when the light switch is in the **AUTO** position. You can continue to turn the lights on and off using the light switch. You can still control all functions that are independent of the rain sensor through the windshield wiper lever.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Sport differential

Applies to: vehicles with sport differential

Sport differential: System fault

There is a malfunction with the sport differential.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Sport differential: Overheating

The transmission temperature has increased significantly due to the sporty driving manner. Drive in a less sporty manner until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light switches of.

WARNING

Contact your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop if the sport differential is faulty or malfunctioning. The repair must be performed by trained personnel using the correct oil in order to ensure safety.

Turn signals

If the ⇦ or ⇨ indicator light blinks, the turn signals are activated. If both indicator lights are blinking, the emergency flashers are activated.

If an indicator light blinks twice as fast as usual, a turn signal bulb has failed. Carefully drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. The indicator light does not indicate a malfunction if a turn signal on the trailer or on the vehicle fails in trailer towing mode.

Tips

For more information on the turn signals, refer to ⇨ *page 44*.

On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) in the instrument cluster is part of the On-Board Diagnostic (OBD II) system.

The warning/indicator light illuminates when the ignition is switched on and goes out after the engine starts and the idle has stabilized. This indicates that the MIL is working properly.

If the light does not go out after the engine is started, or illuminates while you are driving, a malfunction may exist in the engine system. If the light illuminates, the catalytic converter could be damaged.

Continue driving **with reduced power** (avoiding sustained high speeds and/or rapid accelerations) and have the condition corrected. Contact your authorized Audi dealer.

If the light illuminates, the electronic speed limiter may also be malfunctioning. For more information ⇨ *page 26, Electronic speed limiter*.

An improperly closed fuel filler cap may also cause the MIL light to illuminate ⇨ *page 269*.

On-Board Diagnostics

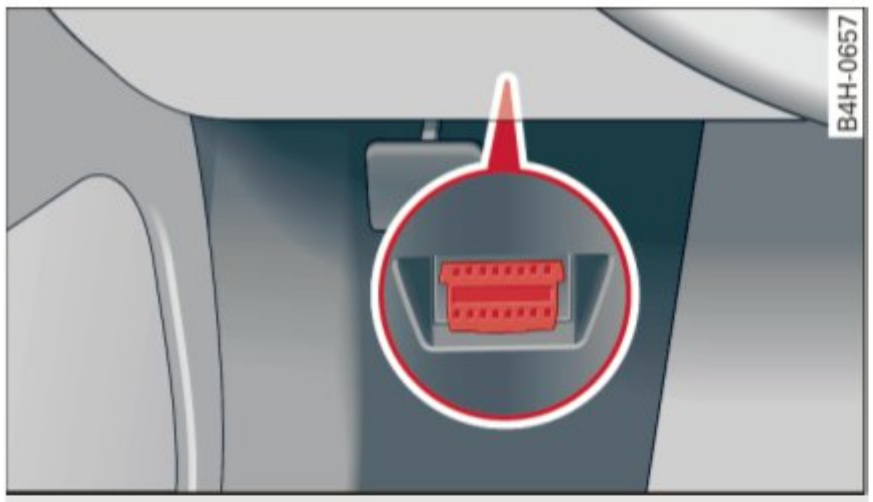


Fig. 19 Location of Data Link Connector (DLC)

On-Board Diagnostics monitors the components of your emission control system. Each monitored component in your engine system has been assigned a code. In case of a malfunction, the component will be identified and the fault stored as a code in the control module memory.

The MIL light may also illuminate if there is a leak in the on-board fuel vapor recovery system. If the light illuminates after a refueling, stop the vehicle and make sure the fuel filler cap is properly closed ⇨ *page 269*.

In order to make an accurate diagnosis, the stored data can only be displayed using special diagnostic equipment (generic scan tool for OBD).

In order to connect the special diagnostic equipment, push the plug into the Data Link Connector (DLC). The DLC is located to the right of the hood release ⇨ *fig. 19*.

Your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station can interpret the code and perform the necessary repair.

WARNING

Do not use the diagnostic connector for personal use. Incorrect usage can cause malfunctions, which can increase the risk of a collision!

Electronic speed limiter

Your vehicle may be factory equipped with tires that are rated for a maximum speed of 130 mph (210 km/h). This is less than the maximum speed of your vehicle. To reduce the risk of sudden tire failure and loss of control if the vehicle is operated at excessive speeds, your vehicle also has an electronic speed limiter. The electronic speed limiter prevents your vehicle from going faster than the tire speed rating. For more information ⇨ *page 290*.

If the engine control unit receives faulty vehicle road speed signals, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) will illuminate. If this occurs, contact the nearest authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

S8

Your vehicle's top speed is electronically limited to 155 mph (250 km/h).

If the engine control unit receives faulty vehicle roadspeed signals, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) will illuminate. If this occurs, contact the nearest authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

WARNING

Always observe the posted speed limits and adjust your speed to suit prevailing road, traffic and weather conditions. Never drive your vehicle faster than the maximum speed rating of the tires installed.

Opening and closing

Central locking

Description

You can lock and unlock the vehicle centrally. You have the following options:

– Remote control key ⇨ *page 30*
– Sensors in the door handles* ⇨ *page 30*
– Lock cylinder in the driver's door ⇨ *page 32*
– Inter central locking switch ⇨ *page 31*

Turn signals

The turn signals flash twice when you unlock the vehicle and flash once when you lock the vehicle. If the vehicle is unlocked and the flashing continues, then

– one of the doors, the luggage compartment lid or the hood is open.
– the ignition is still switched on.
– the selector lever is not in the P position

Auto Lock

The Auto Lock function locks all doors and the luggage compartment lid once the speed has exceeded approximately 15 km/h.

The vehicle can be unlocked if the opening function in the central locking system switch is used or one of the door handles is pulled. The Auto Lock function can be switched on and off in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 32*.

In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors will also automatically unlock to allow access to the vehicle.

Selective door unlocking

The doors and luggage compartment lid will lock when they close. You can set in the Infotainment system whether only the driver's door or the entire vehicle should be unlocked when unlocking ⇨ *page 32*.

Unintentionally locking yourself out

The following conditions prevent you from locking your remote control key in the vehicle:

– If the driver's door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked by pressing the button on the remote control key or touching the locking sensor on a door.
– When locking using the button in the central locking switch, the vehicle will not lock if a door is open ⇨ *page 31*.
– If the most recently used convenience key* is in the luggage compartment, the luggage compartment lid automatically unlocks again after closing it ⇨ *page 33*. The emergency flashers blink four times.

Do not lock your vehicle with the remote control key or convenience key* until all doors and the luggage compartment lid are closed. This helps to prevent you from locking yourself out accidentally.

Closing aid on the doors*

The vehicle doors are equipped with closing aids. When closing a door, you only have to let it fall lightly into the latch. It then closes automatically ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– When you lock your vehicle from outside, nobody - especially children - should remain inside the vehicle. Remember, when you lock the vehicle from the outside the windows cannot be opened from the inside.
– When you leave the vehicle, always take the ignition key with you. This will prevent passengers (children, for example) from accidentally being locked in the vehicle should they accidentally press the power locking switch in the doors.
– Do not leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised. In an emergency it would be impossible to open the doors from the outside without the key.
– Applies to vehicles with power side door closer*:
  – When closing a door, make sure nothing can interfere with the door. This could cause serious personal injury. ▶

– You can stop the door from closing at any time by pulling on the inside or outside door handle.

Tips

– Do not leave valuables unattended in the vehicle. A locked vehicle is not a safe!
– The LED in the driver's door rail blinks when you lock the vehicle. If the LED lights up for approximately 30 seconds after locking, there is a malfunction in the central locking system. Have the problem corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Key set



Fig. 20 Your vehicle key set

Ⓐ Remote control key with integrated mechanical key

You can unlock and lock your vehicle with the remote control key. A mechanical key is integrated in the remote control key ⇨ *page 29*.

Ⓑ Separate mechanical key

This key is not intended for constant use. It should only be used in an emergency. Do not carry it on your key ring and do not store it in the vehicle.

Replacing a key

If a key is lost, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Have this key deactivated. It is important to bring all keys with you. If a key is lost, you should report it to your insurance company.

Number of keys

You can check the number of keys assigned to your vehicle in the Infotainment system. Select: the CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Programmed keys**. This way, you can make sure that you have all the keys when purchasing a used vehicle.

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer prevents unauthorized use of the vehicle.

Under certain circumstances, the vehicle may not be able to start if there is a key from a different vehicle manufacturer on the key chain.

Data in the master key

When driving, service and maintenance-relevant data is continuously stored in your remote control key. Your Audi service advisor can read out this data and tell you about the work your vehicle needs. This applies also to vehicles with a convenience key*.

Personal convenience settings

If two people use one vehicle, it is recommended that each person always uses their own remote control key. When the ignition is turned off or when the vehicle is locked, personal convenience settings for the following systems are stored and assigned to the remote master key.

– Climate control system
– Central locking
– Window and rear shade*
– Interior lighting*
– Memory function
– Parking system*
– Adaptive cruise control*
– Active lane assist*
– Side assist*
– Drive select
– Night vision assist*
– Steering wheel heating*

The stored settings are automatically recalled when you unlock the vehicle, open the doors or turn on the ignition. ▶

WARNING

Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment such as power windows.

Tips

– The operation of the remote control key can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters in the vicinity of the vehicle working in the same frequency range (such as a cell phone or radio equipment).
– Using the mechanical key, you can:
  – Locking/unlocking the glove compartment ⇨ *page 63*.
  – Manually lock/unlock the vehicle ⇨ *page 32*.
  – Mechanically lock the doors ⇨ *page 32*.
  – Unlock the luggage compartment lid using the emergency release ⇨ *page 36*.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 339*.

Tips

Removing the integrated mechanical key

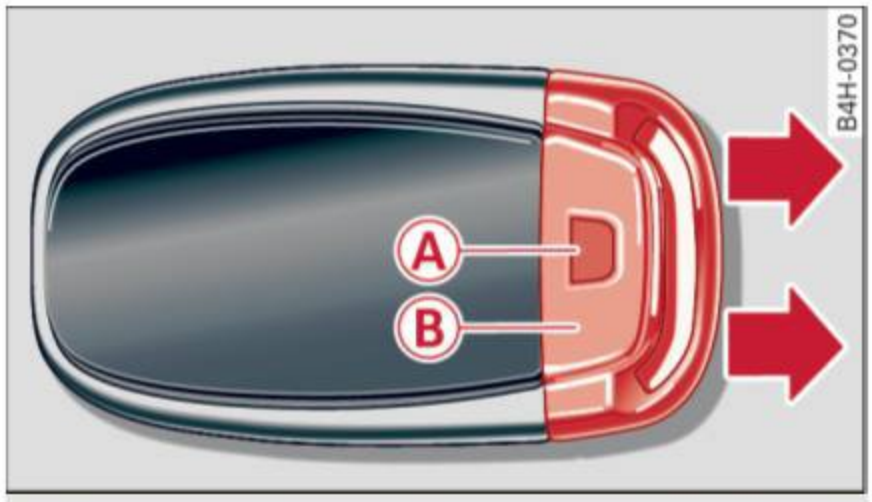


Fig. 21 Remote control master key: removing the mechanical key

▸ Press the release button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 21*.
▸ Pull the mechanical key Ⓑ out of the remote control key.

LED and battery in the remote control key

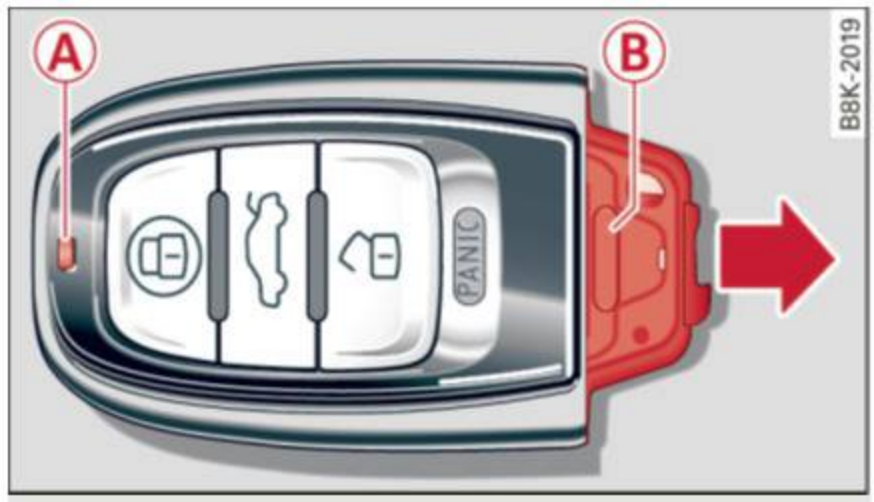


Fig. 22 Remote control key: removing the battery holder

LED in the remote control key

The LED Ⓐ informs you about the function of the remote control key.

▸ If you press a button briefly, the LED blinks once.
▸ If the LED does not blink, the remote control key battery is dead. The indicator light and the message **Please change key battery** appear. Replace the battery in the remote control key.

Replacing the remote control key battery

▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 29*.
▸ Press the release button Ⓑ on the battery holder and pull the battery holder out of the remote control key in the direction of the arrow at the same time.
▸ Insert the new battery with the "+" symbol facing down.
▸ Slide the battery holder carefully into the remote control key.
▸ Insert the mechanical key.

For the sake of the environment

Discharged batteries must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash.

Tips

The replacement battery must meet the same specifications as the original battery in the remote control key.

Unlocking and locking with the remote control

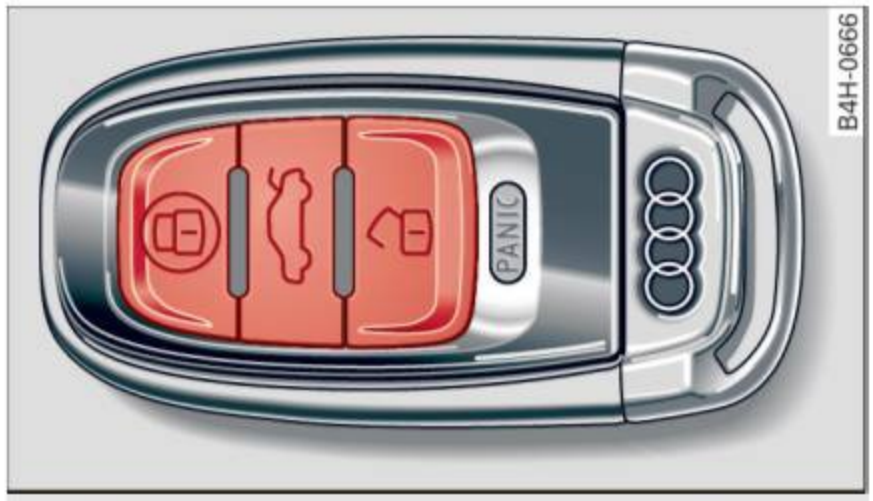


Fig. 23 Remote control key: button programming

- ▸ To unlock the vehicle, press the button ⇨ *fig. 23*.
- ▸ To lock the vehicle, press the button **one time** ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ To unlock the luggage compartment lid, press the button briefly.
- ▸ To trigger the alarm, press the PANIC button. The vehicle horn and emergency flashers are activated.
- ▸ To turn the alarm off, press the red PANIC button again.

If the vehicle is unlocked and none of the doors, the rear lid or hood are opened within 60 seconds, the vehicle locks again automatically. This feature prevents the vehicle from being accidentally left unlocked over a long period of time.

The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the entire vehicle or only one of the doors is unlocked when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 32*.

WARNING

Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 27*.

Tips

- – Only use the remote control key when you are within view of the vehicle.
- – The vehicle can only be locked when the selector lever is in the P position.
- – Do not use the remote control when you are inside the vehicle. Otherwise, you could unintentionally lock the vehicle. If you then tried to start the engine or open a door, the alarm would be triggered. If this happens, press the unlock button.
- – Only use the panic function in an emergency.

Unlocking and locking with the convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

The doors and luggage compartment lid can be unlocked/locked without using the remote control key.

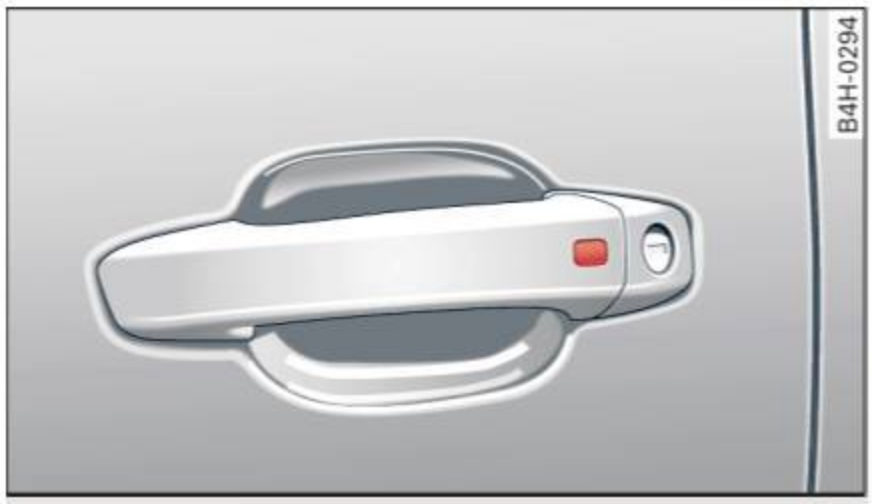


Fig. 24 Door handle: locking with the convenience key

Unlocking the vehicle

- ▸ Grip the door handle. The door unlocks automatically.
- ▸ Pull the door handle to open the door.

Locking the vehicle

Requirement: the selector lever must be in P.

- ▸ To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor in the door handle **once** ⇨ *fig. 24*, ⇨ ⚠. Do not hold the door handle while doing this.

You can unlock/lock the vehicle at every door. The remote control key cannot be more than approximately 4 feet (1.5 meters) away from the door handle or the luggage compartment. It makes no difference whether the master key is in your jacket pocket or in your briefcase, for example.

The door cannot be opened for a brief period directly after locking it. This way you have the opportunity to check if the doors locked correctly. ▶

The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the entire vehicle or only one of the doors is unlocked when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 32*.

WARNING

Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 27*.

Tips

If your vehicle is left standing for a long period of time, note the following:

– The proximity sensor switches off after a few days to save energy. You then have to pull once on the door handle to unlock the vehicle and a second time to open it.
– The energy management system gradually turns off unnecessary convenience functions to prevent the vehicle battery from draining and to maintain the vehicle's ability to start for as long as possible. You may not be able to unlock your vehicle using the convenience key.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 339*.

Central locking switch



Fig. 25 Driver's door: central locking switch



Fig. 26 Rear doors: central locking switch

▸ To lock the vehicle, press the 🔒 button ⇨ *fig. 25* or ⇨ *fig. 26*, ⇨ ⚠.
▸ To unlock the vehicle, press the 🔓 button .

When locking the vehicle with the central locking switch, the following applies:

– Opening the door and the luggage compartment lid from the *outside* is not possible (for security reasons, such as when stopped at a light).
– The LED in the central locking switch turns on when all doors are closed and locked.
– Front doors: you can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the door handle.
– Rear doors: to unlock the doors, pull on the door handle *one time*. To open the doors, pull on the door handle *again*.
– In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors unlock automatically to allow access to the vehicle.

WARNING

– The central locking switch also works when the ignition is switched off and automatically locks the entire vehicle when the 🔒 button is pressed.
– The central locking switch is inoperative when the vehicle is locked from the outside.
– Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk. Do not leave anyone behind in the vehicle, especially children.

Tips

Your vehicle locks automatically when it reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h) (Auto Lock) ⇨ *page 27*. You can unlock the vehicle ▶

again using the button in the central locking switch.

Setting the central locking system

In the Infotainment system, you can set which doors the central locking system will unlock.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **(Central locking)**.

Lock when driving - if you select **On**, the entire vehicle will lock automatically when the speed reaches 9 mph (15 km/h). All of the doors and the luggage compartment lid lock.

Central locking

Unlock doors - you can set which doors are unlocked:

– If you select **All** and press the button one time on the remote control key, all of the doors and the luggage compartment will unlock.
– If you select **Driver** and then press the button one time on the remote control key, only the driver's door will unlock. In vehicles with a convenience key, only the door whose handle you pull will unlock. If you press the button twice, the entire vehicle will unlock.

If you press the button, the entire vehicle will always lock.

Lock exterior trunk handle - if you select **On**, opening the luggage compartment lid by the handle is disabled. In this case, the luggage compartment lid can be opened with the button on the remote control key or with the button in the driver's door. In vehicles with a convenience key*, you can still open the luggage compartment lid using the handle if an authorized remote control key is near the proximity sensor*.

Fold mirrors* - if you select **On**, the exterior rearview mirrors fold in automatically when you press the button on the remote control key or touch the sensor* in the handle.

Tone when locking - if you select **On**, a tone will sound when you lock the vehicle.

Emergency locking and unlocking the doors

Each door must be locked separately if the power locking system fails.

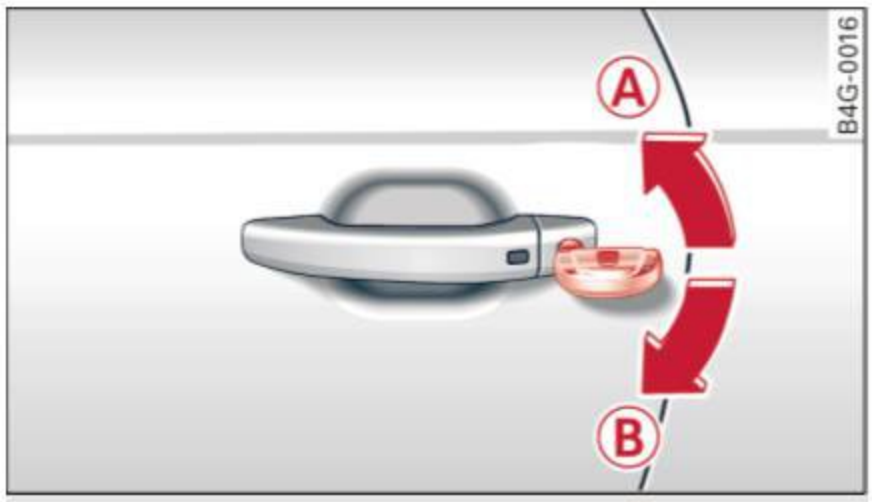


Fig. 27 Driver's door: door lock cylinder

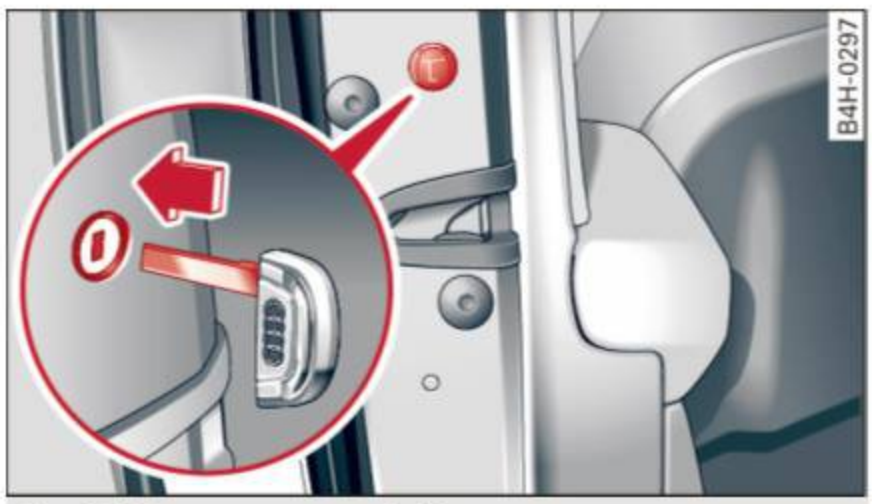


Fig. 28 Door: emergency locking

If the central locking system malfunctions, you can unlock/lock the doors separately using the mechanical key.

Unlocking/locking the driver's door with the mechanical key

▸ Remove the integrated mechanical key ⇨ *page 29* or use the separate mechanical key.
▸ To unlock the driver's door, turn the key to the open position Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 27*.
▸ To lock the driver's door, select the Ⓟ position and turn the key once to the closing position Ⓑ ⇨ ⚠.

Locking the front passenger's door/rear doors with the mechanical key

An emergency lock is located on the front end of the front passenger's door and the rear doors. It is only visible when the door is open.

▸ Remove the integrated mechanical key ⇨ *page 29* or use the separate mechanical key.
▸ Pull the cap out of the opening ⇨ *fig. 28*. ▶

▸ Insert the key in the inside slot and turn it all the way to the right (right door) or left (left door).

Once the front passenger's door/rear doors close, it is no longer possible to open them from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle. If the child safety lock in one of the rear doors is activated, you must first pull the door handle from the inside. Then you can open the door from the outside.

WARNING

Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 27.*

Anti-theft alarm system

If the anti-theft alarm system detects a vehicle break-in, audio and visual warning signals are triggered. The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked as usual. It switches off when the vehicle is unlocked.

If the alarm is triggered, it will shut off automatically after a certain amount of time. Switch the ignition on or press the 🔒 button on the remote control key to turn off the alarm.

Luggage compartment lid

Opening/closing the luggage compartment lid



Fig. 29 Driver's door: unlocking the luggage compartment lid



Fig. 30 Handle in the rear lid

Opening the luggage compartment lid

▸ Briefly press the button on the remote control key. The rear lid will unlock.
▸ Press the button on the remote control key for at least several seconds to open the luggage compartment lid. Or
▸ Pull the button in the driver's door ⇨ *fig. 29* briefly. Or
▸ Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *fig. 30*.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

▸ Pull down the luggage compartment lid at the grip and let it close using a gentle push ⇨ ⚠.

The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the luggage compartment lid can be opened using the handle ⇨ *page 32*.

WARNING

– After closing the luggage compartment lid, make sure that it is latched. Otherwise the luggage compartment lid could open suddenly when driving, which increases the risk of an accident.
– Never drive with the luggage compartment lid ajar or open, because poisonous gases can enter the vehicle interior and create the risk of asphyxiation.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended when the luggage compartment lid is open. A child could climb into the vehicle through the luggage compartment. If the luggage compartment lid was then closed, the child would be trapped in the vehicle and unable to escape. To reduce the risk of injury, do not allow children to play in or around the ▸

vehicle. Always keep the luggage compartment lid and the doors closed when the vehicle is not in use.
– Always make sure no one is in the luggage compartment lid's range of motion when it is closing, especially near the hinges. Fingers or hands could be pinched.

Tips

When the vehicle is locked, the luggage compartment lid can be unlocked separately by pressing the button on the remote control key. The luggage compartment lid locks automatically when it is closed again.

Automatic luggage compartment lid

Applies to: vehicles with automatic luggage compartment lid

The luggage compartment lid can be opened and closed automatically.

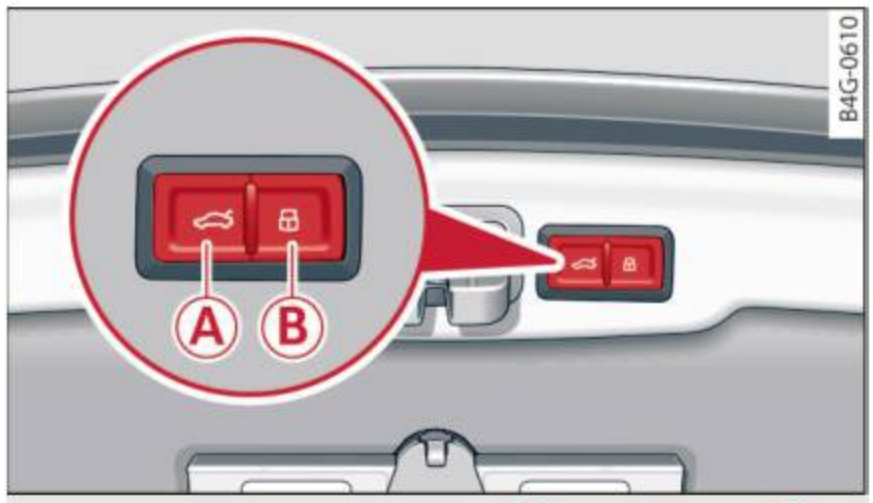


Fig. 31 Luggage compartment lid: Ⓐ closing button, Ⓑ lock button (vehicles with convenience key*)

Opening the luggage compartment lid

- Press and hold the button on the remote control key for at least one second. Or
- Pull the button in the driver's door briefly ⇨ *page 33, fig. 29*. Or
- Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *page 33, fig. 30*.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

- Pull the button in the driver's door until the luggage compartment lid is closed ⇨ ⚠. Or
- Press the button in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *fig. 31*. The luggage compartment lid will go down automatically and close ⇨ ⚠. Or
- Press and hold the button on the remote control key until the luggage compartment lid is closed (vehicles with convenience key*) ⇨ ⚠. Or
- Press the button ⇨ *fig. 31* in the luggage compartment lid (vehicles with convenience key*). The remote control key must not be more than approximately 4 ft (1.5 m) away from the luggage compartment and it must not be inside the vehicle. The luggage compartment lid will automatically close and lock. The vehicle locks ⇨ ⚠. Or
- Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid. The luggage compartment lid will go down automatically and close ⇨ ⚠.

The opening/closing process will stop immediately if:

– You pull/release the button in the driver's door, or
– You press/release the button on the remote control key (vehicles with convenience key*), or
– You press the or button (vehicles with convenience key*) in the luggage compartment lid, or
– You push the handle in the luggage compartment lid, or
– You press against the luggage compartment lid against the direction it is moving, or
– When something blocks the luggage compartment lid or makes it difficult for the lid to move.

If you press the handle or one of the or buttons (vehicles with convenience key*) now, the luggage compartment lid will either open or close, depending on what angle it is at.

WARNING

– Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 27*.
– After closing the luggage compartment lid, always pull up on it to make sure that it is properly closed. Otherwise it could open suddenly when the vehicle is moving.
– To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the luggage compartment lid closed while ▶

driving. Never transport objects larger than those which fit completely into the luggage area, because then the luggage compartment lid cannot be fully closed.

– Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the luggage compartment lid left open. A child could crawl into the car through the luggage compartment and pull the lid shut, becoming trapped and unable to get out. To reduce the risk of personal injury, never let children play in or around your vehicle. Always keep the luggage compartment lid as well as the vehicle doors closed when not in use.
– Never close the luggage compartment lid inattentively or without checking first. Although the closing force of the luggage compartment lid is limited, you can still seriously injure yourself or others.
– Always ensure that no one is within range of the luggage compartment lid when it is moving, in particular close to the hinges and the upper and lower edges - fingers or hands can be pinched.
– Never try to interfere with the luggage compartment lid or help it when it is being opened or closed automatically.

Tips

– The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the luggage compartment lid can be opened using the handle ⇨ *page 32*.
– When the vehicle is locked, the luggage compartment lid can be unlocked separately by pressing the button on the remote control key. The luggage compartment lid locks automatically when it is closed again.
– You can close the luggage compartment lid using the remote control key (vehicles with convenience key*) up to a distance of approximately 9 feet (3 m).
– The luggage compartment lid can be operated manually if the vehicle battery is low. It is necessary to use more force when doing this. Move the lid slowly to reduce the amount of force needed.

Opening the luggage compartment lid with foot motion activation (kicking movement)

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key and sensor-controlled luggage compartment lid



Fig. 32 Rear of the vehicle: foot movement

Requirements: you must be carrying your vehicle key with you. You must be standing at the center behind the luggage compartment lid. The distance to the rear of the vehicle must be at least 8 in (20 cm). The ignition must be switched off. Make sure you have firm footing.

▸ Move your foot back and forth below the bumper ⇨ *fig. 32*. Do not touch the bumper. Once the system recognizes the movement, the luggage compartment lid will open.

The luggage compartment lid will only open if you make the movement as described. This prevents the luggage compartment lid from opening due to similar movements, such as when you walk between the rear of the vehicle and your garage door.

General information

In some situations, the function may be limited or temporarily unavailable. This may happen if:

– the luggage compartment lid was closed immediately before.
– you park close to a hedge and the branches move back and forth under the vehicle for a long period of time.
– you clean your vehicle, for example with a pressure washer or in a car wash.
– there is heavy rain.
– the bumper is very dirty, for example after driving on salt-covered roads. ▶

– there is interference to the radio signal from the vehicle key, such as from cell phones or remote controls.

Emergency unlocking the luggage compartment lid

In the event that the central locking system malfunctions, the luggage compartment lid can be opened at the lock cylinder.



Fig. 33 Luggage compartment lid: mechanical key in lock cylinder

- ▸ Remove the integrated mechanical key ⇨ *page 29* or use the separate mechanical key.
- ▸ Insert the mechanical key in the lock cylinder as pictured.
- ▸ Turn the key approximately 45° to the right ⇨ *fig. 33*. The luggage compartment lid opens.

The key cannot be pulled out in the released position.

WARNING

– After closing the luggage compartment lid, make sure that it is latched. The luggage compartment lid could otherwise open suddenly while driving, even if the lock cylinder is closed. This would increase the risk of an accident.
– Never drive with the luggage compartment lid ajar or open, because poisonous gases can enter the vehicle interior and create the risk of asphyxiation.

Opening the luggage compartment lid from the inside in an emergency



Fig. 34 Inner luggage compartment lid: lever

- ▸ Pull the lever downward ⇨ *fig. 34*.

Tips

Never close the luggage compartment lid using the emergency handle.

Child safety lock

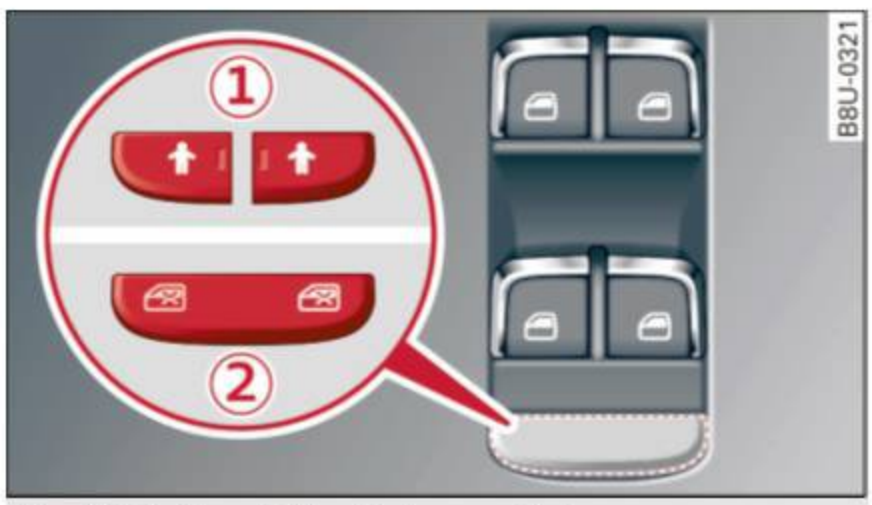


Fig. 35 Section of driver's door: controls



Fig. 36 Rear door: child safety lock

Vehicles with button

- ▸ To activate/deactivate the inner door handle and the power window switch for the respective rear door, press the left/right button in the ▸

driver's door (1) ⇨ *fig. 35*. The indicator light in the button turns on/blinks.

- ▸ To activate/deactivate the child safety lock on both sides, you must press the button one after the other.

Vehicles with button

- ▸ To deactivate/activate the power window switch in the rear doors, press the button in the driver's door (2) ⇨ *fig. 35*. The indicator light in the button turns on/blinks.
- ▸ To also deactivate/activate the inner door handle, open the respective rear door and turn the key switch with the mechanical key in the direction of the arrow or opposite the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 36*.

The following functions are also turned off when the child safety lock is activated:

– The buttons for the sun shade* in the rear window.
– The buttons for the power sun shades* in the side windows.
– The button for the front passenger seat adjustment* (for vehicles with the button when the child safety lock is activated for the rear door on the passenger's side).

WARNING

Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment (such as power windows), which increases the risk of an accident.

Power window

Controls

The driver can control all power windows.

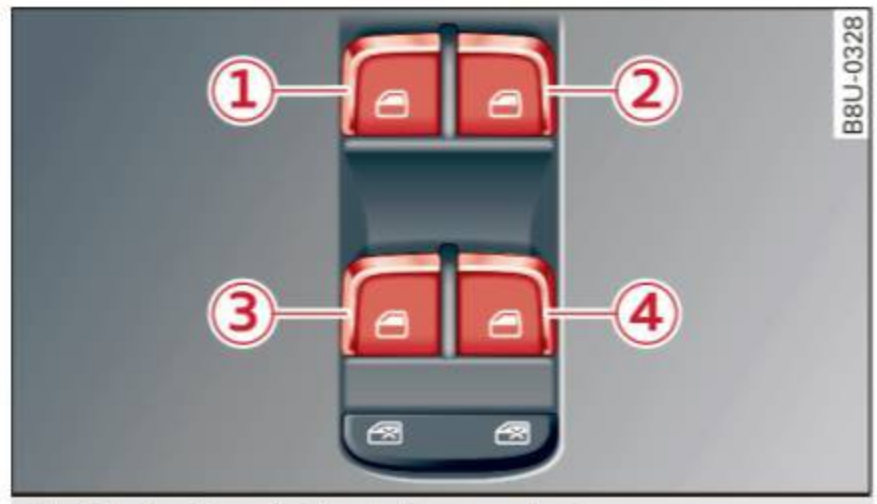


Fig. 37 Section of driver's door: controls

All power window switches are equipped with a two-stage function:

Opening and closing the windows

- ▸ To open or close the window completely, press the switch down or pull the switch up briefly to the second level. The operation will stop if the switch is pressed/pulled again.
- ▸ To select a position in between opened and closed, press/pull the switch to the first level until the desired window position is reached.

Power window switches

(1) Left front door
(2) Right front door
(3) Left rear door
(4) Right rear door

WARNING

– Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment such as power windows, which increases the risk of injury. The power windows continue to function until the driver's door or front passenger's door has been opened.
– Pay careful attention when closing the windows. Pinching could cause serious injuries. ▶

– When locking the vehicle from outside, the vehicle must be unoccupied since the windows can no longer be opened in an emergency.

Tips

– Using switches (3) and (4), the driver can also operate the power sun shades* in the side windows.
– After turning the ignition off you can still open and close the windows for approximately 10 minutes. The power windows do not switch off until the driver's door or front passenger's door has been opened.

Correcting power window malfunctions

You can reactivate the one-touch up/down function if it malfunctions.

- ▸ Pull the power window switch up until the window is completely raised.
- ▸ Release the switch and pull it up again for at least one second.

Sunroof

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with sliding/tilting sunroof

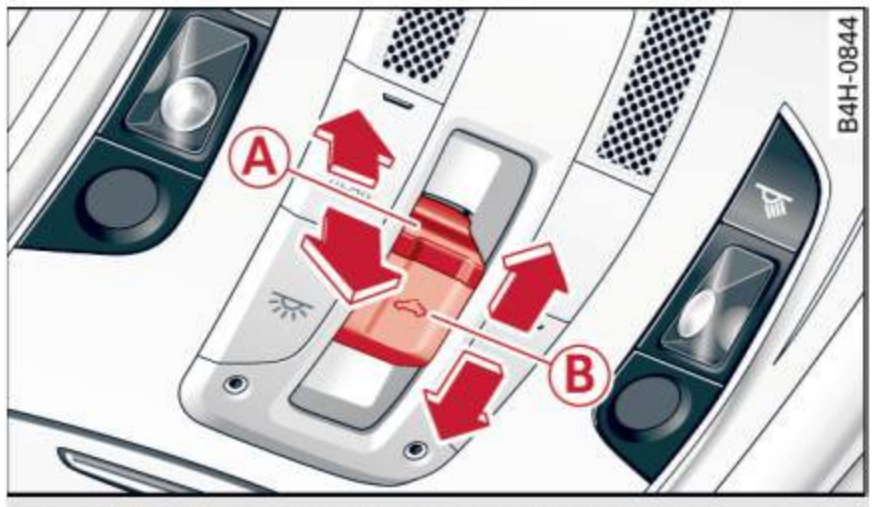


Fig. 38 Section of headliner: sunroof button

(A) Tilting/sliding

- ▸ To tilt the sunroof completely, press the button up briefly to the second level.
- ▸ To close the sunroof completely, pull the button down briefly to the second level ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ To select an intermediate position, press/pull the switch to the first level until the desired position is reached.

(B) Tilting/sliding

- ▸ To open the sunroof completely, slide the button back to just before the second level.
- ▸ To close the sunroof completely, slide the button forward briefly to the second level ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ To select a partially open position, slide the button forward/back to the first level until the desired position is reached.

A wind deflector integrated into the sliding/tilting sunroof adapts automatically to the speed and sunroof position. This reduces wind noise to a minimum in all sunroof positions.

You can still operate the sliding/tilting sunroof for about 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off. The switch is deactivated once the driver's or front passenger's door is opened.

Sunshade

The sun shade opens automatically when sliding the roof open.

Vehicles with a glass panel sunroof: the sun shade can be opened and closed by hand when the sunroof is closed.

Vehicles with a solar panel sunroof*: the closed sunshade opens automatically when the sunroof opens.

WARNING

Pay careful attention when closing the sliding/tilting sunroof - otherwise serious injury could result! Always take the ignition key with you when leaving the vehicle.

Note

Always close your sliding/tilting sunroof when leaving your vehicle. Rain can cause damage to the interior equipment of your vehicle, particularly the electronic equipment.

Tips

– For information on the solar roof*, refer to ⇨ *page 72*.
– The sunroof will only open down to -20 °C (-4 °F).

Sliding/tilting sunroof emergency closing

Applies to: vehicles with sliding/tilting sunroof

If the sunroof detects an object in its path when it is closing, it will open again automatically. In this case, you can close the roof with the power emergency closing function.

- Within five seconds after the sunroof opens automatically, pull the switch until the roof closes.

Panorama glass roof

Opening/closing the roof

Applies to: vehicles with panorama glass roof

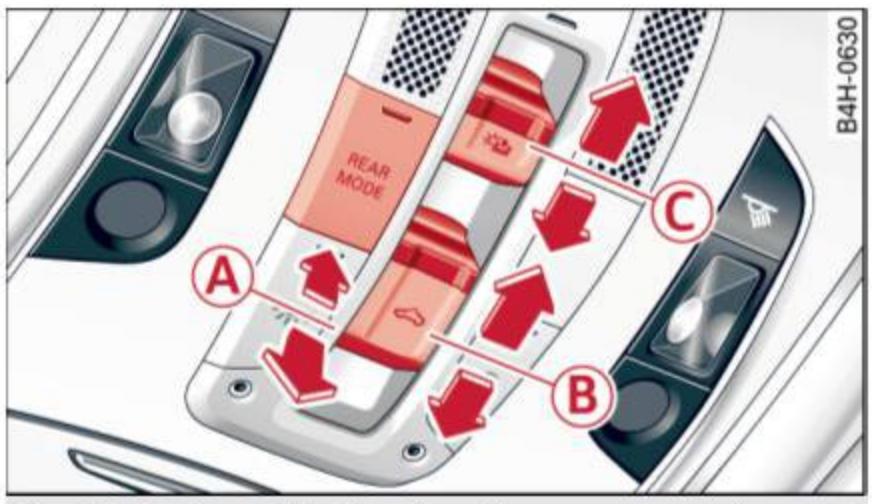


Fig. 39 Section of the front headliner: panorama glass roof button



Fig. 40 Rear door: panoramic sunroof button

(A) Tilting the front segment of the roof

- To tilt the sunroof completely, press the button up briefly to the second level.
- To close the sunroof completely, pull the button down briefly to the second level ⇨ ⚠.
- To set a position between opened and closed, press/pull the button up to the first level until the desired position is reached.

(B) Sliding the front segment of the roof

- To open the sunroof completely, slide the button toward the rear briefly to the second level.
- To close the sunroof completely, slide the button forward briefly to the second level ⇨ ⚠.
- To select a partially open position, slide the button forward/back to the first level until the desired position is reached.

Tilting the rear segment of the roof

The rear segment of the roof can be operated both from the cockpit and from the rear seat.

- To tilt the sunroof completely, press the button in the rear door briefly to the second level ⇨ *fig. 40*.
- To close the sunroof completely, pull the button up briefly to the second level ⇨ ⚠.
- To set a position between opened and closed, press/pull the button up to the first level until the desired position is reached. Or
- To operate the roof from the cockpit, press the REAR MODE button ⇨ *fig. 39*. You can now open/close the rear segment of the roof using the button in the headliner. The LED in the front of the headliner turns on when the rear roof segment is tilted.

After the ignition is switched off, you can still operate the panoramic sunroof for about 10 minutes. The switch is deactivated once the driver's or front passenger's door is opened.

⚠ WARNING

Be careful when closing the panoramic sunroof - otherwise serious injury could result! Switch off the ignition when exiting the vehicle.

Note

Always close the panorama glass roof when leaving your vehicle. Rain can cause damage to the interior equipment of your vehicle, particularly the electronic equipment. ▶

Tips

– The panorama roof will only open down to -4°F (-20°).
– To prevent both roof segments from colliding with one another, you do not need to
  – tilt the rear roof segment if the front roof segment is already open.
  – close the front roof segment if the rear roof segment is already tilted.

Opening/closing the sun shade

Applies to: vehicles with panorama glass roof

Ⓒ Front sun shade

▸ To open the sun shade completely, slide the button backward to the second level ⇨ *page 39, fig. 39*.
▸ To close the sun shade completely, slide the button forward briefly to the second level.
▸ To select a partially open position, slide the button to the first level until the sun shade has reached the desired position.

Ⓒ Rear sun shade

▸ To open the sun shade completely, press the button in the rear door briefly down to the second level ⇨ *page 39, fig. 40*.
▸ To close the sun shade completely, pull the button up to the second level ⇨ ⚠.
▸ To select a partially open position, press/pull the button to the first level until the desired position is reached. Or
▸ To operate the sun shade from the cockpit, press the REAR MODE button ⇨ *page 39, fig. 39*. You can now open/close the rear sun shade using the button in the headliner.

⚠ WARNING

Be careful when closing the panoramic sunroof - otherwise serious injury could result! Switch off the ignition when exiting the vehicle.

Roof segments/sun shade emergency closing

Applies to: vehicles with panorama glass roof

If the roof segment or sun shade detects an object in its path when it is closing, it will open again automatically. In this case, you can then close it with the power emergency closing function.

▸ Within five seconds after the roof segment or sun shade opens automatically, pull the switch until it closes.

Valet parking function

Applies to: vehicles with valet parking function

The valet parking function protects the luggage compartment from unauthorized access.



Fig. 41 Glove compartment: valet parking function button

You can switch the valet parking function on when someone else is parking your vehicle. When the function is switched on, the vehicle can be driven, locked and unlocked using the master key, but access to the luggage compartment is not permitted.

▸ Remove the integrated mechanical key ⇨ *page 29*.
▸ Open the glove compartment.
▸ Press the VALET button to switch the valet parking function on. The LED in the button turns on.
▸ Lock the glove compartment with the mechanical key.
▸ Only give the remote control key to the service personnel parking your car and keep the removed mechanical key with you. ▶

The following buttons are deactivated when the valet parking function is switched on:

– [⇦] button in the driver's door
– [⇦] button on the remote control key
– Handle in the rear lid

When the valet parking function is switched on, the message **Valet parking activated** appears in the instrument cluster display when you switch the ignition on.

Garage door opener (HomeLink)

Description

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)



Fig. 42 Garage door opener: examples of usage for different systems

With the garage door opener (HomeLink), you can activate systems such as the garage doors, security systems or house lights from inside your vehicle. Three buttons are integrated in the headliner that can be programmed to up to three remote controls.

To be able to operate systems using the garage door opener, the buttons in the headliner must first be programmed.

WARNING

When operating or programming the garage door opener, make sure that no people or objects are in the area immediately surrounding the equipment. People can be injured or property can be damaged if struck when closing.

Tips

– For security reasons, we recommend that you clear the programmed buttons before selling the vehicle.
– For additional information about HomeLink, visit www.homelink.com.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 339*.

Programming buttons

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)

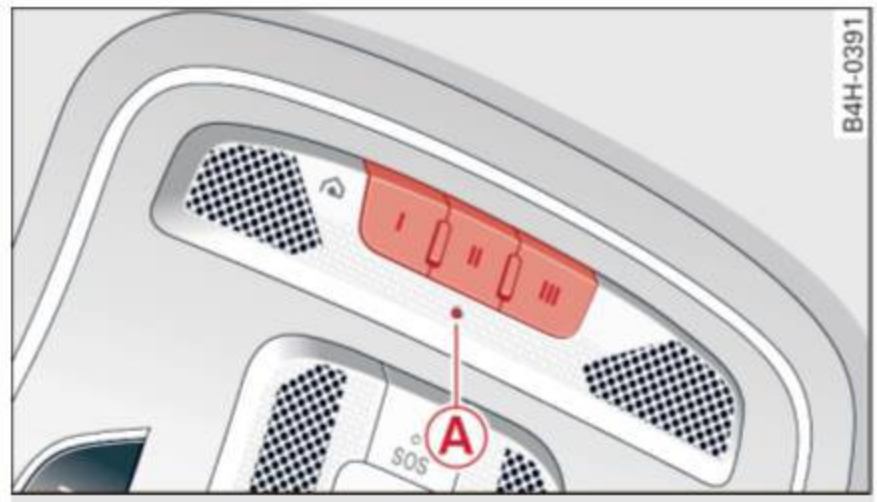


Fig. 43 Headliner: controls

You can program both fixed code and rolling code systems using this procedure.

Programming/reprogramming buttons

▸ Switch on the ignition.
▸ Press and hold the button in the headliner that you would like to program for at least 10 seconds. Or
▸ Select: [CAR] function button > **Car systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Garage door opener** > **Program garage door opener**.
▸ Follow the instructions in the Infotainment system.

Deleting button programming

The programmed buttons cannot be deleted individually. They must be deleted all at once. Reprogram the buttons if necessary.

▸ Select: the [CAR] function button > **Car systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Garage door opener** > **Clear program settings** > **Yes**. ▸

Displaying the version/status/country code

▸ Select: CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Garage door opener** > **Version information**.

Tips

The garage door opener may need to be synchronized with the system motor after the programming. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for doing this.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)

Requirements: the button in the headliner must be programmed ⇨ *page 41* and the vehicle must be within range of the system, such as the garage door.

▸ Press the button to open the garage door. The LED Ⓐ⇨ *page 41, fig. 43* blinks or turns on.
▸ Press the button again to open the garage door.

Tips

When opening or closing the garage door, do not press and hold the button longer ten seconds or the garage door opener will switch to programming mode.

Lights and Vision

Exterior lighting

Switching the headlights on and off



Fig. 44 Instrument panel: light switch with all-weather lights

The headlights only work when the ignition is switched on. While starting the engine or when switching off the ignition, the headlights will go off and only the side marker lights will be on.

If the system is not operating properly, a warning symbol in the driver information display is displayed ⇨ *page 24*.

Light switch ☼

Turn the switch ⇨ *fig. 44* to the corresponding position. When the lights are switched on, the ≡D symbol turns on.

O - The lights are off or the daytime running lights are on:

– **USA models:** The daytime running lights will come on automatically when the ignition is on and the light switch ⇨ *fig. 44* is in the **O** position or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight conditions). The **Daytime running lights** function can be turned on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 45*, ⇨ ⚠.
– **Canada models:** The daytime running lights will come on automatically when the ignition is on and the light switch ⇨ *fig. 44* is in the **O** position, the ≡D position or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight conditions) ⇨ ⚠.

AUTO - Automatic headlights switch on and off depending on brightness, for example in twilight, during rain or in tunnels ⇨ ⚠.

≡D - Side marker lights

≡D - Low beam headlights

[≡D] - All-weather lights

[D‡] - Rear fog lights*. When the rear fog lights are on, the symbol D‡ on the switch will illuminate.

All-weather lights

The front lights are adjusted automatically so that you are less likely to see glare from your own headlights, for example when driving on a wet road.

Automatic dynamic headlight range control*

Your vehicle is equipped with a headlight range control system so that the headlights do not blind oncoming traffic if the vehicle load changes. The headlight range also adjusts automatically when braking and accelerating.

Light functions

The following light functions are available depending on vehicle equipment and only function when the light switch is in the AUTO position. You can deactivate these functions in the MMI under **Audi adaptive light** ⇨ *page 45*.

Static cornering light* - the cornering light switches on automatically when the steering wheel is turned at a certain angle at speeds up to approximately 44 mph (70 km/h) and when the turn signal is activated at speeds up to approximately 25 mph (40 km/h). The area to the side of the vehicle is illuminated better when turning.

Dynamic curve light* - the curve light adapts itself to the curves in the road.

Highway light function* - this function adapts the lighting for highway driving based on vehicle speed.

⚠ WARNING

– Automatic headlights are only intended to assist the driver. They do not relieve the driver of his responsibility to check the headlights and to turn them on manually according to the current light and visibility conditions. For example, fog cannot be ▶

4H0012721BD

detected by the light sensors. So always switch on the headlights under these weather conditions and when driving in the dark.
– Crashes can happen when you cannot see the road ahead and when you cannot be seen by other motorists. Always turn on the headlights so that you can see ahead and so that others can see your car from the back.
– The rear fog lights should only be turned on in accordance with traffic regulation, as the lights are bright for following traffic.
– Please observe legal regulations when using the lighting systems described.

Tips

– The light sensor* for automatic dynamic headlight range control* is located in the rear view mirror mount. You should therefore not apply any stickers to the windshield in this area in order to prevent malfunctions or failures.
– In the event of a light sensor malfunction, the driver is notified in the instrument cluster display ⇨ *page 25*.
– You will hear a warning tone if you open the driver door when the exterior lights are switched on.
– In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals and tail lights can fog over due to the temperature difference between the inside and outside. They will clear shortly after switching them on. This does not affect the service life of the lighting.

Turn signal and high beam lever

The turn signal lever operates the turn signals, the high beams and the headlight flasher.

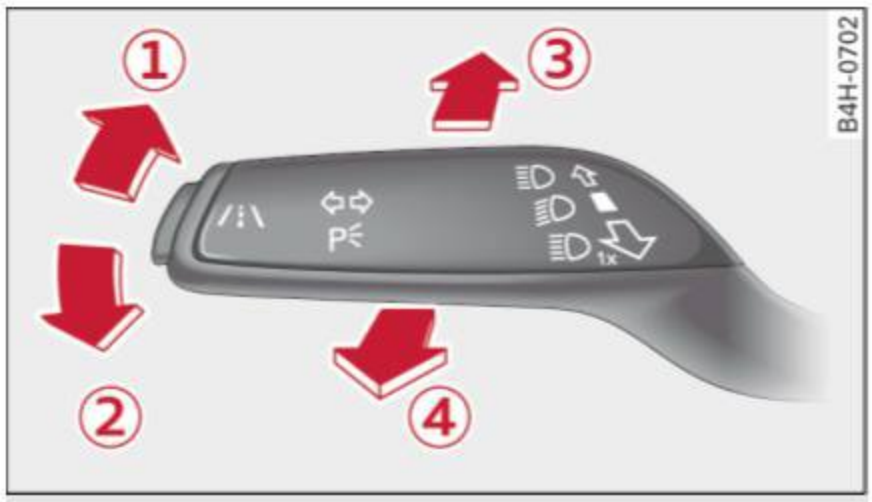


Fig. 45 Turn signal and high beam lever

Turn signals ⇦ ⇨

The turn signals activate when you move the lever into a turn signal position when the ignition is switched on.

① - right turn signal

② - left turn signal

The turn signal blinks three times if you just tap the lever.

High beams and headlight flasher

Move the lever to the corresponding position:

③ - high beams on (vehicles with High beam assistant* ⇨ *page 44*)

④ - high beams off or headlight flasher

The indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.

WARNING

High beams can cause glare for other drivers, which increases the risk of an accident. For this reason, only use the high beams or the headlight flasher when they will not create glare for other drivers.

High beam assistant

Applies to: vehicles with high beam assistant

A camera on the rearview mirror mount can detect light sources from other road users. The high beams switch on or off automatically depending ▶

on the position of vehicles driving ahead and oncoming vehicles, the vehicle speed and other environmental and traffic conditions.

Activating high beam assistant

Requirement: the light switch must be set to the AUTO position and the high beam assistant must be switched on in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 45*.

- ▸ To activate the high beam assistant, tap the lever forward ③. The indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display and the high beam assistant is switched on/off automatically. The indicator light also turns on if the high beams are switched on.

Switching the high beams on/off manually

If the high beams did not switch on/off automatically as expected, you may switch them on or off manually instead:

- ▸ To switch the high beams on manually, tap the lever forward ③. The indicator light turns on.
- ▸ To switch the high beams off manually, pull the lever back ④. The high beam assistant is deactivated.

Operating the headlight flasher

- ▸ To operate the headlight flasher when the high beam assistant is activated and high beams are switched off, pull the lever back ④. The high beam assistant remains active.

Messages in the instrument cluster display

Headlight assist: System fault!

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. You can still switch the high beams on or off manually.

Headlight assist: Unavailable No camera view

The camera view is blocked, for example by a sticker or debris.

The sensor is located between the interior rearview mirror and the windshield. Do not place any stickers in this area on the windshield.

⚠ WARNING

High beam assistant is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still responsible for controlling the headlights and switching them manually depending on light and visibility conditions. It may be necessary to operate them manually in situations such as:

- – In adverse weather conditions such as fog, heavy rain, blowing snow or spraying water.
- – On roads where oncoming traffic may be partially obscured, such as expressways.
- – When there are road users that do not have sufficient lighting, such as bicyclers or vehicles with dirty tail lamps.
- – In tight curves and on steep hills.
- – In poorly lit areas.
- – With strong reflectors, such as signs.
- – If the area of the windshield near the sensor is fogged over, dirty, icy or covered with a sticker.

Adjusting the exterior lighting

The functions are adjusted in the Infotainment system.

- ▸ Select: CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Exterior lighting**.

Automatic headlights

You can adjust the following settings in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

Headlights activation time - you can adjust if the headlights switch on **Early**, **Medium** or **Late** according to the sensitivity of the light sensor.

Headlight assist* - you can switch the high beam assistant* **On** and **Off**.

Daytime running lights*

USA models: the daytime running lights can be switched on/off. Select **On** or **Off**.

Canada models: this function cannot be switched off. They activate automatically each time the ignition is switched on. ▸

Coming home, Leaving home

The coming home function illuminates the area outside the vehicle when you turn the ignition off and open the driver's door. To turn the function on, select **Lights when leaving car** > **On**.

The leaving home illuminates the area outside the vehicle when you unlock the vehicle. To turn the function on, select **Lights when unlocking car** > **On**.

The coming home and leaving home functions only operate when it is dark and the light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

Emergency flashers

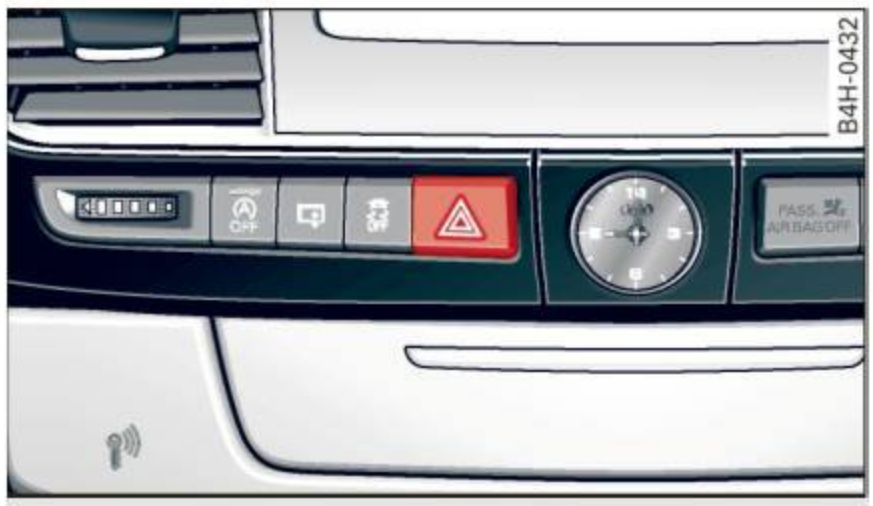


Fig. 46 Center console: emergency flasher button

The emergency flashers makes other drivers aware of your vehicle in dangerous situations.

- Press the ⚠ button to switch the emergency flashers on or off.

You can indicate a lane change or a turn when the emergency flashers are switched on by using the turn signal lever. The emergency flashers stop temporarily.

The emergency flashers also work when the ignition is turned off.

Interior lighting

Front and rear interior lighting



Fig. 47 Front headliner: interior lighting controls

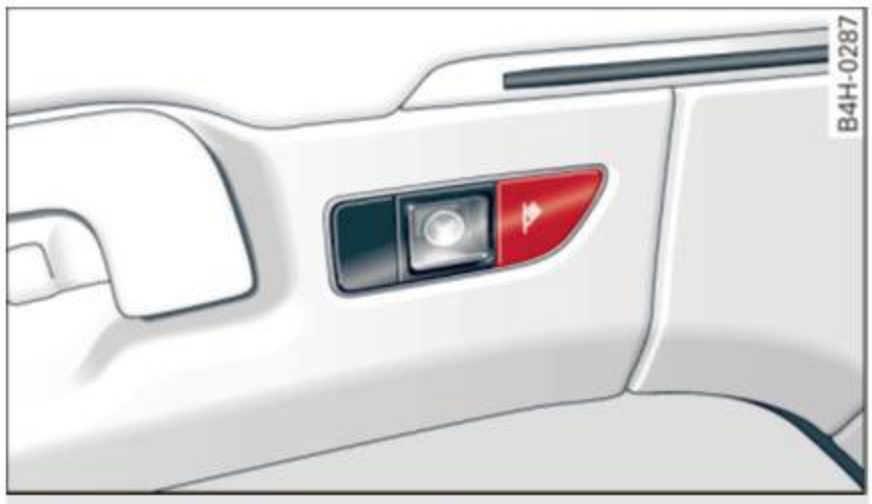


Fig. 48 Rear headliner: Reading light

Press the corresponding button ⇨ *fig. 47*:

- Interior lighting on/off

- Door contact switch on/off. The interior lighting is controlled automatically.

- Reading lights on/off

* - Switch the rear reading lights on/off from the cockpit.

REAR MODE* - Switching the rear reading lights on/off from the cockpit: press the REAR MODE button and then the corresponding button in the cockpit.

Ambient lighting

Applies to: vehicles with ambient lighting

You can select a color profile and brightness for the ambiance lighting in various areas of the vehicle, called zones. ▶

Switching the ambient lighting on

- Select in the MMI: CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Interior lighting** > **On**.

Adjusting the brightness/turning off

You can adjust the brightness for the four zones **Front top**, **Front footwell**, **Rear top** and **Rear footwell** or for **All areas** at the same time.

- In the Infotainment system, select: CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Interior lighting** > **Brightness**.
- Turn the knob to the desired vehicle area and press the knob. The bar that appears indicates the selected brightness.
- To increase or reduce the brightness, turn the knob and press it.

Selecting a color profile*

You can select from the **Ivory**, **Polar** and **Ruby/Polar** color profiles.

- Select in the MMI: CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Interior lighting** > **Color profile**.

The ambient lighting turns on when this function is turned on the Infotainment system and the low beams are turned on when the ignition is switched on.

Tips

The settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key that is in use.

Instrument lighting

The brightness of the instrument and display lighting as well as the Head-up display can be adjusted.*



Fig. 49 Instrument illumination

- Press the knob to release it.
- Turn the knob toward "-" or "+" to reduce or increase the brightness.
- Press the knob again to return it to its original position.

Tips

The instrument illumination for the needles and dials turns on when the ignition is turned on and the lights are turned off. The illumination for the gauges reduces automatically and eventually turns off as brightness outside increases. This function reminds the driver to turn the low beams on at the appropriate time.

Vision

Adjusting the exterior mirrors



Fig. 50 Driver's door: knob for the exterior mirrors

Turn the knob to the desired position: ▶

/ - Adjusting the left/right exterior mirror. Move the knob in the desired direction.

- Heating the mirror glass depending on the outside temperature.

- Folding exterior mirrors*. In the Infotainment system, you can select if the mirrors fold in automatically when you lock the vehicle ⇨ *page 32*.

Front passenger's exterior mirror tilt function*

To help you see the curb when backing into a parking space, the surface of the mirror tilts slightly. For this to happen, the knob must be in the position for the front passenger's outside mirror.

You can adjust the tilted mirror surface by turning the knob in the desired direction. When you move out of reverse and into another gear, the new mirror position is stored and assigned to the key you are using.

The mirror goes back into its original position once you drive forward faster than 9 mph (15 km/h) or turn the ignition off.

WARNING

Curved mirror surfaces (aspheric or convex*) enlarge the field of vision. However, they make objects in the mirror appear smaller and farther away. Your may estimate incorrectly when you use these mirrors to gauge your distance from the vehicles behind you when changing lanes, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– If the mirror housing was moved by outside forces (such as an impact when maneuvering), you must use the power folding function to fold the mirror all the way out. The mirror housing must not be moved back into place by hand because this would impair the function of the mirror mechanism.
– If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage to the mirrors.

Never fold power folding exterior mirrors by hand. Only fold them in and out using the power controls.

Tips

– If the power adjusting function malfunctions, the glass in both mirrors can be adjusted by pressing on the edge of it by hand.
– The exterior mirror settings are stored with the memory function* ⇨ *page 59*.

Dimming the mirror

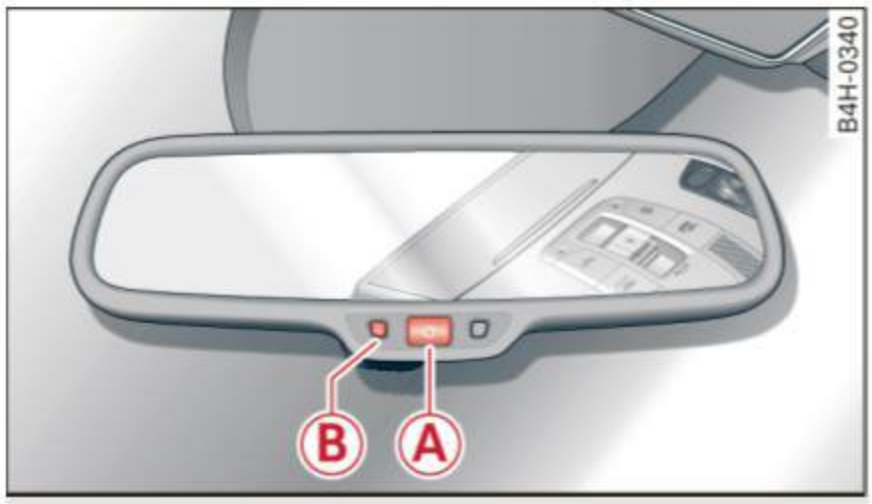


Fig. 51 Automatic dimming rearview mirror

► To dim the interior rearview mirror and both exterior mirrors*, press the button Ⓐ. The LED Ⓑ turns on. The interior rearview mirror and exterior mirrors* dim automatically when light shines on them, for example from headlights on a vehicle behind you.

WARNING

Electrolyte fluid can leak out from broken mirror glass. This liquid can irritate the skin, eyes and respiratory system. If there is contact with the fluid, flush immediately with plenty of water. Consult a physician if necessary.

– Repeated or long-term exposure to electrolyte fluid can lead to irritation of the airways, especially in people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Take deep breaths immediately after leaving the vehicle or, if this is not possible, open all of the doors and windows as wide as possible.
– If electrolyte fluid enters the eyes, flush them thoroughly with a large amount of ►

clean water for at least 15 minutes and then seek medical attention.
– If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with the skin, flush the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then clean with soap and water and seek medical attention. Clean affected clothing and shoes thoroughly before wearing again.
– If the fluid was swallowed and the person is conscious, flush the mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless this is recommended by medical professionals. Seek medical attention immediately.

Note

The electrolyte fluid that leaks out of broken mirror glass corrodes plastic surfaces and the paint. Clean this liquid as quickly as possible, for example with a wet sponge.

Tips

– If the light reaching the interior rearview mirror is obstructed (for example by the sunshade*), the automatic dimming rearview mirror will not function correctly.
– The automatic dimming mirrors do not dim when the interior lighting is turned on or the reverse gear is selected.

Sun visors



Fig. 52 Front passenger's side: sun visor

The sun visors for the driver and front passenger can be released from their mounts and turned toward the doors ⇨ *fig. 52* ①. They can also be moved back and forth lengthwise in this position.

The mirror light switches on when the cover over the vanity mirror ② opens.

Sunshade

Applies to: vehicles with sun shade

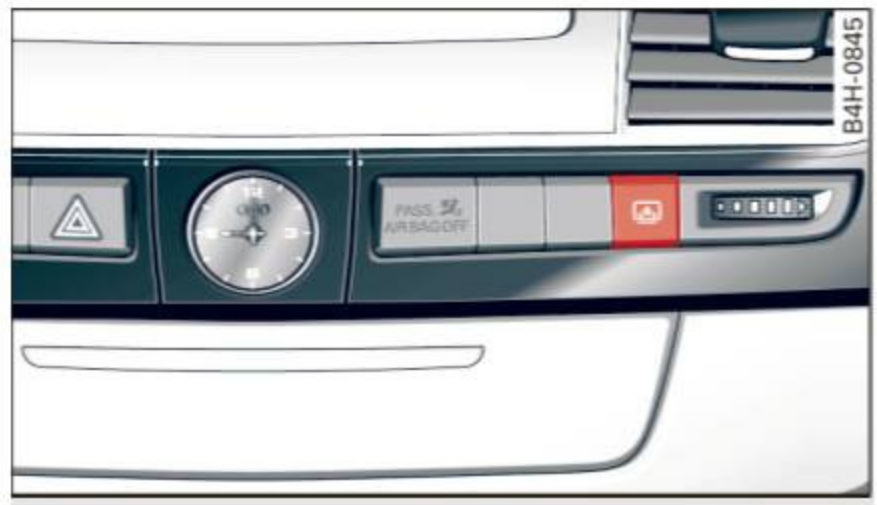


Fig. 53 Cockpit: button for sunshade



Fig. 54 Rear door: buttons for sunshades

Extending/retracting the rear window* shade

- To extend or retract the sun shade **from the cockpit**, press the button in the center console ⇨ *fig. 53*.
- To extend or retract the sun shade **from the rear of the vehicle**, press the button in the door ⇨ *fig. 54*.

Extending the rear door sun shades*

- Close the window in the rear door.
- To extend the sun shade **from the driver's seat**, pull the left/right rear power window switch in the driver's door.
- To extend the sun shade from the **rear of the vehicle**, pull the power window switch in the left/right rear door. ▶

Retracting the rear door sun shades*

- To retract the sun shade **from the driver's seat**, press the left/right rear power window switch in the driver's door.
- To retract the sun shade from the **rear of the vehicle**, press the power window switch in the left/right rear door.

You can adjust the settings for the rear sun shade so the shade retracts automatically when you select the reverse gear. Select: **CAR** function button > **Car systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Automatic rear blind** > **On**. The settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key. The sun shade is extended again as soon as the vehicle is traveling forward at a speed greater than 9 mph (15 km/h) if the ignition has not been switched off in the meantime.

WARNING

Always pay careful attention when closing the sunshades. Pinching could cause serious injuries.

Tips

- Pressing the button several times in a row can trigger the overload protection. The sun shade can only be extended/retracted again after a brief waiting period.
- The rear window sun shade only functions when the vehicle interior is warmer than 14°F (-10°C).

Vanity mirror in the rear

Applies to: vehicles with vanity mirrors in the rear

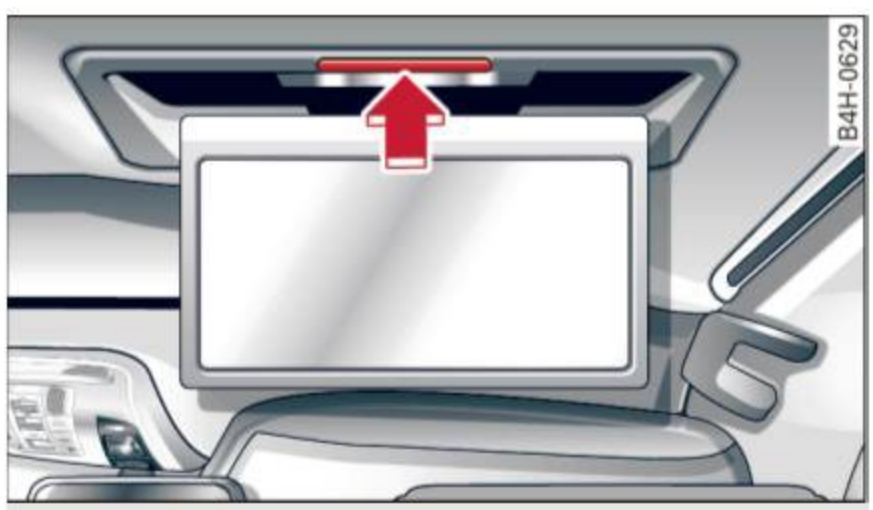


Fig. 55 Rear headliner: vanity mirror

- Press the button to fold the mirror open. The mirror lighting turns on automatically.
- To change the mirror's angle, move it forward/back with your hand.

Windshield wipers

Switching the windshield wipers on

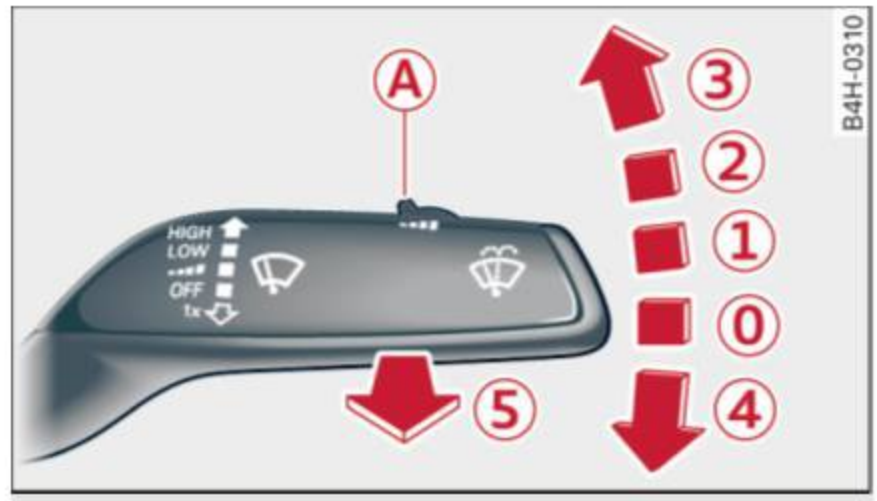


Fig. 56 Windshield wiper lever

Move the windshield wiper lever to the corresponding position:

Ⓞ - wipers off

① - Rain sensor mode. The windshield wipers switch on once the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 2 mph (4 km/h) and it is raining. The higher the rain sensor sensitivity is set (switch Ⓐ to the right), the earlier the windshield wipers react to moisture on the windshield. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode in the Infotainment system, which switches the intermittent mode on. Select: CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Driver assist** > **Rain sensor** > **Off**. In intermittent mode, you can adjust the interval time using the switch Ⓐ.

② - slow wiping

③ - fast wiping

④ - single wipe If you hold the lever in this position longer, the wipers switch from slow wiping to fast wiping.

⑤ - clean the windshield The wipers wipe one time after several seconds of driving to remove water droplets. You can switch this function off by moving the lever to position ⑤ within 10 seconds of the afterwipe. The afterwipe function is ▶

reactivated the next time you switch the ignition on.

Cleaning the headlights. The headlight washer system operates only when the low beam headlights are switched on. If you move the lever to position (5), the headlights and the night vision assist camera* are cleaned at intervals.

WARNING

- The rain sensor is only intended to assist the driver. The driver may still be responsible for manually switching the wipers on based on visibility conditions.
- The windshield may not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness, and when the sun is low, can cause increased glare, which increases the risk of an accident. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.
- Properly functioning windshield wiper blades are required for a clear view and safe driving ⇨ *page 51, Replacing the wiper blades*.

Note

- If there is frost, make sure the windshield wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield. Switching on the windshield wipers when the blades are frozen to the windshield can damage the wiper blades.
- Prior to using a car wash, the windshield wiper system must be switched off (lever in position (0)). This prevents the wipers from switching on unintentionally and causing damage to the windshield wiper system.

Tips

- The windshield wipers switch off when the ignition is switched off. You can activate the windshield wipers after the ignition is switched back on by moving the windshield wiper lever to any position.
- Worn or dirty windshield wiper blades result in streaking. This can affect the rain sensor function. Check your windshield wiper blades regularly.
- The washer fluid nozzles for the windshield washer system are heated at low temperatures when the ignition is on.
- When stopping temporarily, such as at a traffic light, the speed of the windshield wipers automatically reduces by one level.

Cleaning the wiper blades

Clean the wiper blades when you see wiper streaks. Clean the wiper blades with a soft towel and glass cleaner.

- ▸ Place the windshield wiper arms in the service position ⇨ *page 51*.
- ▸ Fold the windshield wiper arms away from the windshield.

WARNING

Dirty windshield wiper blades can impair vision, which increases the risk of an accident.

Replacing the wiper blades

The service position is set in the Infotainment system.

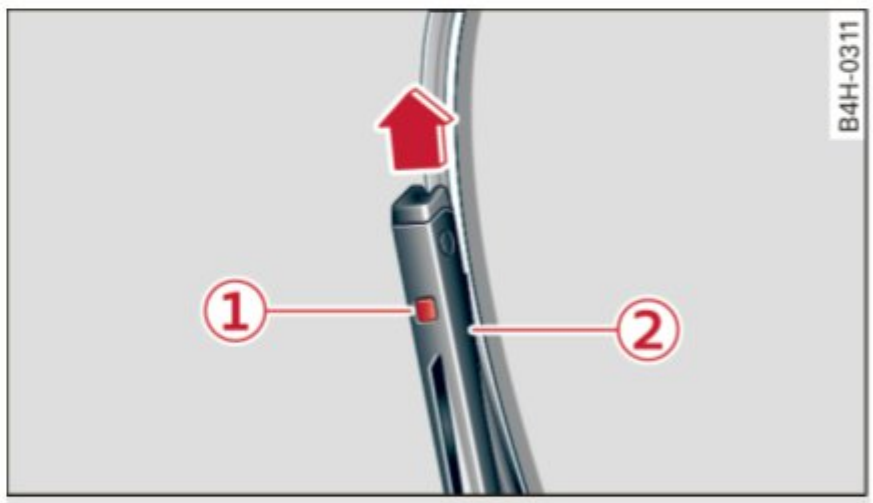


Fig. 57 Removing windshield wiper blades

Windshield wiper service position/blade replacement position

- ▸ Switch the ignition off and move the windshield wiper lever to position (4) briefly ⇨ *page 50, fig. 56*. The windshield wipers move into the service position.
- ▸ To bring the wiper blades back into the original position, switch the ignition on and operate the windshield wiper lever.

You can also turn the service position on or off in the Infotainment system: ▶

- ▸ Switch the windshield wipers off (position ⓪ ⇨ *page 50, fig. 56*).
- ▸ Select: the CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Wiper service position**. > **On**.

Removing the wiper blade

- ▸ Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.
- ▸ Press the locking knob ① ⇨ *fig. 57* on the wiper blade. Hold the wiper blade firmly.
- ▸ Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.

Installing the wiper blade

- ▸ Insert the new wiper blade into the mount on the wiper arm ② until it clicks into place.
- ▸ Place the wiper arm back on the windshield.
- ▸ Turn the service position off.

WARNING

For safety reasons, the windshield wiper blades should be replaced once or twice each year.

Note

– The windshield wiper blades must only be folded away when in the service position! Otherwise, you risk damaging the paint on the hood or the windshield wiper motor.
– You should not move your vehicle or press the windshield wiper lever when the wiper arms are folded away from the windshield. The windshield wipers would move back into their original position and could damage the hood and windshield.

Tips

– You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to protect the windshield from icing by using a cover.
– You cannot activate the service position when the hood is open.

Digital compass

Switching the compass on and off

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

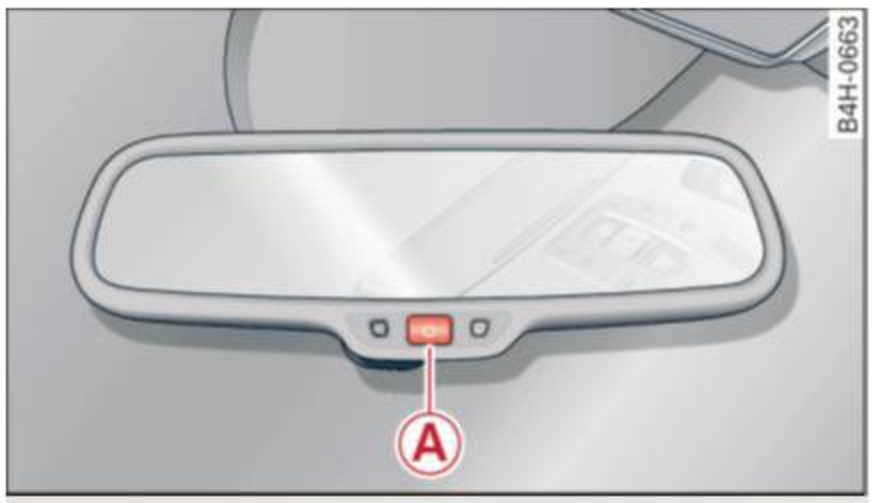


Fig. 58 Interior rearview mirror: digital compass activated

- ▸ To turn the compass in the mirror on or off, press the button Ⓐ until the compass display in the mirror appears or disappears.

The digital compass only works when the ignition is turned on. The directions are indicated with abbreviations: **N** (north), **NE** (northeast), **E** (east), **SE** (southeast), **S** (south), **SW** (southwest), **W** (west), **NW** (northwest).

Tips

To prevent inaccurate compass readings, do not bring any remote controls, electrical devices or metallic objects near the mirror.

Adjusting the magnetic zone

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

The magnetic zone must be adjusted correctly for the compass to read accurately.

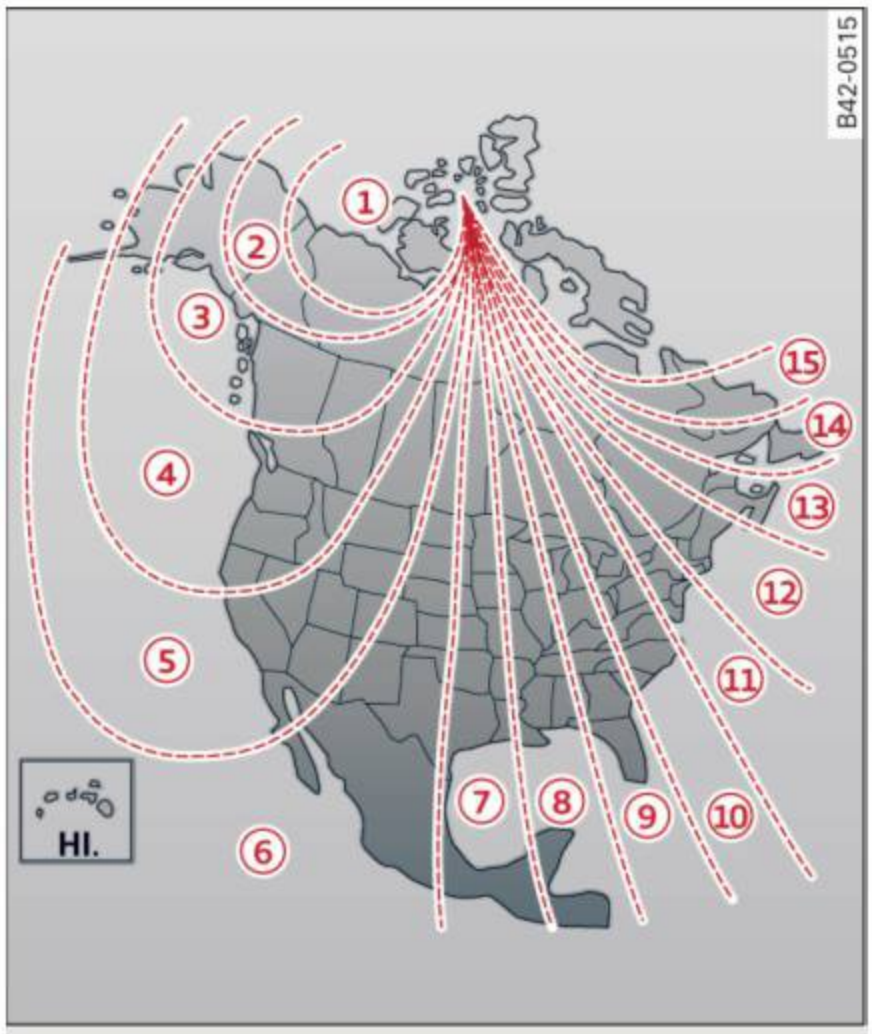


Fig. 59 North America: magnetic zone map

- ▸ Press and hold the button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 59* until the number of the selected magnetic zone appears in the rearview mirror.
- ▸ Press the button Ⓐ repeatedly to select the correct magnetic field zone. The selection mode turns off after a few seconds.

Calibrating the compass

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

You must recalibrate the compass if it does not display the correct direction.

- ▸ Press and hold the button Ⓐ ⇨ *page 52, fig. 58* until a **C** appears in the interior rearview mirror.
- ▸ Drive in a circle at about 6 mph (10 km/h) until a direction is displayed in the rearview mirror.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk to yourself and other drivers, calibrate the compass in an area where there is no traffic.

– Always pay attention to the traffic and the area around your vehicle if you are reading the compass while driving.

Seats and storage

General information

WARNING

Refer to ⇨ *page 207, Driving safety* for important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and follow for your own safety and the safety of your passengers.

Front seats

Controls

Seat forward/back adjustment, seat height, backrest and seat cushion angle.

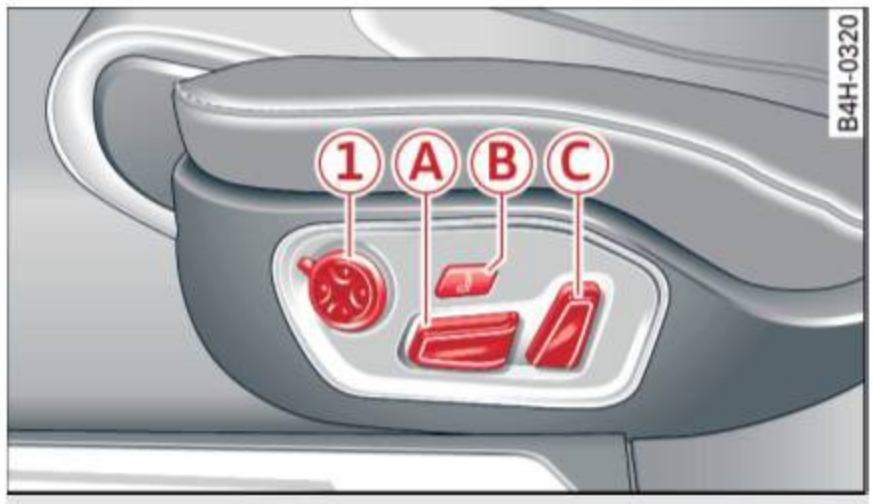


Fig. 60 Front seat: adjusting the seat

Ⓐ - Moving the seat forward/back: press the button forward/back.

Ⓐ - Moving the seat up/down: press the button up/down. To adjust the front seat cushion, press the front button up/down. To adjust the rear seat cushion, press the rear button up/down.

Ⓑ - Switching the massage function* on/off. Select the type of massage with the multifunction button ⇨ *page 54*.

Ⓒ - adjusting the backrest angle: press the button forward/back.

Ⓒ - Comfort head restraint* ⇨ *page 58*

① - Multifunction button* ⇨ *page 54*.

WARNING

– The power front seats can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off. For this reason, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle - they could be injured!
– Only adjust the front seat with when the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise, this increases the risk of an accident
– Exercise caution when adjusting the seat height. Unsupervised or careless seat adjustment can pinch fingers or hands causing injuries.
– The front seat backrests must not be reclined too far back when driving, because this impairs the effectiveness of the safety belts and airbag system, which increases the risk of injury.

Multifunction button

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

You can adjust the massage function, upper section of the backrest, lumbar support, side bolsters, upper thigh support and safety belt height using the multifunction button.

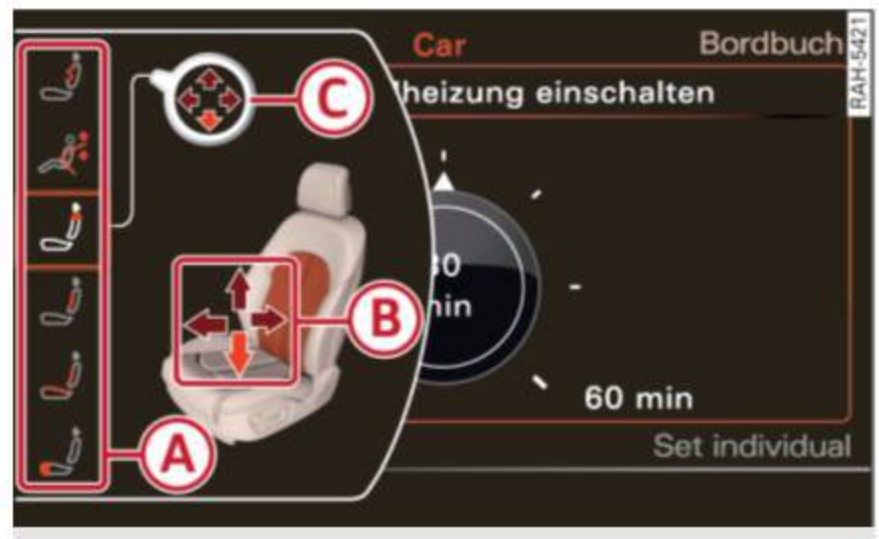


Fig. 61 Infotainment system: seat settings

Operating

- If you turn the multifunction button ① ⇨ *page 54, fig. 60* to the left or to the right, the possible seat settings Ⓐ are shown in the Infotainment system ⇨ *fig. 61*.
- To select a seat setting, turn the multifunction button ① in the corresponding direction until the desired seat setting is outlined in red.
- The arrows Ⓑ represent the possible adjustments. To lower the lumbar support, for example, press the multifunction button ① downward. The corresponding arrow Ⓒ lights up.

The following seat settings Ⓐ are possible: ▶

Massage function* - select the **Wave, Pulse, Stretch, Lumbar** or **Shoulder** massage type or **off**. You can adjust the intensity of each massage from 1 through 5. You can switch the selected massage on/off using the button Ⓑ ⇨ *page 54, fig. 60*.

Safety belt height adjustment* - adjust the safety belt up or down ⇨ *page 223*.

Upper backrest* - angle the upper area of the backrest forward or back.

Lumbar support - you can adjust the lumbar support up/down and to be stronger/weaker.

Seat bolsters* - you can increase/decrease the lateral support in the seat using the side bolsters at the seat surface and the backrest.

Upper thigh support* - you can increase/decrease the upper thigh support.

Tips

– The massage function* switches off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.
– In vehicles with the reclining rear seat, only the seat belt height and thigh support can be adjusted on the front passenger seat using the multifunction button.
– The air in the side bolsters* is released as soon as the driver's door opens. This makes is possible to enter and exit the vehicle more comfortably. As soon as you start driving the vehicle, the side bolsters fill.

Center armrest

Applies to vehicles with a front center armrest

There is a storage compartment under the armrest.



Fig. 62 Cockpit: center armrest



Fig. 63 Cockpit: divided center armrest*

Opening the storage compartment

▸ Press the button -arrow- and move the armrest upward.

Adjusting the divided center armrest*

▸ To adjust the armrest forward and up, press the button -arrow- and pull the armrest into the desired position at the same time.
▸ To bring the armrest into the resting position, press the button -arrow- and slide the armrest downward.

Rear seats

Adjusting the rear seats

Applies to: vehicles with power adjustable rear seats

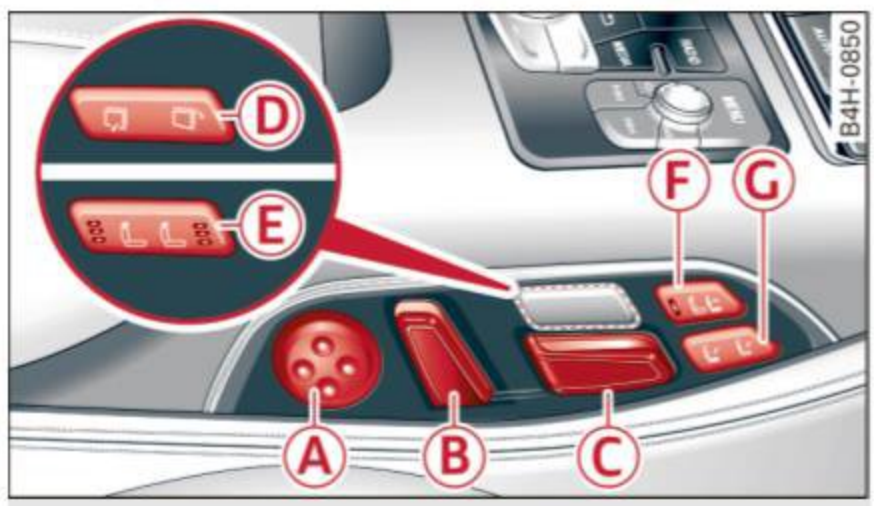


Fig. 64 Passenger side rear seat: seat adjustment buttons



Fig. 65 Rear door: memory function buttons

Adjusting lumbar support

- To adjust the curvature of the lumbar support, press the button Ⓐ to the left/right.
- To adjust the height of the lumbar support, press the button Ⓐ upward/downward.

Adjusting the head restraint angle

- To adjust the head restraint so that it is more vertical/more angled, press the button Ⓑ forward/back.

Adjusting the seat position

- To adjust the seat forward/back, press the button Ⓒ forward/back.
- To move the seat up/down, press the button Ⓒ upward/downward.

Adjusting the massage function*

- To adjust the "pulsating"/"wave" massage function, press the button Ⓔ to the left/right. The massage function is at its strongest level when three LEDs in the button turn on.
- To reduce the massage level, press the Ⓔ button again.
- To switch the massage function off, press the button repeatedly until the LED turns off.

Adjusting the reclining position

- To adjust the reclining position, press and hold the button Ⓗ until the seat reaches its end position.
- Applies to vehicles with reclining seat*: if you select the reclining position, the front passenger's seat moves forward and the backrest reclines. Depending on the last setting, the leg support may fold out at the same time. The front passenger's seat can no longer be used in the reclining position ⇨ ⚠. You can adjust the leg support or fold the display forward in the reclining position.

Selecting the standard seat position

- To adjust the standard seat position, press and hold the button Ⓘ until the seat reaches its end position.
- Applies to vehicles with reclining seat*: if you select the standard seat position, the front passenger's seat moves back into the normal position, the head restraint moves to the upright position and the leg support folds inward ⇨ ⚠.

Adjusting the display*

- To tilt the display forward/back, press and hold the left/right button Ⓓ until the display reaches the desired position.
- Applies to vehicles with reclining seat*: to maintain a clear view of the road when the seat is in the reclining position, press and hold the right button Ⓓ until the display has folded forward. Make sure the driver has a clear view of the exterior mirrors. If so, confirm the question in the Infotainment system with **Yes**. If you answer **No** or do not respond to the question, the display will return to the upright position.

Adjusting the leg support (vehicles with reclining seat*)

Requirement: the reclining position must be selected ⇨ *page 56*.

- To fold the leg support out/in, press and hold the left/right button Ⓖ until the leg support reaches the desired position.
- To angle the leg support so that it is more upright/more reclined or to move it forward/back, adjusting the front passenger's seat accordingly.

Adjusting the front passenger's seat

- Make sure that the front passenger's seat adjustment is switched on in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 58*.
- To activate the front passenger's seat adjustment, press the button Ⓕ.
- To adjust the front passenger's seat forward/back, press the button Ⓒ forward/back.
- To move the front passenger's seat up/down, press the button Ⓒ upward/downward.
- To adjust the front passenger's seat backrest so that is more upright/more reclined, press the button Ⓑ forward/back.
- Applies to vehicles with reclining seat*: to adjust the reclining/standard seat position, press and hold the button Ⓗ/Ⓘ until the front passenger's seat reaches its end position. ▶

WARNING

- The power seats can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off. For this reason, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle - they could be injured!
- Be careful when adjusting the seat. Unsupervised or careless seat adjustment can pinch fingers or hands causing injuries.
- Applies to vehicles with reclining seat*:
  - Do not use the front passenger's seat for seating when it is in the reclining position. This increases the risk of serious injury or death.
  - Never adjust the reclining position when the front passenger's seat is occupied. This increases the risk of injury.
  - Do not tilt the display if the driver's view of the right exterior mirror will be obstructed.
  - Make sure the area between the leg support and the front passenger's seat backrest is clear before folding the leg support in so that you are not pinched.

Tips

- The massage function switches off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.
- If you *cannot* adjust the reclining seat* or the front passenger's seat from the rear, it is possible that:
  - the front passenger's seat memory function is switched off ⇨ *page 59*, or
  - the child safety lock is switched on (the button ⇨ *page 37* or the right button ⇨ *page 37* is turned on in the driver's door), or
  - the front passenger seat adjustment is switched off in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 58*.

Massage function remote control

Applies to: vehicles with reclining seat and massage function

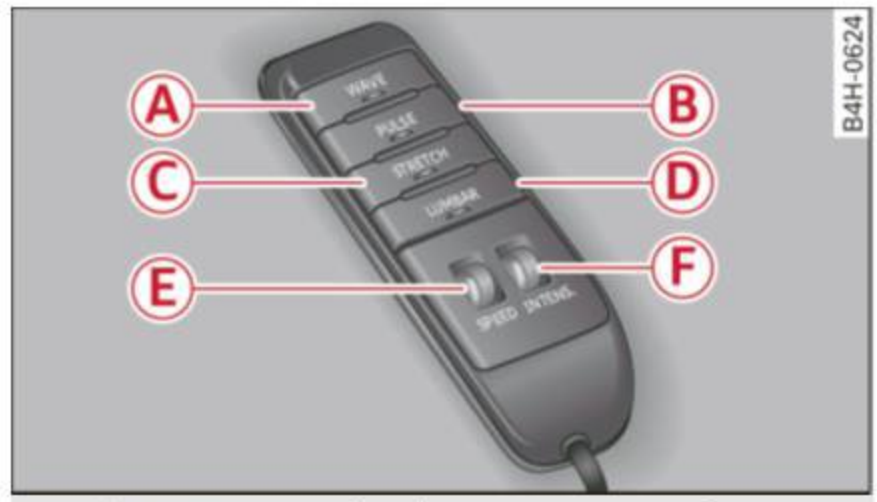


Fig. 66 Remote control: reclining seat massage functions

The remote controls are located in the rear center console ⇨ *page 62, fig. 72*. The massage function is only available when the ignition is switched on.

- ▸ To open the remote control compartment, press the left button and fold the center armrest upward.
- ▸ To adjust the massage type, press the appropriate button Ⓐ - Ⓓ. The LED in the button turns on.
- ▸ To adjust the speed/intensity, turn the thumbwheel Ⓔ/Ⓕ. The LEDs indicate the speed/intensity.
- ▸ Press the selected massage type again to switch the massage function off.

Massage types

Ⓐ - Wave

Ⓑ - Pulsating

Ⓒ - Stretch

Ⓓ - Lumbar

Tips

- The massage function switches off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.
- If you activate a massage type again, the last selected intensity and speed will be selected.

Comfort settings

Applies to: vehicles with comfort seats in the rear

You can also apply several settings for the rear using the Infotainment system in the cockpit.

- Select in the MMI: CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Rear seats**.

Adjust to normal position - with this function, the outer rear seats and the front passenger's seat are moved to the factory setting.

Easy seat entry - the **Easy seat entry** makes it possible to enter and exit the rear seats comfortably. If the function is switched on, the rear seat automatically moves all the way back when the corresponding door is opened.

Passenger's seat adjustment* - if the function is switched on in the Infotainment system, the front passenger's seat can also be adjusted from the rear seat using the ⇨ *page 55, fig. 64* buttons.

The front passenger's seat cannot be adjusted, if
- the front passenger's seat memory function is switched off ⇨ *page 59*.
- the button turns on in the driver's door ⇨ *page 37*.
- The right button turns on in vehicles with power child safety locks* ⇨ *page 37*.

Head restraints

Adjusting the head restraints

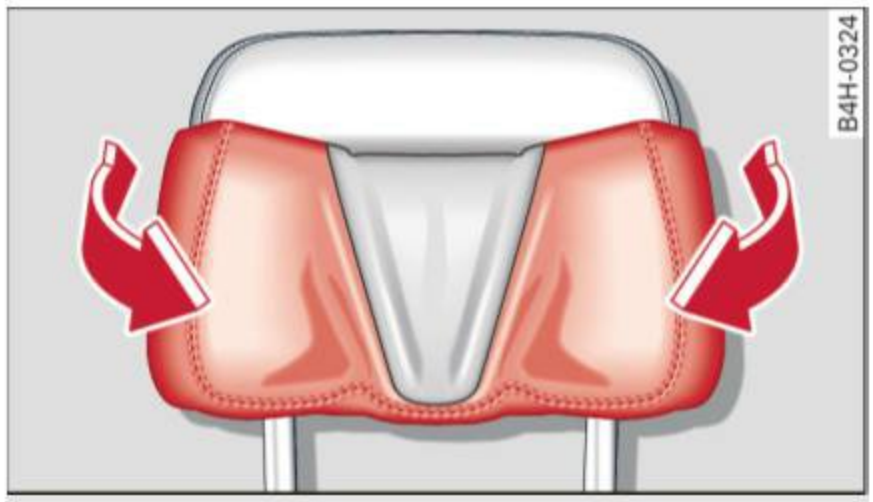


Fig. 67 Comfort head restraint: adjusting the side bolsters

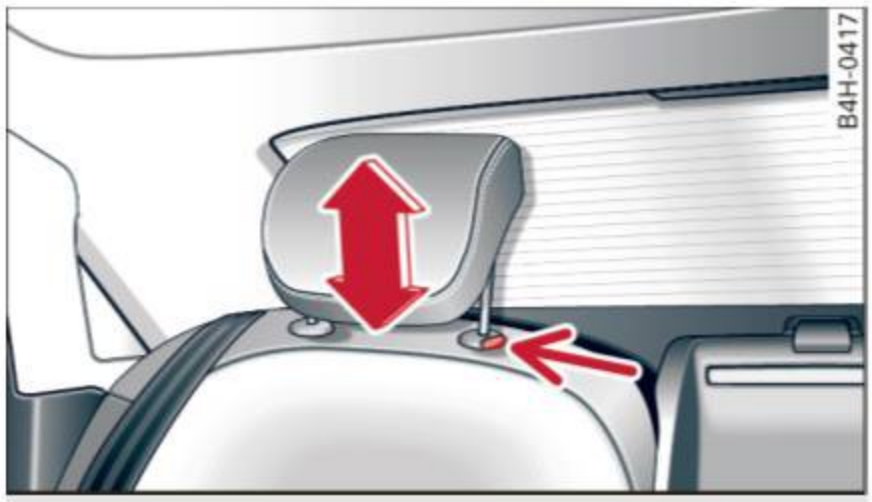


Fig. 68 Outer rear seat: adjusting the head restraint

Adjust the head restraints so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust as close to this position as possible.

Adjusting the front head restraints

- To adjust the height of the front head restraints, pull/press the button Ⓒ ⇨ *page 54, fig. 60* up/down.
- To adjust the side bolsters*, push the side bolsters into the desired position ⇨ *fig. 67*.
- Vehicles with reclining seat*: grab the head restraint at the sides with both hands and slide the head restraint up/down until it clicks into place.

Adjusting the rear head restraints

The center head restraint in the rear is not adjustable. When passengers ride in the outer rear seats, raise these head restraints up to the top position ⇨ ⚠.

- To move the head restraint up, hold it at the sides with both hands and slide it upward until you feel it click into place.
- To move the head restraint down, press the button (small arrow) ⇨ *fig. 68* and slide the head restraint downward.

⚠ WARNING

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ *page 210*.
- Driving with the head restraints not in the upright position increases the risk of serious injury.

Tips

To prevent the head restraints from running into the headline, they are automatically moved forward or upward when the seat is adjusted.

Memory function

Description

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

Using the memory function, you can quickly and easily store a personal seat profile for the driver and front passenger as well as for the outer rear seats* and recall the settings. The memory function is controlled using the remote control key and the memory buttons in the driver's/front passenger's door and in the rear doors*.

The driver's seat profile is stored again and assigned to the remote control key each time the vehicle is locked. When you open the door, the seat profile is automatically recalled. If two people use the vehicle, it is recommended that each person always uses their "own" remote control key.

Two seat profiles can be stored using the memory buttons in the driver's/front passenger's door respectively, and one seat profile can be stored in each of the rear doors*. Once they are stored, these seat profiles can be selected at any time.

The following settings are stored:

	Remote control key	Memory button		
	Driver	Driver	Front passenger	Outer Rear seats*
Seat	X	X	X	X
Head restraint	X	X	X	
Steering wheel*	X	X		
Safety belt*	X	X	X	
Both exterior mirrors*	X	X		

Remote control key

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

The function must be switched on so that the driver's seat profile will be assigned to the remote control key when locking the vehicle.

- Select: the CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Driver's seat** > **Remote control key** > **On**.

Tips

If you do not wish to have the seat profile for another driver assigned to the remote control key, switch the memory function off in the Infotainment system or using the OFF button ⇨ *page 59*.

Memory buttons

Applies to: vehicles with memory function



Fig. 69 Driver's door: memory function buttons

The memory buttons are located in the driver's door, front passenger's door and in the rear doors*.

Switching the memory function on/off

- Press the OFF button to switch the memory function on/off. The LED in the button turns on when the memory function is off. Seat profiles are neither stored nor recalled.

Storing a seat profile

- Press the SET button. When the word **SET** lights up, the memory is ready to store settings.
- Now press a memory button briefly. A tone confirms that the settings were stored.

Accessing a seat profile

- If the driver's door is open and the ignition is switched off, press the memory button.
- If the driver's door is closed or the ignition is switched on, press and hold the memory button until the seat adjustment is complete.

WARNING

– For safety reasons, the seat setting can only be recalled when the vehicle is stationary, otherwise there is a risk of an accident.
– If necessary, you can stop the recall process by pressing the OFF button or any memory button.

Adjusting the front passenger's seat in the Infotainment system

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

The driver can move the front passenger's seat into various positions.

Adjusting the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat

- Select: the CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Passenger's seat** > **Adjust seat position**.
- You can now adjust the front passenger's seat using the driver's seat buttons ⇨ *page 54, fig. 60*.

Align with driver's seat

- To transfer the settings from the driver's seat to the front passenger's seat, select: the CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Passenger's seat** > **Align with driver's seat**.
- Press and hold the control knob until the adjusting process is complete.

Tips

The lumbar support and upper thigh support settings are not transferred when aligning the front passenger's seat with the driver's seat.

12 volt sockets

Applies to: vehicles with sockets

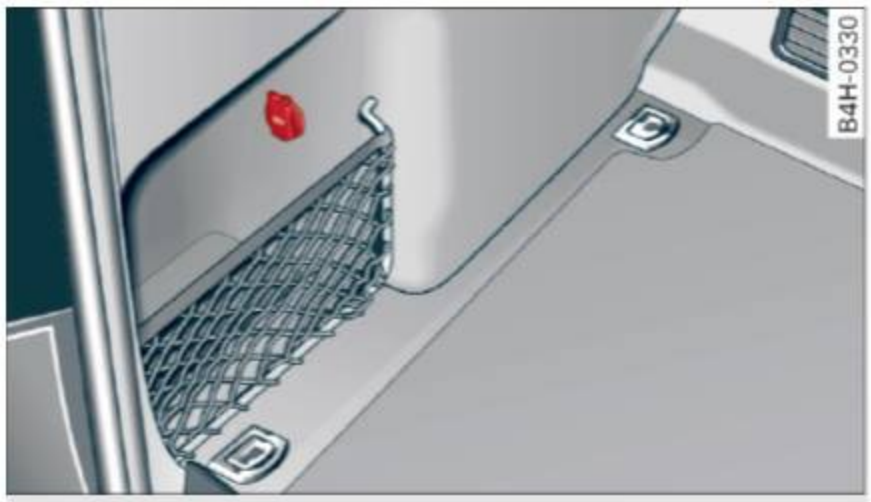


Fig. 70 Side compartment in luggage compartment: 12 volt socket*



Fig. 71 Example of a rear center console: 12 volt socket

The 12-volt sockets can be used for electrical accessories. The power consumption at the outlet must not exceed 120 watts.

There is an additional 12 volt socket in the center console ⇨ *page 63, fig. 75*. ▶

WARNING

The sockets and the electrical accessories connected to them only function when the ignition is switched on. Incorrect usage can lead to serious injuries or burns. To reduce the risk of injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle with the vehicle key.

Note

– Never connect any accessories that provide power (such as solar panels or battery charger for the vehicle battery) to the cigarette lighter. They can damage the vehicle electrical system.
– To reduce the risk of damage to the sockets, only use plugs that fit correctly.

115 volt socket

Applies to: vehicles with 115 volt socket

The 115 volt socket can be used when the ignition is switched on ⇨ ⚠. When you push the connector all the way into the socket, the child safety mechanism releases and current flows through the socket.

Connectable devices

Electrical devices can be connected to the 115 volt socket in the vehicle. The device connected to the socket must not use more than 150 watts of power (300 watts peak power). Check the power usage of the connected device on the type label.

LED on the socket

– The socket is ready for use when the LED is green.
– There is a malfunction if the LED is blinking red. The socket will switch off automatically due to overcurrent or overheating. The socket will switch on again automatically after a cool-down period. Any devices that are connected and switched on will activate again automatically ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– The sockets and the electrical accessories connected to them only function when the ignition is switched on. Incorrect usage can lead to serious injuries or burns. To reduce the risk of injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle with the vehicle key.
– If devices or connectors that are heavy (for example a power supply unit) are attached directly to the socket, the holder can become damaged, which increases the risk of injury.
– To reduce the risk of fatal injury, store all connected devices securely when driving so that they do not move around inside the vehicle when braking or if involved a crash.
– To reduce the risk of fatal injury, do not spill any fluids on the socket. Should any moisture enter the socket, make sure that it has dried out completely before using the socket again.
– Devices connected to the vehicle behave differently than when they are connected to a regular power supply. Therefore, connected devices can become hot during operation, which can increase the risk of injury.
– There is a risk of injury when using adapters and extension cords, because the child safety on the socket is switched off and the socket is powered with current.
– To reduce the risk of fatal injury, do not insert any conductive objects, such as knitting needles, into the contacts on the socket.
– To reduce the risk of injury, switch off any connected electrical devices if the socket has switched off due to overheating.

Note

– Also read the operating manuals for the connected devices.
– Do not connect any lamps that contain neon tubes. Due to technical reasons, this can cause malfunctions in the lamp.
– Do not connect any 230 volt devices to the 115 volt socket. The device can be damaged. Check the permitted voltage of the device according to the type label. ▶

– With some power supply units, such as for laptops, switching them on disables the integrated overcurrent shutdown. In this case, disconnect the power supply unit from the electrical equipment and reconnect after approximately 10 seconds.

Tips

– Devices that are not shielded or devices near the rear window antenna can cause malfunctions in the radio, TV area or in the vehicle electrical system.
– The functions on some devices may be limited due to the low power output (wattage).

Full-length center console

Overview

Applies to: vehicles with full-length center console

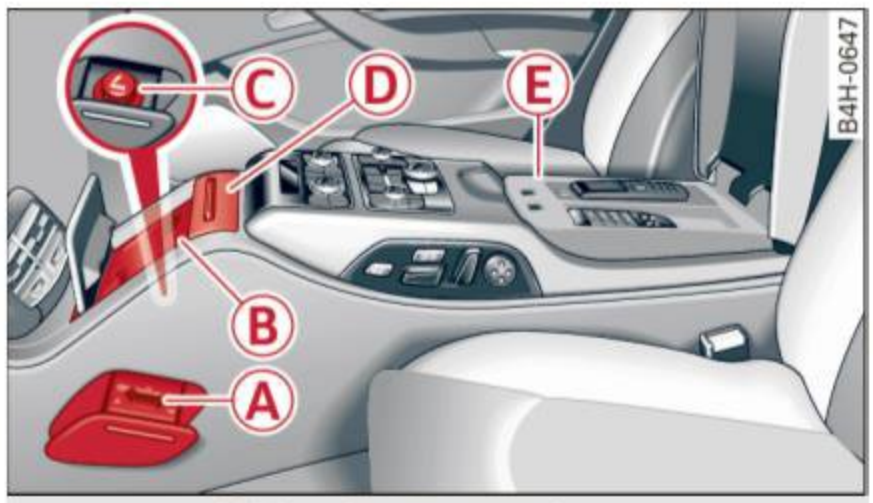


Fig. 72 Rear: full-length center console

Ⓐ - 115 Volt socket ⇨ *page 61*

Ⓑ - Cup holder ⇨ *page 63*

Ⓒ - 12 Volt socket ⇨ *page 60*

Ⓓ - Folding table* ⇨ *page 62*

Ⓔ - center armrest and storage compartments: to open the deep compartment, press the right button and fold the center armrest upward. To open the compartment for the massage function remote control* ⇨ *page 57* and for the telephone*, press the left button and fold the center armrest upward.

Folding table in the center console

Applies to: vehicles with folding table in the center console

The folding table is stored in the front area of the center console.

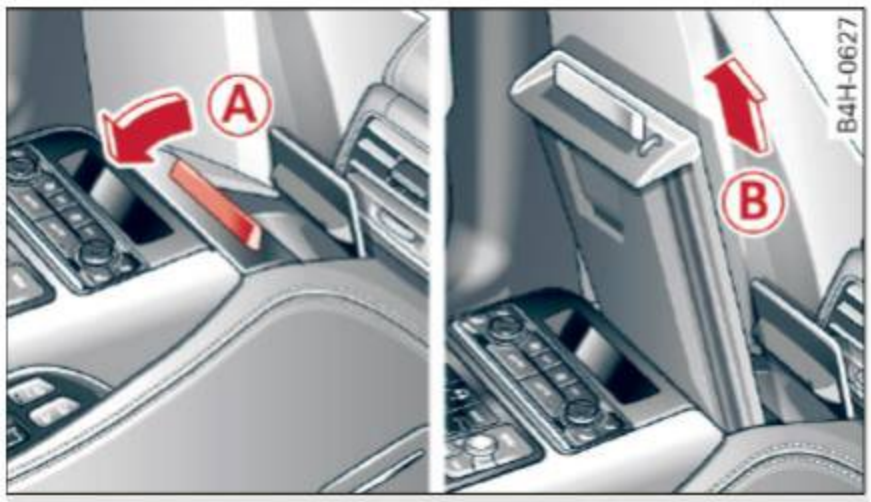


Fig. 73 Rear center console: opening the folding table



Fig. 74 Rear center console: folding table inclined position

Opening

▸ Pull the handle Ⓐ toward the rear ⇨ *fig. 73*. The folding table extends out partially by itself ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Pull the folding table up until it locks into place Ⓑ.
▸ Fold the tabletop back and down Ⓒ.

Storing

▸ Release the tabletop Ⓓ to fold it back.
▸ You can now move the folding table vertically back into its original position.

⚠ WARNING

– Do not open the folding table while driving. Opening the folding table while driving increases the risk of injury in the event of a collision or sudden braking.
– To reduce the risk of pinching, open and close the folding table carefully and in a controlled manner.

Storage

Cup holders



Fig. 75 Center console: front cup holders



Fig. 76 Section of the rear bench seat: cup holder in rear center console

Front cup holders

▸ Tap on the cover to open the cup holders ⇨ *fig. 75*.

Cup holders in the rear center console

▸ Tap on the front strip to open the cup holders.
▸ Set your beverage in the holder.
▸ To close the cup holder, fold the cover back until it clicks into place.

In vehicles with a full-length center console in the rear, the cup holder is located at Ⓑ ⇨ *page 62, fig. 72*.

WARNING

– Do not put any hot beverages in the cup holder while the vehicle is moving. Hot beverages could spill, which can cause injury.
– Do not use any breakable beverage containers (for example, made out of glass or porcelain). You could be injured by them in the event of an accident.

Note

Beverage containers in the cup holders should always have a lid. If not, beverages could spill and cause damage to vehicle equipment, such electronics or seat covers.

Cooled glove compartment

The cooled glove compartment only functions when the A/C system is switched on.



Fig. 77 Glove compartment: switching cooling mode on/off

▸ Turn the knob Ⓐ counter-clockwise to switch the cooling on. The symbols on the knob indicate the correct position.
▸ Turn the knob Ⓐ clockwise to switch the cooling off.

The glove compartment cooling mode only functions when the vehicle A/C system is switched on. If the heating is switched on, switching the glove compartment cooling mode off is recommended.

WARNING

Always leave the lid on the glove compartment cover closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury.

Tips

The glove compartment can be locked using the mechanical key.

Additional storage compartments

You will find a range of storage compartments and holders at different locations in the vehicle.

– Compartments in the doors ▶

– Net in the front passenger footwell
– Glasses holder in the headliner (near the rear-view mirror)
– Storage compartments under the center armrest
– Compartments* on the backrests of the front seats
– Garment hooks above the rear doors
– Compartment behind the rear center armrest (on vehicles without a pass-through* or refrigerator*)
– Cell phone holder* in the right rear door
– Bag hooks* in the luggage compartment

WARNING

– When driving, do not leave any hard objects on the rear window shelf or allow your pet to sit on the shelf. They could become a hazard for vehicle occupants in the event of sudden braking or a crash.
– Any articles of clothing that you have hung up must not interfere with the driver's view. The coat hooks are designed only for lightweight clothing. Never hang any clothing with hard, pointed or heavy objects in the pockets on the coat hooks. During sudden braking or in an accident - especially if the airbag is deployed - these objects could injure any passengers inside the vehicle.
– To reduce the risk of personal injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove compartment closed while driving.
– Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 244, Important safety instructions on the side airbag system*.
– Hang clothes in such a way that they do not impair the driver's vision.
– The coat hooks must only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp edged objects in the pockets which may interfere with the side curtain airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a crash.
– Do not use coat hangers for hanging clothing on the coat hooks as this can interfere with proper deployment of the side curtain airbags in an accident.
– Do not hang heavy objects on the coat hooks, as they could cause personal injury in a sudden stop.

Note

Objects on the rear shelf that rub against the rear window can damage the rear window defogger wires.

Tips

– A vent slot is located between the shelf and the rear window. Do not block the vent with any items you may place on the rear window shelf.
– Do not place bulky items on the rear window shelf as they could restrict or block the driver's vision in the rear view mirror.

Roof rack

Applies to: vehicles with roof rack

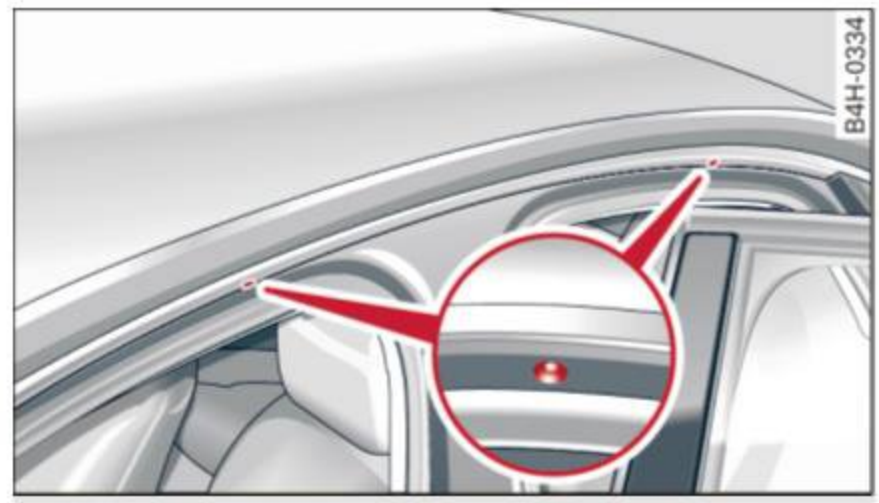


Fig. 78 Attachment points for the roof rack

If luggage or cargo is to be carried on the roof, you must observe the following:

– Only a specially designed roof rack may be used on your vehicle. These roof racks are the basis for a complete roof rack system. Additional attachments/carrier systems are necessary to transport luggage and sports equipment. We recommend roof racks and attachments from the Audi Genuine Accessories program.
– When installing the roof rack, make sure that it is mounted only at the designated points on the roof ⇨ *fig. 78*.
– The permissible roof load for your vehicle is 220 lbs (100 kg). The roof load is the total of the weight of the roof rack, the attachments and the cargo you are carrying. However, you ▶

must also note the permitted load of the carrier system being used. For the permitted axle load and the permitted total vehicle weight, refer to ⇨ *page 333*.

WARNING

- Follow the installation instructions provided with the roof rack system. If you do not secure the roof rack system and objects on the roof correctly, they could come loose from the vehicle and cause an accident.
- Using a roof rack system increases the risk of an accident, because it changes the driving characteristics by shifting the center of gravity and/or the increasing the surface area exposed to wind. Adapt your driving and speed to the current conditions.

Note

Make sure that the open luggage compartment lid and the tilting/sliding sunroof* do not come into contact with objects on the roof.

For the sake of the environment

Your vehicle will use more fuel due to the increased wind resistance. So remove the roof rack after using it.

Luggage compartment

General information

WARNING

Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 213, Storing cargo correctly*.

Tie-downs and luggage compartment net

The luggage compartment net prevents smaller objects from sliding out of place.*



Fig. 79 Luggage compartment: location of the tie-downs



Fig. 80 Luggage compartment: cargo net stretched out

- ▸ To secure the luggage compartment net*, fold the tie-down retainer upward ⇨ *fig. 79*.
- ▸ Attach the hooks for the luggage compartment net* into the tie-downs ⇨ *fig. 80*.

Pass-through with ski bag

Preparing the pass-through

Applies to: vehicles with pass-through and ski bag

Long objects, such as skis, can be transported in the bag.



Fig. 81 Rear bench seat: removing the protective cover

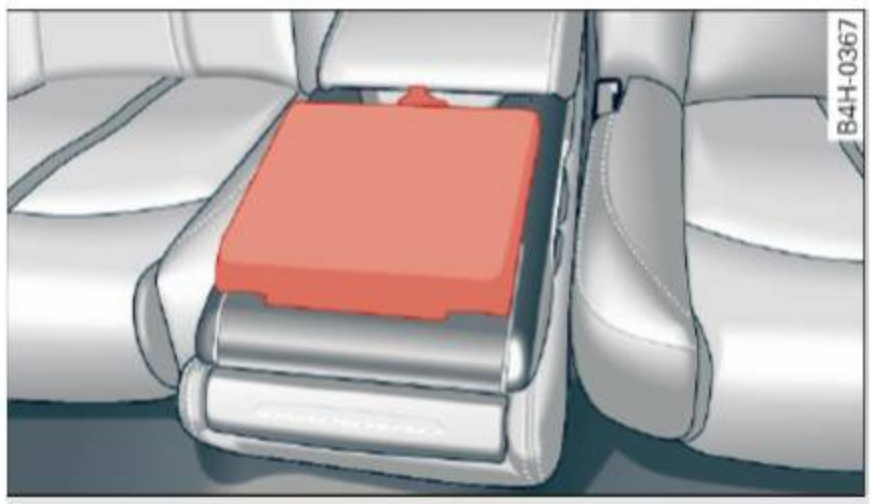


Fig. 82 Rear center armrest: applying the protective cover

- ▸ Fold down the rear center armrest and the cover behind it
- ▸ To remove the protective cover, press the button ⇨ *fig. 81*.
- ▸ To protect the front area of the center armrest, position the cover as shown in the image ⇨ *fig. 82* and press down on its suction cups.
- ▸ Push the packed bag* through the opening from the luggage compartment. The zipper must face toward the rear.
- ▸ Secure the bag ⇨ *page 66*.

Securing the ski bag

Applies to: vehicles with pass-through and ski bag

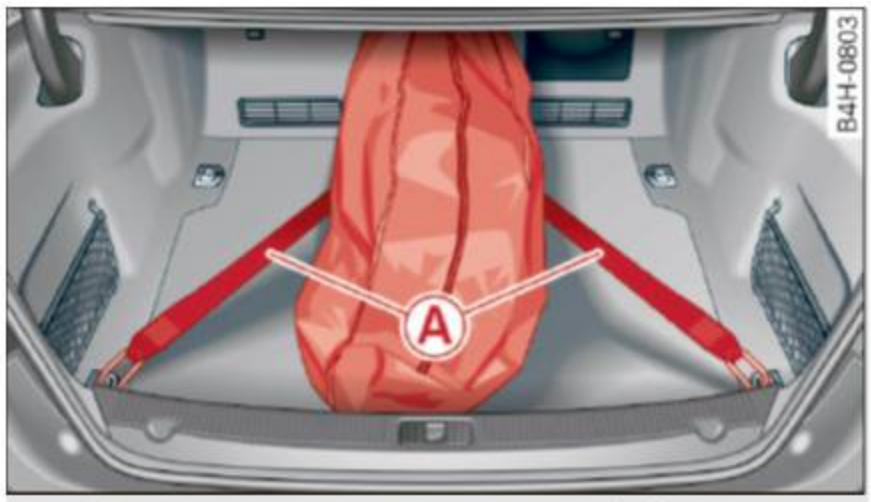


Fig. 83 Luggage compartment: securing the bag*

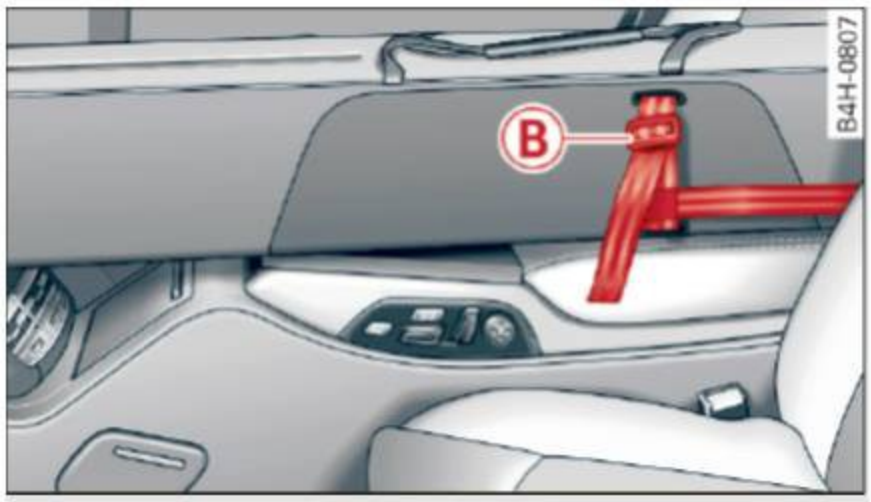


Fig. 84 Rear bench seat: securing the bag

There are two straps with hooks Ⓐ on the sides of the bag* ⇨ *fig. 83*. There is also a securing strap Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 84* on the bag.

- ▸ To secure the bag in the luggage compartment, engage the hooks into the rear tie-downs ⇨ *fig. 83*.
- ▸ Tighten the strap on the bag to prevent the objects in the bag from sliding around ⇨ *fig. 84*.

WARNING

- – The big is only intended for transporting skis and other light objects. To reduce the risk of serious injuries, never transport heavy or sharp objects in the bag.
- – After loading, the bag must be secured with the strap.
- – Make sure that all objects that you are transporting in the pass-through are secure. They could slide around and increase the risk of injury when braking or during an accident.

Tips

– Only fold the bag up if it is dry.
– When transporting skis or snowboards, tighten the securing strap between the bindings.
– Lay skis in the bag with the points facing forward and snowboards and ski pole points facing the rear.

Refrigerator

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with refrigerator

Clean the refrigerator before the first use ⇨ *table on page 308*.

You can only switch the refrigerator on, if:

– the temperature in the luggage compartment is less than 131° F (55 °C). If the refrigerator is switched on, it will automatically switch off if the temperature in the luggage compartment exceeds 131° F (55 °C). If the temperature goes back below 131° F (55 °C), the refrigerator will automatically switch on again.
– The charge level of the vehicle battery is sufficient. The refrigerator is automatically switched off if the electrical system voltage falls below the specified minimum value. This prevents the vehicle battery from discharging. The refrigerator automatically switches back on if the electrical system voltage increases again, for example after starting the vehicle.

When the cooling function is working optimally, the cooling function reaches 43° F (+6 °C) and the freezing function reaches 21° F (-6 °C). The cooling temperature in the refrigerator also depends on the luggage compartment temperature. When the temperature in the luggage compartment is high, there may only be a limited cooling effect.

WARNING

To avoid any injury risks to the passengers caused by the refrigerator, the following safety precautions must be followed:

– The maximum load capacity for the freezer is 5.5 lbs (2.5 kg).
– Never overload the refrigerator. There is a risk of injury in the event of a collision or sudden braking.
– The refrigerator cover must always be closed and locked while driving. The refrigerator contents could enter the vehicle interior during a collision or sudden braking maneuver, which increases the risk of injury.
– Never store flammable fluids, gas containers and similar objects in the refrigerator due to the risk of an explosion. This also applies to goods and products that can emit volatile or flammable gases.
– At temperatures of 32° F (0 °C) and lower, frozen liquid inside glass containers can cause the containers to burst.

Note

– The ventilation openings for the refrigerator are at the rear panel trim panel in the luggage compartment and must not be covered.
– If the refrigerator is not functioning correctly, turn it off to prevent any damage. Have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with refrigerator



Fig. 85 Rear center armrest

Depending on the equipment, the refrigerator may be located in the rear behind the center armrest or behind the sun shade. It refrigerates or freezes only when the ignition is switched on. ▶

Opening and closing the refrigerator

- ▸ Pull the release lever (1) ⇨ *fig. 85* to open the refrigerator.
- ▸ Push the cover back into its closed position to close the refrigerator. The cover is closed correctly if the release lever (1) audibly engages.

Switching on/off

- ▸ Press the button (A) ⇨ *fig. 85* to switch the cooling function on or off. The symbol in the button lights up when the function is switched on.
- ▸ Press the button (B) to switch the freezer function on or off. The symbol in the button lights up when the function is switched on.

Tips

– To avoid a build-up of condensation, only open the refrigerator cover as briefly and quickly as possible.
– Do not place any warm food or drinks in the refrigerator.

Warm and cold

Deluxe automatic climate control

Description

The climate control system warms, cools and removes humidity from the air in the vehicle interior. It is the most effective when the windows and sunroof* are closed. If there is a build-up of heat inside the vehicle, ventilation can help to speed up the cooling process.

In all heating mode functions, except for defrost, the blower only switches to a higher speed once the engine coolant has reached a sufficient temperature.

Pollutant filter

The pollutant filter removes pollutants such as dust and pollen from the air.

Key recognition

The climate control settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key that is in use.

WARNING

Poor visibility can lead to accidents.

– For safer driving, keep all windows free of ice, snow and fog.
– Become familiar as quickly as possible with the correct use and function of the climate control system, especially with the defrosting and defogging function.
– When the temperature is below freezing, only use the windshield washer system after the windshield has been warmed by the climate control system. The washer fluid could freeze on the windshield and impair visibility.

Note

– If you suspect that the climate control system is damaged, switch the system off to prevent further damage and have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Repairs to the Audi climate control system require special technical knowledge and special tools. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

For the sake of the environment

Reducing the amount of fuel used also reduces the amount of pollutants that enter the air.

Tips

– To prevent interference with the heating and cooling output and to prevent the windows from fogging over, the air intake in front of the windshield must be free of ice, snow or leaves.
– Condensation from the cooling system can drip and form a puddle of water under the vehicle. This is normal and does not mean there is a leak.
– The energy management system may temporarily switch off certain functions, such as the seat heating* or rear window defogger. These systems are available again as soon as the energy supply has been restored.

Operation

We recommend pressing the AUTO button and setting the temperature to 72 °F (22 °C).



Fig. 86 Cockpit controls



Fig. 87 Rear controls: 4-zone deluxe automatic climate control

Press the buttons to turn the functions on or off. The LED in a button will light up when the function is switched on. Use the knob to adjust the temperature, the blower speed and the air distribution*. The driver and front passenger settings can be adjusted separately.

Applies to: vehicles with 4-zone deluxe automatic climate control

You can adjust the rear left and right sides using the rear controls ⇨ *fig. 87*.

OFF Switching the climate control system on/off

The OFF button switches the climate control system on or off. It also switches on when you press the knob. The OFF button in the rear only switches the A/C system on/off in the rear of the vehicle. Airflow from outside is blocked when the climate control system is switched off.

A/C Switching cooling mode on and off

The air is not cooled and humidity is not removed when cooling mode is switched off. This can cause fog on the windows. The cooling mode switches off automatically when there are cold outside temperatures.

Switching recirculation mode on and off

In recirculation mode, the air inside the vehicle is circulated and filtered. This prevents the unfiltered air outside the vehicle from entering the vehicle interior. We recommend switching recirculation mode on when driving through a tunnel or when sitting in traffic ⇨ ⚠.

The AUTO button or FRONT button switches recirculation mode off.

AUTO Switching automatic mode on

Automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, airflow and air distribution are controlled automatically.

If press and hold the button longer, 72 °F (22 °C) will be set. ▶

Adjusting the temperature

Temperatures between 60 °F (+16 °C) and 84 °F (+28 °C) can be set. Outside of this range, **LO** or **HI** will appear in the climate control system display. At both of these settings, the climate control system runs continuously at maximum cooling or heating power. There is no temperature regulation.

Adjusting the amount of air

You can adjust the airflow manually to suit your needs. The blower should always run at a low setting to prevent the windows from fogging and to ensure a continuous exchange of air inside the vehicle. To have the airflow regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

Adjusting the air distribution

You can manually select the vents where the air will flow. To have the air distribution regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

/ * Adjusting seat heating/ventilation*

Pressing the button switches the seat heating/ventilation on at the highest setting (level 3). The LEDs indicate the temperature level. To reduce the temperature, press the button again. To switch the seat heating/ventilation off, press the button repeatedly until the LED turns off.

After 10 minutes, the seat heating/ventilation automatically switches from level 3 to level 2.

FRONT Switching the defroster on and off

The windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible. The maximum amount of air flows mainly from the vents below the windshield. Recirculation mode switches off. The temperature should be set to approximately 72 °F (22 °C).

The AUTO button switches the defroster off.

REAR Switching the rear window defogger on and off

The rear window defogger only operates when the engine is running. It switches off automatically after 10 to 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To prevent the rear window defogger from switching off automatically, press and hold the REAR button for more than three seconds. This is stored until the ignition is switched off.

SYNC Synchronization*

When synchronization is switched on, the settings for the driver's side are applied to the front passenger's side (except for seat heating/ventilation*). The rear is also synchronized in vehicles with the 4-zone deluxe automatic climate control system*. Synchronization switches off if the settings are adjusted on the front passenger's side or in the rear*.

You can synchronize the settings in a row by pressing and holding a knob. For example, to apply the settings for the front passenger's side to the driver's side, press and hold the knob on the front passenger's side.

Vents

You can open or close the center and rear vents in the cockpit and the vents in the rear center console and door pillars using the ridged thumbwheels. The levers adjust the direction of the airflow from the vents.

Residual heat

You can activate the residual heat function when the ignition is switched off by pressing and holding the button. The residual heat from the coolant is used to heat the vehicle interior. The residual heat function switches off automatically after about 30 minutes.

WARNING

- You should not use the recirculation mode for an extended period of time since no fresh air is drawn in. With the air-conditioning switched off, the windows can fog up, which increases the risk of an accident.
- Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the seat heating function. To reduce the risk of injury, these individuals should not use seat heating.

Note

To avoid damage to the heating elements in the seats, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy loads on a small area of the seat.

Basic settings

The climate control system basic settings are accessed in the Infotainment system.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **AC**.

Rear seat settings*

When this function is selected, all settings for the rear can be adjusted through the climate control system in the cockpit. The climate control system settings cannot be adjusted in the rear seat at the same time. This function switches off after a certain period of time or when one of the dials in the cockpit is pressed.

Auto recirculation*

The sensitivity level of the automatic recirculation mode can be set at various levels from **Off** to **Max**. When recirculation mode is switched on, the air recirculation is controlled automatically. If the windows fog up, press the FRONT button.

Footwell temperature

You can adjust the footwell temperature so that it is cooler or warmer.

Solar roof*

Parking ventilation is controlled automatically in the **Auto** setting.

When the ignition is switched off, solar-powered parking ventilation may switch on, as long as

– there is sufficient sunlight,
– the outside temperature is not too low,
– the sunroof is closed or tilted and
– **Auto** (Infotainment system) is set

Steering wheel heating

Applies to: vehicles with steering wheel heating

The steering wheel rim can be heated.

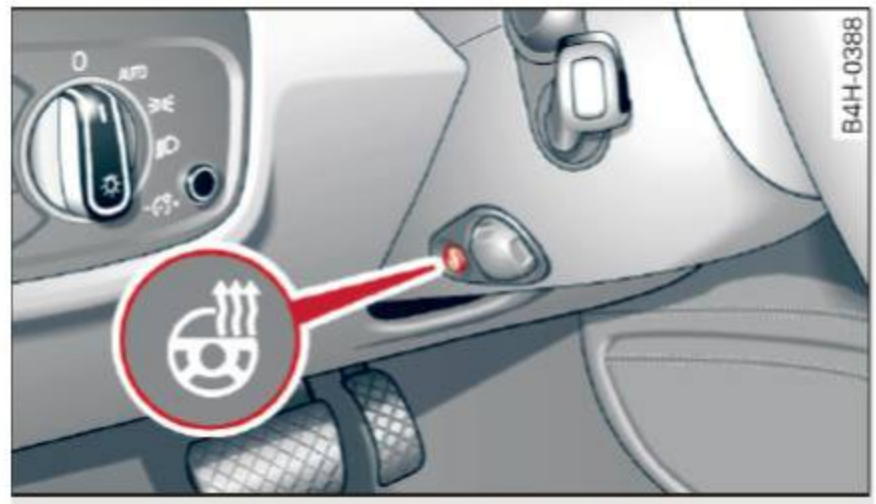


Fig. 88 Steering column: steering wheel heating button

▸ Press the button to switch steering wheel heating on/off. The message **Steering wheel heating on/Steering wheel heating off** appears in the instrument cluster display.

The temperature is maintained at a constant level when steering wheel heating is switched on.

The steering wheel heating settings are stored automatically and assigned to the remote control key that is in use.

Driving

General information

Breaking in

A new vehicle must be broken in, and the break-in distance should be 1,000 miles (1,500 km). Do not drive at speeds that will exceed 2/3 of the maximum permitted engine speed (RPM) for the first 600 miles (1,000 km), and avoid full acceleration during this period. You may gradually start increasing the RPM and the speed between 600 miles (1,000 km) and 1,000 miles (1,500 km).

During the first hours of use, the engine has a higher internal friction than later on when all moving parts have settled into place with each other.

How the vehicle is driven during the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) also affects the engine quality. Drive at moderate engine speeds after the initial break-in period, particularly when running a cold engine. This will reduce engine wear and improve the mileage.

Do not drive at too *low* of an engine speed (rpm). Shift down if the engine stops running "smoothly". Extremely high engine speeds are automatically reduced.

New tires

If your vehicle is running on new tires, drive particularly careful for the first 350 miles (500 kilometers) after fitting.

WARNING

New tires tend to be slippery and must also be "broken-in". Be sure to remember this during the first 350 miles (500 kilometers). Brake gently. Avoid following closely behind other vehicles or other situations that might require sudden, hard braking.

Avoid damaging the vehicle

When you are driving on poor roads, or over curbs, steep ramps, etc., make certain that low-lying parts such as spoilers and exhaust system parts do not bottom out and get damaged.

This is especially true for vehicles with low-slung chassis (sports chassis)* and fully loaded vehicles.

Driving through water on roads

Note the following to reduce the risk of vehicle damage when driving through water, for example on flooded roads:

– The water must not be any higher than the bottom of the vehicle body.
– Do not drive faster than walking speed.

WARNING

After driving through water or mud, the effectiveness of the brakes may be reduced due to moisture on the brake rotors and brake pads. A few careful brake applications should dry off the brakes.

Note

– Vehicle components such as the engine, transmission, suspension or electrical system can be severely damaged by driving through water.
– Always switch off the Start/Stop system when driving through water ⇨ *page 78*.

Tips

– Determine the depth before driving through water.
– Do not stop the vehicle, drive in reverse or switch the engine off when driving through water.
– Keep in mind that oncoming vehicles may create waves that raise the water level and make it too deep for your vehicle to drive through safely.
– Avoid driving through salt water, because this can cause corrosion.

4H0012721BD

Economical and environmentally-friendly driving

The amount of fuel consumption, the environmental impact and the wear to the engine, brakes and tires depends mostly on your driving style. With an anticipatory and economic driving style, fuel consumption can be reduced by approximately 10-15%. The following tips will help you conserve the environment and your money at the same time.

Anticipatory driving

A vehicle uses the most fuel when accelerating. When you drive with anticipation, you do not need to brake as often and so you accelerate less. When possible, let your vehicle coast with a **gear engaged**, for example, when you notice that the next traffic light is red. This produces an engine braking effect, which helps to protect the brakes and tires and reduces the emissions and fuel consumption to zero (fuel shut-off during deceleration).

Shift efficiently

An effective way to save fuel is to upshift earlier. Staying in a gear too long uses fuel unnecessarily. Press down on the accelerator pedal slowly and avoid “kick-down”.

Avoid full acceleration

You should rarely travel at the maximum vehicle speed. High speeds cause a disproportionately high increase in fuel consumption, emissions and traffic noise. Slower driving saves fuel.

Reduce idling time

The Start-Stop system* helps to reduce the idling time automatically. In vehicles without the Start-Stop system*, it is efficient to switch the engine off when stopped at railroad crossings and long red lights. Stopping the engine for 30-40 seconds already saves more fuel than the amount of extra fuel needed to restart the engine.

It takes a very long time in idle to warm the engine up to operating temperature. Wear and emissions are especially high in the warm-up phase. Therefore, you should begin driving immediately after starting the engine. Avoid high RPMs while doing this.

Have maintenance performed regularly

By having maintenance performed regularly on your vehicle, you can help to reduce fuel consumption before you even start to drive. The maintenance condition of your vehicle not only affects traffic safety and long-term value but also impacts fuel consumption. A poorly maintained engine can lead to fuel consumption that is 10% higher than normal.

Avoid short trips

The engine and exhaust cleaning system must reach their optimal operating temperature to effectively reduce consumption and emissions.

A cold engine uses a disproportionately high amount of fuel. The engine reaches operating temperature and consumption normalizes only after approximately four kilometers.

Check the tire pressure

To save fuel, make sure the tires are always inflated to the correct pressure ⇨ *page 291*. The fuel consumption can increase by 5% if the pressure is only 0.5 bar too low. Due to the increased rolling resistance, low tire pressures will also lead to greater tire wear and will affect driving behavior.

Drive with summer tires when possible because this can increase fuel economy by up to 10%.

Eliminate unnecessary weight

Since every pound of extra weight increases fuel consumption, it pays to remove any unnecessary weight.

A roof rack increases the wind resistance on the vehicle and should be removed when it is not needed. You will save approximately 12% of your fuel when at speeds from 62-75 mph (100-120 km/h).

Save energy

The engine drives the generator, which generates electricity; the fuel consumption also increases with the demand for electricity. Therefore, switch ▶

electrical equipment off when you no longer need it. Examples of equipment that use a lot of energy are air blowers at a high setting, the rear window defogger and seat heating*.

Note

Do not leave engine idling unattended after starting. If warning lights should come on to indicate improper operation, they would go unheeded. Extended idling also produces heat, which could result in overheating or other damage to the vehicle or other property.

Note

– Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.
– Do not alter or remove any component of the Emission Control System unless approved by the manufacturer.
– Do not alter or remove any device, such as heat shields, switches, ignition wires, valves, which are designed to protect your vehicle's Emission Control System and other important vehicle components.

Tips

The consumption estimates as published by ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA) and Transport Canada may not correspond to your actual consumption on the road, which will vary depending upon vehicle load and speed, road and weather conditions, trip length, etc.

Steering

Adjusting the steering wheel position

The steering column can be power adjusted up and down and forward and back.

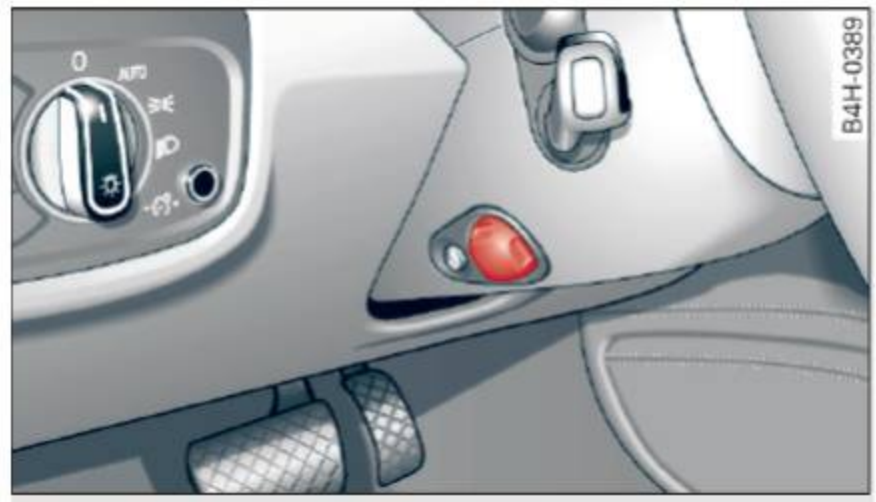


Fig. 89 Switch for steering column adjustment

Requirement: the driver's seat is set correctly.

- To adjust the height, press the switch up/down. The steering column will continue moving as long as you are pressing the switch.
- To move the steering wheel forward or back, press the switch forward/back. The steering column will continue moving as long as you are pressing the switch.

The steering wheel can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off.

In vehicles with memory function*, the steering column settings are stored together with the seat position.

WARNING

Improper use of steering wheel adjustment and improper seating position can cause serious personal injury.
– Adjust the steering wheel column only when the vehicle is not moving to prevent loss of vehicle control.
– Adjust the driver's seat or steering wheel so that there is a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your chest and the steering wheel ⇨ *page 208, fig. 218*. If you cannot maintain this minimum distance, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.

- If physical limitations prevent you from sitting 10 in (25 cm) or more from the steering wheel, check with your authorized Audi dealer to see if adaptive equipment is available.
- If the steering wheel is aligned with your face, the supplemental driver's airbag cannot provide as much protection in an accident. Always make sure that the steering wheel is aligned with your chest.
- Always hold the steering wheel with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag deploys.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag deploys.

Entry assistance

Easy seat entry makes it easier to enter and exit the vehicle by adjusting the steering column automatically.

▸ In the Infotainment system, select the CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Driver's seat** > **Easy seat entry** > **On**.

When easy seat entry is switched on, the steering column goes back up into the park position when the ignition is switched off. After entering the vehicle, the steering column returns to the stored position once the ignition is switched on.

Starting and stopping the engine

Starting the engine

The START ENGINE STOP button switches the ignition on and starts the engine.



Fig. 90 Center console: START ENGINE STOP button

Switching the ignition on/off

▸ To switch the ignition on or off, press the START ENGINE STOP button. Do not press the brake pedal while doing this.

Starting the engine

▸ Press the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button ⇨ *fig. 90*. The engine will start.

If the engine does not start immediately, the starting procedure stops automatically after a short time. Repeat the starting process.

Start/Stop system

Read the information in ⇨ *page 78, Start/Stop system*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of poisoning, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces.

Note

Avoid high engine speed, full throttle, and heavy engine load if the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. You could damage the engine. ▸

Tips

– Some noise after starting the engine is normal and is no cause for concern.
– If you leave the vehicle with the ignition switched on, the ignition will switch off after a certain amount of time. Make sure that electrical equipment such as the exterior lights are switched off.

Stopping the engine

▸ Bring the vehicle to a full stop.
▸ Select the P or N selector lever position.
▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button ⇨ *page 76, fig. 90*.

Steering lock

The steering locks when you turn the engine off using the START ENGINE STOP button and open the driver's door. The locked steering helps prevent vehicle theft.

Emergency off function

If it is absolutely necessary, the engine can also be turned off while driving in the R, D or S selector lever position at speeds below 6 mph (10 km/h). To stop the engine, press and hold the START ENGINE STOP button and also press the brake pedal.

WARNING

– Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. The full function of the brake booster and the power steering is not guaranteed. You must use more force to turn or brake. Because you cannot steer and brake as you usually would, this could lead to accidents and serious injuries.
– Always take the key with you whenever you leave your vehicle. Otherwise, the engine could be started or electrical equipment such as the power windows could be operated. This can lead to serious injury.
– For safety reasons, always park the vehicle with the selector lever in the P position. Otherwise, there is the risk that the vehicle could roll unintentionally.

Note

If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period of time, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is switched off and there is a risk of damaging the engine. For this reason, let the engine run at idle for approximately two minutes before shutting it off.

Tips

After the engine has been switched off, the radiator fan can continue to run for up to 10 minutes - even with the ignition switched off. It can also switch on again after some time if the coolant temperature rises as the result of heat buildup or if the engine is already warm and the engine compartment is also heated by the sun's rays.

Messages in the instrument cluster display

Turn off ignition before leaving car

This message appears and a warning tone sounds if you open the driver's door when the ignition is switched on.

Press brake pedal to start engine

This message appears when you press the START ENGINE STOP button to start the engine and do not press the brake pedal while doing so. The engine can only be started when the brake pedal is pressed.

Key not in vehicle?

This indicator light turns on and this message appears if the ignition key was removed from the vehicle when the engine was running. If the ignition key is no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch on the ignition or start the engine once you stop it. You also cannot lock the vehicle from the outside.

Shift to P, otherwise vehicle can roll away. Doors do not lock if lever is not in P. ▶

This driver message appears for safety reasons if the transmission has not been shifted to the P position when you switch the ignition off. Move the selector lever to the P position. Otherwise the vehicle is not protected from rolling and it cannot be locked.

Key is not recognized. Hold back of key against marked area. See owner's manual

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there is a malfunction ⇨ *page 78*.

Turn off ignition before leaving car

This message appears if the driver's door is opened while the ignition is switched on. Always switch off the ignition if you are leaving the vehicle.

Shift to P and turn off ignition before leaving car, otherwise vehicle can roll away

This message appears if the driver's door is opened while the ignition is switched on and the transmission has not been shifted to the P position. Shift the transmission into the P position and turn off the ignition if you are leaving the vehicle. Otherwise the vehicle could roll.

Starting the engine when there is a malfunction

It may not be possible to start the engine under certain circumstances, for example if the battery in the vehicle key is drained, if interference is affected the key or if there is a system malfunction.



Fig. 91 Center console/remote control key: starting the engine if there is a malfunction

Requirement: the message **Key is not recognized. Hold back of key against marked area.** **See owner's manual** must appear and the indicator light must turn on.

- Hold the remote control key vertically in the location indicated ⇨ *fig. 91*.
- Press the brake pedal.
- Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will start.
- Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

You can view the message again by pressing the START ENGINE STOP button.

Start/Stop system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

The Start/Stop system can help increase fuel economy and reduce CO_2 emissions.

In Start/Stop mode, the engine shuts off automatically when the vehicle is stopped, such as at a traffic light. The ignition remains switched on during this stop phase. The engine will restart automatically when needed.

The last Start/Stop system setting is restored when the ignition is switched on.

Basic requirements for Start/Stop mode

– The driver's door must be closed.
– The driver's seat belt much be fastened.
– The hood must be closed.
– The vehicle must have driven faster than 2.5 mph (4 km/h) since the last time it stopped.
– A trailer must not be hitched to the vehicle.

WARNING

– Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. The full function of the brake booster and the power steering is not guaranteed. You must use more force to turn or brake. Because you cannot steer and brake as you usually ▶

would, this could lead to accidents and serious injuries.
– To reduce the risk of injuries, make sure that the Start/Stop system is turned off when working in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 80*.

Note

Always switch off the Start/Stop system when driving through water ⇨ *page 80*.

Starting/stopping the engine

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system



Fig. 92 Instrument cluster: engine switched off (stop phase)

- ► Slow the vehicle to a stop using the brake and keep pressing the brake pedal. The engine will switch off. The Ⓐ indicator light appears in the information line in the instrument cluster display.
- ► When you take your foot off the brake pedal, the engine restarts. The indicator light turns off.

Additional information

The engine will switch off in the P, D, N and S positions as well as in manual mode. In the P position, the engine will also remain off if you take your foot off the brake pedal. The engine starts again when you select another selector lever position and take your foot off the brake pedal.

If you select the R position during a Stop phase, the engine will start again.

Shift from D to P quickly to prevent the engine from starting unintentionally when shifting through R.

You can determine for yourself if the engine will stop or not by reducing or increasing the amount of force you use to press the brake pedal. For example, if you only lightly press on the brake pedal in stop-and-go traffic or when turning, the engine will not switch off when the vehicle is stationary. As soon as you press the brake down harder, the engine will switch off.

Tips

– Press the brake pedal during a Stop phase to keep the vehicle from rolling.
– The ignition will turn off if you press the START ENGINE STOP button during a stop phase.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

The standard Start/Stop mode can be canceled for various system-related reasons.

Engine does not switch off

Before each stop phase, the system checks if certain conditions have been met. If the Ⓐ indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display, the engine will not be stopped, for example in the following situations:

– The engine has not reached the minimum required temperature for Start/Stop mode.
– The interior temperature selected by the A/C system has not been reached.
– The outside temperature is extremely high/low.
– The windshield is being defrosted ⇨ *page 71*.
– The parking system* is be switched on.
– The vehicle battery charge level is too low.
– The steering wheel is turned at a sharp angle or is moving.
– After engaging the reverse gear.
– On sharp inclines.

Engine automatically restarts

The standard Start/Stop mode will be canceled during a stop phase in the following situations. The engine restarts without any action by the driver. ►

– The interior temperature differs from the temperature selected in the A/C system.
– The windshield is being defrosted ⇨ *page 71*.
– The brake pedal is pressed several times in a row.
– The vehicle battery charge level is too low.
– Power consumption is high.

Ignition is switched off automatically

To prevent the vehicle battery from draining, the ignition will switch off **automatically** under the following conditions:

– The vehicle must have already been driven.
– The Start/Stop system has stopped the engine.
– The driver's door must be open.
– The driver's safety belt must be unbuckled.
– The brake pedal must not be pressed.
– The vehicle must be stationary.

In this case, the activated low beam is replaced by the parking light. The parking lights will switch off after approximately 30 minutes or when you lock the vehicle.

If the Start/Stop system has not turned off the engine or if you have switched the Start/Stop system off manually, the ignition will not be automatically switched off and the engine will continue to run ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of poisoning, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces.

Tips

If you select the D, N or S selector lever position after shifting into reverse, the vehicle must be driven faster than 6 mph (10 km/h) in order for the engine to switch off again.

Manually switching the Start/Stop system off/on

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

If you do not wish to use the system, you can switch it off manually.

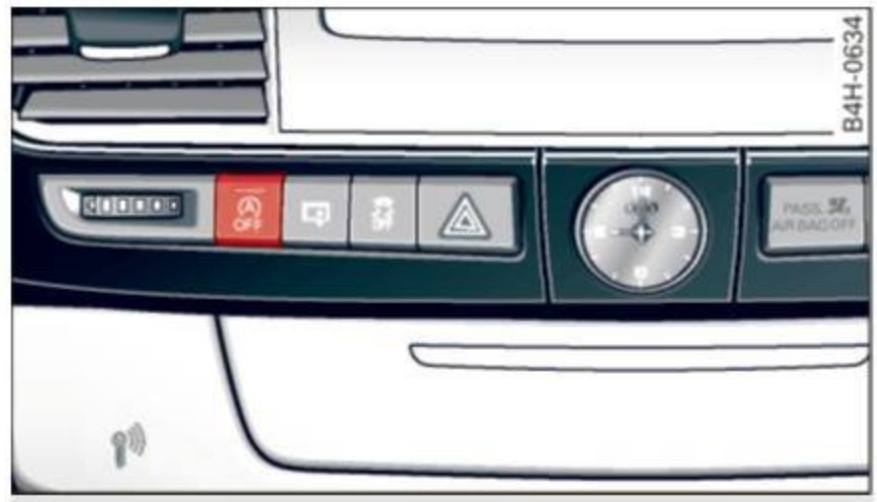


Fig. 93 Center console: Start/Stop system button

▸ To switch the Start/Stop-System off/on manually, press the Ⓐ OFF button. The LED in the button turns on when the system is switched off.

Tips

If you switch the system off during a stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

Messages in the instrument cluster display

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

Start-stop system deactivated: Please restart engine manually

This message appears when specific conditions are not met during a stop phase. The Start/Stop system will **not** be able to restart the engine. If the D or R selector lever positions were engaged, P will be selected automatically. The engine must be started with the START ENGINE STOP button.

Start-stop system: System fault! Currently unavailable

There is a malfunction in the Start/Stop system. Drive the vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility as soon as possible to have the malfunction corrected.

Electromechanical parking brake



Fig. 94 Center console: parking brake

Your vehicle is equipped with an electromechanical parking brake Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 94*. The parking brake is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling unintentionally and replaces the hand brake.

Setting/manually releasing the parking brake

- ▸ Pull the Ⓟ switch to set the parking brake. The LED in the switch illuminates. The PARK (USA models)/Ⓟ (Canada models) indicator light also turns on in the instrument cluster display.
- ▸ To release the parking brake manually, press the brake or accelerator pedal while the ignition is switched on and press the Ⓟ switch at the same time. The LED in the button and the indicator light in the display turn off.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed, the driver's safety belt must be latched and the parking brake must be set.

- ▸ To start driving and release the parking brake automatically, press the accelerator pedal as usual.

In addition to releasing the parking brake automatically, other convenience and safety functions are available when you start driving ⇨ *page 82, Starting from a stop*.

Preventing the automatic parking brake release

The vehicle could begin rolling unintentionally, depending on the hill or if towing a trailer.

- ▸ To prevent the parking brake from releasing automatically, pull and hold the Ⓟ switch and press the accelerator pedal. The parking brake remains set and prevents the vehicle from rolling backward.
- ▸ You can release the Ⓟ switch again once you are sure that you are giving enough driving force to the wheels by pressing the accelerator pedal.

Emergency braking function

You can use the emergency braking function in an emergency situation, or if the standard brake operation malfunctions or is disabled.

- ▸ Pull and hold the Ⓟ switch.
- ▸ As soon as you release the Ⓟ switch or accelerate, the braking stops.

Pulling and holding the Ⓟ switch while driving the vehicle activates the emergency braking function. The vehicle is braked at all four wheels by activating the hydraulic brake system. The braking effect is similar to heavy braking ⇨ ⚠.

To reduce the risk of activating the emergency braking by mistake, a warning tone (buzzer) sounds when the Ⓟ switch is pulled. Emergency braking stops as soon as the Ⓟ switch is released or the accelerator pedal is pressed.

Parking

- ▸ Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.
- ▸ Pull the Ⓟ switch to set the parking brake.
- ▸ Select the P selector lever position.
- ▸ Turn the engine off ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Turn the steering wheel when parking on inclines so that the wheels will roll into the curb if the vehicle starts moving.

⚠ WARNING

– Do not press the accelerator pedal inadvertently if a gear is selected when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running. Otherwise, the vehicle will start to move immediately and this could result in an accident.
– Emergency braking should only be used in an emergency, when the normal brake pedal has failed or the brake pedal is obstructed. ▶

During emergency braking, your vehicle will brake similar to heavy braking. ESC and the associated components (ABS, ASR, EDL) cannot overcome the laws of physics. In corners and when road or weather conditions are bad, a full brake application can cause the vehicle to skid or the rear end to swerve, which increases the risk of an accident.

– If the power supply fails, you cannot set the parking brake if it is released. In this case, park the vehicle on level ground and secure it by placing the selector lever in the P position. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving your vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise children could start the engine, release the parking brake or operate electrical equipment such as power windows, which increases the risk of an accident.
– No one should remain in the vehicle when it is locked - especially children. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Tips

When stopping at a traffic signal or stopping in city traffic, you can set the parking brake manually. The vehicle does not have to be held with the brake pedal. The parking brake eliminates the tendency to creep when a selector lever position is engaged. As soon as you press the accelerator pedal, the parking brake releases automatically and your vehicle starts to move ⇨ *page 82*.

Tips

– Occasional noises when the parking brake is set and released are normal and are not a cause for concern.
– The parking brake goes through a self-test cycle at regular intervals when the vehicle is stopped. Any noises associated with this are normal.
– If there is a power failure, the parking brake will not set if it is released, and it will not release if it is set ⇨ ⚠. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Starting from a stop

Various convenience and safety functions may be available when the vehicle begins driving, depending on vehicle equipment.

Starting on hills with the parking brake set

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed and the driver's safety belt must be fastened.

▸ To start driving comfortably when on a hill, set the parking brake and begin driving as usual. The braking force of the parking brake does not release automatically until the wheels build up enough driving force.

Starting on hills with hill hold assist

Hill hold assist makes it easier to start on hills.

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed and the engine must be running.

▸ To activate hill hold assist, press and hold the brake pedal for several seconds. The vehicle must be in an uphill direction of travel.

After releasing the brake pedal, the braking power is maintained for a brief moment ⇨ ⚠ to prevent the vehicle from rolling back when starting. During this time, you can easily begin to move your vehicle.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with hill hold assist

– If you do not begin driving immediately or the engine stalls after releasing the brake pedal, your vehicle may begin to roll backward. Press the brake pedal or set the parking brake immediately.
– The intelligent technology of hill hold assist cannot overcome the limitations imposed by natural physical laws. The increased comfort offered by hill hold assist should not cause you to take safety risks. ▸

– Hill hold assist cannot hold the vehicle in place on all hills (for example, if the ground is slippery or icy).
– To reduce the risk of an accident, always make sure the vehicle is situated safely while stationary.

Automatic transmission

Introduction

The automatic transmission is controlled electronically. Power is transferred using a torque converter.

The transmission shifts up or down automatically depending on which drive program is selected.

When a **moderate driving style** is used, the transmission selects the most economical driving mode. The transmission upshifts at a lower RPM and downshifts at a higher RPM to improve fuel efficiency.

The transmission switches to a sporty mode after a kick-down or when the driver uses a **sporty driving style** characterized by quick accelerator pedal movements, heavy acceleration, frequent changes in speed and traveling at the maximum speed.

If desired, the driver can also select the gears manually (tiptronic mode) ⇨ *page 86*.

Indicator in the display

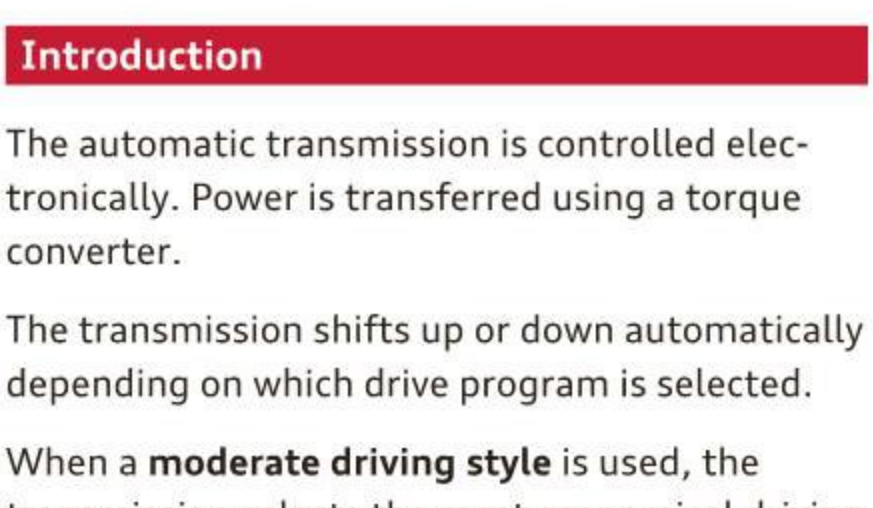


Fig. 95 Instrument cluster: selector lever position

Ⓐ - The current selector lever position is displayed continuously. In manual mode, an M is displayed in addition to the gear.

Ⓑ - This display appears briefly if you change the selector lever position or if you press the button on the selector lever ⇨ *page 83, fig. 96*. The current selector lever position is shown with a white background.

Selecting the selector lever position



Fig. 96 Selector lever



Fig. 97 Pressing the button on the selector lever

The current selector lever position is displayed on the selector lever ⇨ *fig. 96*.

- You may need to release the selector lever lock depending on which selector lever position is selected and which one you would like to select ⇨ *page 84, Selector lever lock*.
- To engage the nearest selector lever position, move the selector lever forward/back until you feel the first pressure point. The selector lever will return to its original position.
- To skip over one (or two) selector lever positions, move the selector lever past the first (and second) pressure point into the desired position. The selector lever will return to its original position.

For example, to move directly from the D selector lever position to P when stopping the vehicle, ▶

you can shift past the N and R selector lever positions.

Selector lever lock

The selector lever lock prevents you from selecting a position unintentionally, causing the vehicle to roll. When engaging some selector lever positions, you must press the button on the selector lever ⇨ *fig. 96* and/or press the brake pedal.

You must press the brake pedal to engage a selector lever position when the engine is running and the vehicle is stationary. The arrows ⇨ *fig. 97* indicate when you need to press the button on the selector lever.

The selector lever does not lock if you shift from D to R within one second. This allows you to "rock" the vehicle to free it when it is stuck.

P - Park

This selector lever position prevents the vehicle from rolling. Only shift into park when the vehicle is stationary ⇨ ⚠. To engage the P selector lever position, press the button on the selector lever and shift into the P position.

You can only shift out of park when the engine is running and you are pressing the brake pedal. To release the parking lock. press the button on the selector lever and select the desired position.

P engages automatically when you switch the engine off while D, S or R is engaged or in manual mode.

If you switch the engine off when the N position is selected, the transmission remains in N for approximately 30 minutes and then P is engaged.

You must use the parking lock emergency release before towing the vehicle ⇨ *page 88*.

R – Reverse

The reverse gear is engaged in this position. Only select reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running at idle speed ⇨ ⚠. To engage the R selector lever position, press the button on the selector lever, press the brake pedal and move the selector lever into the R position.

The reverse lights turn on when you select the R selector lever position while the engine is running.

N - Neutral (idle)

The transmission is in idle in this position. To engage the N selector lever position, press the button on the selector lever and shift into the N position.

If you switch the engine off when the N position is selected, the transmission remains in N for approximately 30 minutes and then P is engaged.

You cannot select the N position when the ignition is switched off. When driving through an automatic car wash, first select the N position and then turn the engine off ⇨ *page 306*.

For safety reasons, the vehicle cannot be locked when the transmission is in the N position.

D/S - Driving forward

When the transmission is in the D/S position, it can be operated either in the normal D mode or in the S sport mode. Move the selector lever back to engage the S sport mode. You can only select the S selector lever position when D is engaged. To select the D selector lever position again when S is engaged, move the selector lever back ⇨ ⚠.

To shift from N to D when traveling at speeds below 1 mph (2 km/h), press the brake pedal and shift into the D position ⇨ ⚠.

In the **normal mode** D, the transmission automatically selects the suitable gear ratio. It depends on engine load, vehicle speed and driving style.

Select the **sport mode** S for sporty driving. The vehicle makes full use of the engine's power. Shifting may become noticeable when accelerating.

The S selector lever position engages automatically when you select dynamic mode in drive select.

⚠ WARNING

– The vehicle can roll even if the ignition is switched off. ▶

– To reduce the risk of an accident, never select the R or P positions while driving.
– Power is still transmitted to the wheels when the engine is running at idle. To prevent the vehicle from “creeping”, you must keep your foot on the brake in all selector lever positions (except P and N) when the engine is running. Do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise the vehicle will start to move immediately, even if the parking brake is set. This could result in a crash.
– Before opening the hood, select the P selector lever position and set the parking brake. This reduces the risk of an accident. Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ *page 271, Working in the engine compartment*.
– Never leave your vehicle with the engine running while in gear. If you must leave your vehicle when the engine is running, set the parking brake and move the selector lever to the P position.

Tips

If you accidentally select N while driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal and wait for the engine to slow down to idle before selecting D or S.

Driving tips

Starting the engine

▸ The selector lever must be in the P or the N position.

Starting from a stop

▸ Press and hold the brake pedal.
▸ Start the engine ⇨ *page 76*.
▸ Press the button on the selector lever and select the D, S or R selector lever position ⇨ *page 83*.
▸ Wait a moment until the transmission shifts. You will notice a slight movement when the gear engages.
▸ Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal ⇨ ⚠.

Stopping temporarily

▸ Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, for example at a traffic light. Do not press the accelerator pedal when doing this.
▸ To prevent the vehicle from rolling when you start driving, set the parking brake when stopping on steep inclines ⇨ ⚠.
▸ The parking brake will release automatically and the vehicle will start moving once you press the accelerator pedal.

Stopping/parking

If the selector lever is not in the P position when you open the driver’s door, the vehicle could roll. The message **Transmission: selector lever in drive position!** appears.

▸ Press and hold the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Set the parking brake.
▸ To engage the P selector lever position, press the button on the selector lever and shift into the P position ⇨ *page 83*.

Under certain conditions, such as driving in the mountains or when towing a trailer, it may be helpful to switch to manual mode temporarily and shift manually to adapt to the driving conditions ⇨ *page 86*.

On hills, activate the parking brake first and then shift into the P position ⇨ *page 81*. This prevents too much stress from being placed on the locking mechanism.

WARNING

– The vehicle can roll even if the ignition is switched off.
– Do not press the accelerator pedal when changing the selector lever position while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running. This could result in a crash.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, never select the R or P positions while driving.
– Power is still transmitted to the wheels when the engine is running at idle. To prevent the vehicle from “creeping”, you must keep your foot on the brake in all selector lever positions (except P and N) when the engine is running.

▶

– Do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise the vehicle will start to move immediately, even if the parking brake is set. This could result in a crash.

Tips

For safety reasons, the parking brake is released automatically only when the driver's safety belt is engaged in the buckle.

Hill descent control

The hill descent control system assists the driver when driving down hills.

Hill descent control activates when the transmission is in the D or S position and you press the brake pedal. The transmission automatically selects a gear that is suitable for the hill. Hill descent control tries to maintain the speed achieved at the time of braking, within physical and technical limitations. If may still be necessary to adjust the speed with the brake pedal.

Hill descent control switches off once the hill levels out or you press the accelerator pedal.

When operating the cruise control system ⇨ *page 92*, hill descent control is also activated when the speed is set.

WARNING

Hill descent control cannot overcome physical limitations, so it may not be able to maintain a constant speed under all conditions. Always be ready to apply the brakes.

Manual shifting

The shift paddles allow the driver to shift the gears manually.



Fig. 98 Steering wheel: shifting manually

- ▸ To shift to a higher or lower gear temporarily, tap the ⊕ or ⊖ shift paddle ⇨ *fig. 98*.
- ▸ To switch manual mode on, press the M button. M and the gear that is currently engaged Ⓐ appear in the instrument cluster display ⇨ *page 83, fig. 95*.
- ▸ To shift up one gear, tap the right shift paddle ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 98*.
- ▸ To shift down one gear, tap the left shift paddle ⊖.
- ▸ To switch manual mode off, press the M button again, or
- ▸ Move the selector lever back and release it.

When you accelerate or reduce the speed, the transmission automatically shifts into the correct gear shortly before reaching the RPM limit. If you select a lower gear than the one currently shown in the display, the automatic transmission will only shift down once there is no danger of exceeding the maximum RPM.

The engine braking effect increases when you downshift when going downhill.

Kick-down

Kick-down enables maximum acceleration.

When you press the accelerator pedal down beyond the resistance point, the automatic transmission downshifts into a lower gear and the engine utilizes its full power, depending on vehicle speed and engine RPM. It shifts up into the next ▸

higher gear once the maximum specified engine RPM is reached.

WARNING

Please note that the wheels could spin on slick or slippery roads when kick-down is active.

Overboost

Applies to: S8 plus

The maximum engine torque is temporarily increased in overboost. Overboost is activated when nearing full throttle in the S position and when the engine is at operating temperature.

WARNING

Please note that the wheels could spin on slick or slippery roads when overboost is active.

Transmission malfunction

Transmission: selector lever in drive!

If the selector lever is not in the P position when you open the driver's door, the vehicle could roll. Select the P selector lever position.

Transmission: Please press brake pedal and select gear again

Press the brake pedal and select the desired selector lever position again. You can then continue driving.

Transmission overheating: Please drive conservatively

The transmission temperature has increased significantly due to the sporty driving manner. Drive in a less sporty manner until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light switches of.

Transmission malfunction: You can continue driving

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. You may continue driving. Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission malfunction: You can continue driving in D until engine is off

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. If you turn the engine off, you will not be able to select any other selector lever positions after starting the engine again. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission malfunction: You can continue driving with limited functionality

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or will no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission malfunction: No reverse gear. You can continue driving

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or will no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. You cannot engage the reverse gear. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Vehicle may roll! Cannot shift to P. Please apply parking brake

- The parking lock was released using the emergency release ⇨ *page 88*. Or
- The parking lock can no longer be engaged. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission malfunction: Stop vehicle and shift to park.

Do not continue driving. Select the P selector lever position and contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Parking lock emergency release

The parking lock must be released using the emergency release before towing the vehicle.



Fig. 99 Driver's side footwell: releasing the parking lock using the emergency release

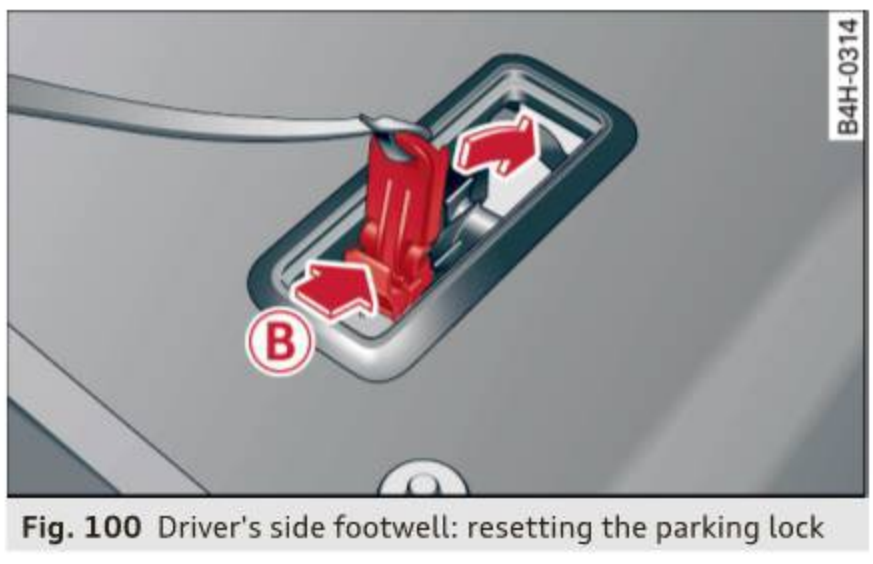


Fig. 100 Driver's side footwell: resetting the parking lock

The emergency release is located under the floor mat on the driver's side. You operate the emergency release from the driver's seat.

Releasing the parking lock using the emergency release

- ▸ To prevent the vehicle from rolling unintentionally, set the parking brake Ⓟ ⇨ *page 81* or press the brake pedal.
- ▸ There are two slits on the cover. Position the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit in one of the slits on the cover and pry the cover off.
- ▸ Pull the band Ⓐ in the direction of the arrow until the release lever locks in place ⇨ *fig. 99*.
- ▸ Fold the upper section of the release lever down into the recess.

Resetting the parking lock

- ▸ Press the button Ⓑ and the release lever at the same time. You can now push the lever back into its original position. Make sure the lever locks in place ⇨ *fig. 100*.

- ▸ Install the cover.

When the parking lock emergency release is used, the indicator light and the N selector lever position turn on in the instrument cluster. The message **Vehicle may roll! Cannot shift to P. Please apply parking brake** also appears.

WARNING

If you release the parking lock using the emergency release, secure your vehicle with the parking brake or the brake pedal if the parking brake is not working. The vehicle can roll away if it is not secured and cause a crash.

Trailer mode

Driving with a trailer

General information

Your Audi was designed primarily for passenger transportation.

If you plan to tow a trailer, please remember that the additional load will affect durability, economy and performance.

Trailer towing not only places more stress on the vehicle, it also calls for more concentration from the driver.

For this reason, always follow the operating and driving instructions provided and use common sense.

Note

If you are going to tow a trailer, you must activate the trailer operation mode ⇨ *page 89, Operating instructions*.

Technical requirements

Trailer hitch

Use a weight-carrying hitch conforming to the gross trailer weight. The hitch must be suitable for your vehicle and trailer and must be mounted securely on the vehicle's chassis at a *technically sound* location. Use only a trailer hitch with a removable ball mount. Always check with the trailer hitch manufacturer to make sure that you are using the correct hitch.

Do not use a bumper hitch.

The hitch must be installed in such a way that it does not interfere with the impact-absorbing bumper system. No modifications should be made to the vehicle exhaust and brake systems. From time to time, check that all hitch mounting bolts remain securely fastened.

When you are not towing a trailer, remove the trailer hitch ball mount. This prevents the hitch from causing damage should your vehicle be struck from behind ⇨ ⚠.

Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, check to be sure that it conforms to all regulations.

The trailer hydraulic brake system must not be directly connected to the vehicle's hydraulic brake system.

Safety chains

Always use safety chains between your vehicle and the trailer.

Trailer lights

Trailer lights must meet all regulations. Be sure to check with your Audi dealer for correct wiring, switches and relays.

Mirrors

If you are unable to see the traffic behind you using the regular outside mirrors, then you *must* install extended mirrors. It is important that you *always* have clear vision to the rear.

WARNING

After removing the trailer hitch, do not store it in your vehicle. In case of sudden braking, the hitch could fly forward and injure you or your passengers.

Operating instructions

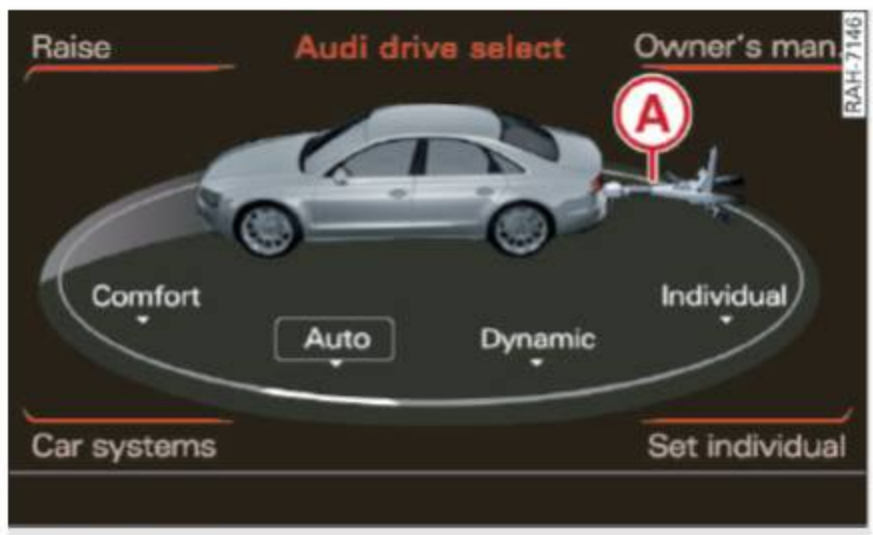


Fig. 101 MMI display: towing mode on

Maximum trailer weight

A trailer for your vehicle is limited to a typical class 1 or class 2 trailer. ▶

Trailer load distribution

Be sure the load in the trailer is held securely in place to prevent it from shifting forward, backward or sideways.

Never allow a passenger to ride in a trailer ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving instructions on page 91*.

Engine cooling system

Towing a trailer makes the engine work harder. It is important that the cooling system's performance is up to the additional load. Make sure that the cooling system has enough fluid.

Tire pressure

When towing a trailer, inflate the tires of your vehicle to the tire pressure listed under "Full load" on the label ⇨ *page 293*. Inflate trailer tires to trailer and tire manufacturers' specifications.

Lights

Check to make sure both vehicle and trailer lights are working properly.

Safety chains

Be sure trailer safety chains are properly connected from the trailer to the hitch on the vehicle. Leave enough slack in the chains to permit turning corners. When you install safety chains, make sure they will not drag on the road when you are driving.

The chains should cross under the trailer tongue to prevent it from dropping in case of separation from the hitch.

Adjusting the Audi drive select

Make sure the vehicle is on a level surface **before** hitching up the trailer and **before** adjusting the tongue weight. The vehicle must be in **auto** or **comfort** driving mode and not raised ⇨ *page 110*, ⇨ ⓘ.

Make sure that the vehicle is lowered. In Infotainment, select: CAR function button > **Lower** control button.

If you must drive under poor road conditions, you can raise the vehicle **after** coupling the trailer or **after** adjusting the tongue weight ⇨ *page 112*.

Note

- Changes in temperature or load can affect the height of the vehicle.
- Always select auto or comfort mode. Otherwise, the tongue load specified for your vehicle will no longer be applicable.

Driving instructions

Driving with a trailer always requires extra care and consideration.

Weight distribution

Towing a loaded trailer with an empty car results in a highly unstable distribution of weight. If this cannot be avoided, drive at very low speeds only to avoid the risk of losing steering control.

A "balanced" rig is easier to operate and control. This means that the tow vehicle should be loaded to the extent possible and permissible, while keeping the trailer as light as possible under the circumstances. Whenever possible, transfer some cargo to the luggage compartment of the tow vehicle while observing tongue load requirements and vehicle loading considerations.

Speed

The higher the speed, the more difficult it becomes for the driver to control the rig. Do not drive at the maximum permissible speed. Reduce your speed even more if load, weather or wind conditions are unfavorable - particularly when going downhill.

Reduce vehicle speed **immediately** if the trailer shows the slightest sign of swaying. **Do not try to stop the swaying by accelerating.**

Observe speed limits. In some areas, speeds for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for regular vehicles.

Always apply brakes early. When driving downhill, shift into a lower gear to use the engine braking effect to slow the vehicle. Use of the brakes alone can cause them to overheat and fail. ▶

Air suspension*

When driving with a trailer, activate the trailer mode of the air suspension. Switch the air suspension trailer mode on when you are towing a trailer. This will limit the regulation by the air suspension while driving. Select in the MMI: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Air susp.: towing** > **On**.

Coolant temperature

The coolant temperature gauge ⇨ *page 9* must be observed carefully. The coolant temperature can increase if you drive on long inclines in a low gear at high engine speeds. Reduce your speed immediately if the LEDs in the top part of the display turn on.

For more information about indicator lights, refer to ⇨ *page 20*.

WARNING

Anyone not properly restrained in a moving vehicle is at a much greater risk in an accident. Never let anyone ride in your car who is not properly wearing the restraints provided by Audi.

Trailer mode notes

Important to know

Your vehicle handles differently when towing a trailer because of the additional weight and different weight distribution. Safety, performance and economy will greatly depend on how carefully you load your trailer and operate your rig.

Before you actually tow your trailer, practice turning, stopping and backing up in an area away from traffic. Keep practicing until you have become completely familiar with the way your vehicle-trailer combination behaves and responds.

Backing up is difficult and requires practice. Backing up with a trailer generally requires steering action opposite to that when backing up your vehicle without a trailer.

Maintain a greater distance between your vehicle and the one in front of you. You will need more room to stop. To compensate for the trailer, you will need a larger than normal turning radius.

When passing, remember that you cannot accelerate as fast as you normally would because of the added load. Make sure you have enough room to pass. After passing, allow plenty of room for your trailer before changing lanes again.

Avoid jerky starts, sharp turns or rapid lane changes.

Tips

- Do not tow a trailer during the break-in period of your vehicle.
- If you tow a trailer, your Audi may require more frequent maintenance due to the extra load ⇨ *page 336*.

Parking on a slope

Do not park on a slope with a trailer. If it cannot be avoided, do so only after doing the following:

When parking:

- ▸ Apply the foot brake.
- ▸ Have someone place chocks under both the vehicle and the trailer wheels.
- ▸ With chocks in place, slowly release the brakes until the wheel chocks absorb the load.
- ▸ Turn the wheels towards the curb.
- ▸ Apply the parking brake.
- ▸ Select the P selector lever position.

When restarting after parking:

- ▸ Apply the foot brake.
- ▸ Start the engine.
- ▸ Select the D selector lever position.
- ▸ Release the parking brake and slowly pull out and away from the wheel chocks.
- ▸ Stop and have someone retrieve the wheel chocks.

Tips

If you move the selector lever of the automatic transmission to P before applying the parking brake and before blocking the wheels, you may have to use more force later to move the lever out of the P position.

4H0012721BD

Assist

Speed warning system

The speed warning system helps you to stay under a specified maximum speed.

The speed warning system warns you if you are exceeding the maximum speed that you have set. A warning tone will sound as soon as your speed exceeds the stored value slightly.

The MPH (USA models) / km/h (Canada models) indicator light and a message appear in the instrument cluster display at the same time. The MPH / km/h indicator light and the message turn off if the speed falls back below the stored maximum speed.

Setting a threshold is recommended if you would like to be reminded when you reach a certain maximum speed. Situations where you may want to do so include driving in a country with a general speed limit or if there is a specified maximum speed for winter tires.

Setting the warning threshold

The warning threshold is set in the Infotainment system.

- Select: CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Driver assist** > **Speed warning**.

Tips

Regardless of the speed warning system, you should always monitor your speed using the speedometer and make sure you are following the legal speed limit.

Cruise control system

Switching on

The cruise control system makes it possible to drive at a constant speed starting at 20 mph (30 km/h).



Fig. 102 Operating lever: cruise control system

- To switch the cruise control on, pull the lever into position (1) ⇨ *fig. 102*.
- Drive at the speed to be maintained.
- To store the speed, press the button (A).

The stored speed and the CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light are displayed in the instrument cluster.

This information is also shown briefly in the Head-up display*.

The speed is maintained by modifying engine power or through an active brake intervention.

WARNING

- Always pay attention to the traffic around you when the cruise control system is in operation. You are always responsible for your speed and the distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.
- For safety reasons, cruise control should not be used in the city, in stop-and-go traffic, on winding roads and when road conditions are poor (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain and hydroplaning), because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Switch the cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, highway exits or in construction zones. ▶

– Please note that unconsciously "resting" your foot on the accelerator pedal prevents the cruise control from braking. This is because pressing the accelerator pedal overrides the cruise control system.
– If a brake system malfunction such as overheating occurs when the cruise control system is switched on, the braking function in the system may be switched off. The rest of the cruise control system functions remain active as long as the CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light is on.

Tips

The brake lights turn on when the brakes are applied automatically.

Changing the speed

- To increase or decrease the speed in increments, tap the lever toward (+)/(-) ⇨ *page 92, fig. 102*.
- To increase or decrease the speed quickly, hold the lever in the (+)/(-) direction until the desired speed is displayed.

You can also press the accelerator pedal down to increase your speed, for example if you want to pass someone. The speed you set earlier will resume as soon as you release the accelerator pedal.

However, if you exceed your saved speed by 5 mph (10 km/h) for longer than 6 minutes, the cruise control system turns off temporarily.

The green CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light in the speedometer turns off and the stored speed is maintained.

Preselecting a speed

You can pre-select your desired speed when the vehicle is stationary.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Pull the lever into position (1) ⇨ *page 92, fig. 102*.
- To increase or decrease the speed, push the lever toward (+)/(-).
- To store the speed displayed, release the lever.

This function makes it possible, for example, to save the speed you want before driving on the highway. Once on the highway, activate the cruise control by pulling the lever toward (1).

Switching off

Temporary deactivation

- Press the brake pedal, or
- Press the lever into position (2) (not clicked into place) ⇨ *page 92, fig. 102*, or
- Drive for longer than 5 minutes faster than 5 mph (10 km/h) above the stored speed.

Switching off completely

- Press the lever into position (2) (clicked into place), or
- Switch the ignition off.

The speed you stored will be maintained if the cruise control has been switched off temporarily. To resume the stored speed, release the brake pedal and pull the lever into position (1).

Switching the ignition off will erase the stored speed.

WARNING

You should only resume the stored speed if it is not too high for existing traffic conditions. Otherwise you can increase the risk of an accident.

Audi adaptive cruise control

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

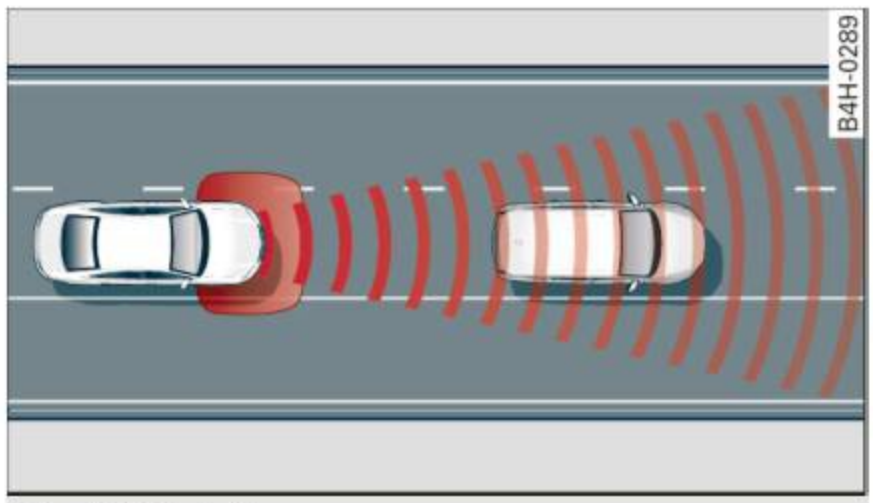


Fig. 103 Detection range

The adaptive cruise control system is a combination of speed and distance regulation. It assists the driver by both regulating the speed and maintaining a distance to the vehicle driving ahead, within the limits of the system. If the system detects and object ahead, adaptive cruise control can brake and accelerate your vehicle. This makes driving more comfortable both on long stretches of highway and in stop-and-go traffic.

What can adaptive cruise control do?

The adaptive cruise control system uses video, radar and ultrasound. Objects driving ahead can be recognized up to 650 feet (200 m) away.

On open roads with no traffic, it functions like a cruise control system. The stored speed is maintained. When approaching an object ahead, the adaptive cruise control system automatically brakes to match that object's speed and then maintains the stored distance. As soon as the system does not detect an object ahead, adaptive cruise control accelerates up to the stored speed.

In stop-and-go traffic, adaptive cruise control can brake until the vehicle is stationary and then begin driving again under certain conditions ⇨ *page 97*.

Audi braking guard can warn you about an impending collision and initiate braking maneuvers ⇨ *page 99*.

Which functions can be controlled?

When you switch adaptive cruise control on, you can set the current speed as the "control speed" ⇨ *page 96, Switching on/off*.

When driving, you can stop cruise control ⇨ *page 98* or change the speed ⇨ *page 97* at any time.

You can also set the distance to the object moving ahead and set the driving mode of the adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 98*.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 104 Front of the vehicle: sensors and video camera

The areas that contain the radar and ultrasonic sensors and the video camera ⇨ *fig. 104* must not be covered by stickers, deposits or other objects because they can interfere with the function of the adaptive cruise control system and braking guard. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 306*. The same applies for any modifications made in the front area.

The function of the adaptive cruise control system and braking guard is limited under some conditions.

- Objects can only be detected when they are within the sensor range ⇨ *page 94, fig. 103*.
- The system has a limited ability to detect objects that are a short distance ahead, off to the side of your vehicle or moving into your lane.
- Objects that are difficult to detect such as motorcycles, vehicles with high ground clearance or an overhanging load are detected late or not detected at all.
- When driving through curves ⇨ *page 95*. ▶

– With stationary objects ⇨ *page 96*.

WARNING

Always pay attention to traffic when adaptive cruise control is switched on and braking guard is active. As the driver, you are still responsible for starting and for maintaining speed and distance to other objects. Braking guard is used to assist you. The driver must always take action to avoid a collision. The driver is always responsible for braking at the correct time.

– For safety reasons, do not use adaptive cruise control when driving on roads with many curves, when the road surface is in poor condition and/or in bad weather (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain and hydroplaning). Using the system under these conditions increases the risk of an accident.
– Switch adaptive cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, on expressway exits or in construction zones. This prevents the vehicle from accelerating to the stored speed when in these situations.
– The adaptive cruise control system will not brake by itself if you put your foot on the accelerator pedal. Doing so can override the speed and distance regulation.
– When approaching stationary objects such as stopped traffic, adaptive cruise control will not respond and braking guard will have limited function.
– The adaptive cruise control system and braking guard do not react to people, animals, objects crossing the road or oncoming objects.
– The function of the radar sensors can be affected by reflective objects such as guard rails, the entrance to a tunnel, heavy rain or ice.

WARNING

– Improper use of adaptive cruise control can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injury.
– Never let the comfort and convenience that adaptive cruise control and braking guard offer distract you from the need to be alert to traffic conditions and the need to remain in full control of your vehicle at all times,
– Always remember that the adaptive cruise control and braking guard have limits – they will not slow the vehicle down or maintain the set distance when you drive towards an obstacle or something on or near the road that is not moving, such as vehicles stopped in a traffic jam, a stalled or disabled vehicle. If registered by the radar sensors, vehicles or obstacles that are not moving can trigger a collision warning and if confirmed by the video camera, an acute collision warning.
– Never follow a vehicle so closely that you cannot stop your vehicle safely. The adaptive cruise control cannot slow or brake the vehicle safely when you follow another vehicle too closely. Always remember that the automatic braking function cannot bring the vehicle to a sudden or emergency stop under these conditions.
– To prevent unintended operation, always switch ACC off when it is not being used.

Note

The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. That could affect the adaptive cruise control system and braking guard. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

In curves

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

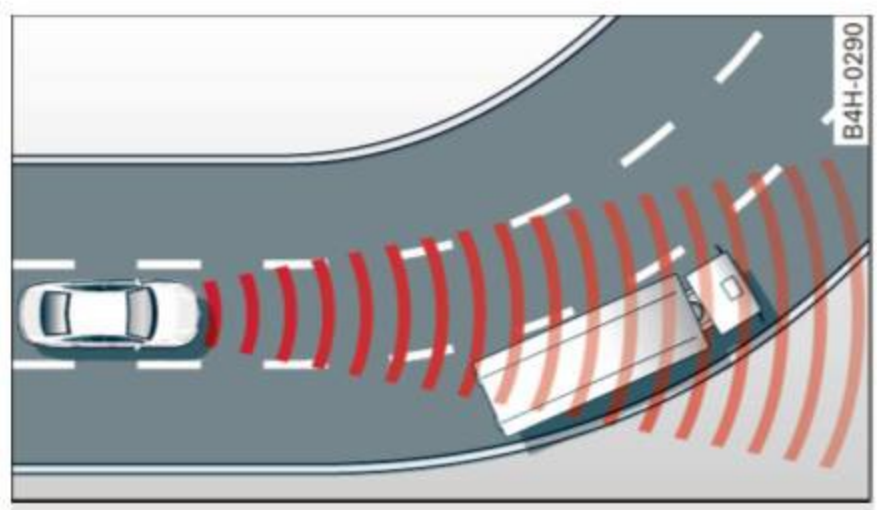


Fig. 105 Example: driving into a curve

When driving into a curve ⇨ *fig. 105* and out of a curve, the adaptive cruise control may react to an object in the neighboring lane and apply the brakes. You can prevent that by pressing the accelerator pedal briefly.

Stationary objects

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

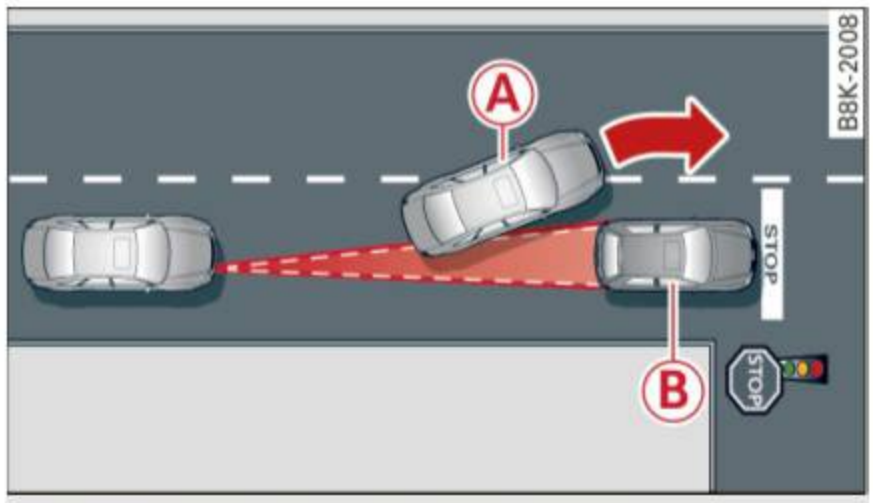


Fig. 106 Example: object changing lanes and stationary object

The adaptive cruise control system only reacts to objects that are moving or that the system has already detected as moving. For example, it can react when a vehicle that has already been detected Ⓐ turns or changes lanes, but adaptive cruise control does not react to a stationary vehicle Ⓑ.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

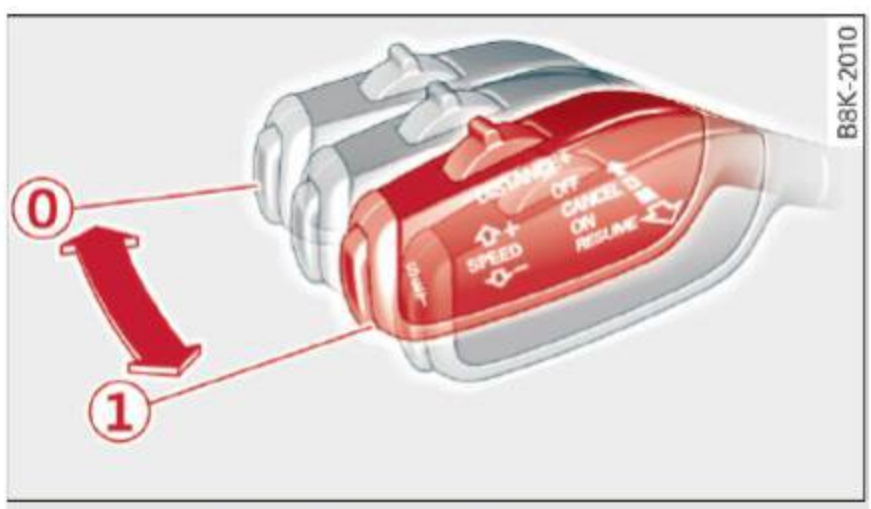


Fig. 107 Operating lever: switching on and off



Fig. 108 Instrument cluster: adaptive cruise control

You can set any speed between 20 mph (30 km/h) and 95 mph (150 km/h).

Indicator lights and messages in the instrument cluster display inform you about the current situation and setting.

An additional indicator appears in the Head-up display*.

Switching adaptive cruise control on

- ▸ Pull the lever toward you into position ① ⇨ *fig. 107*. **ACC: standby** appears in the display.

Saving the speed and activating regulation

- ▸ To save the current speed, press the SET ⇨ *fig. 107* button. The stored speed is shown in the speedometer in the LED line Ⓐ and appears briefly in the information line Ⓓ ⇨ *fig. 108*.
- ▸ To activate the regulation while stationary, also press the brake pedal.

Switching adaptive cruise control off

- ▸ Push the lever away from you into position ⓪ until it clicks into place. The message **ACC: off** appears.

Ⓑ Indicator lights

- adaptive cruise control is switched on. No objects are detected ahead. The stored speed is maintained.

- An object ahead was detected. The adaptive cruise control system regulates the speed and distance to the object ahead and accelerates/brakes automatically. ▶

- adaptive cruise control is switched on. An object ahead was detected. Your vehicle remains stopped and will not start driving automatically.

- The automatic braking is not enough to maintain a sufficient distance to an object ahead. You must intervene ⇨ *page 99, Driver intervention request*.

Ⓒ Instrument cluster display

If adaptive cruise control is not shown in the instrument cluster display, you can call it up using the multifunction steering wheel buttons ⇨ *page 12*.

Based on the graphics in the display, you can determine if the system is maintaining a distance to the object ahead and what that distance is.

No vehicle - No object ahead was detected.

White vehicle - An object ahead was detected.

Red vehicle - Request for driver intervention ⇨ *page 99*.

Both **arrows** on the **scale** Ⓒ indicate the distance to the object ahead. No arrow appears when the vehicle is on an open road and there is no object ahead. If an object is detected ahead, the arrow moves on the scale.

The green zone on the scale indicates the store distance. For information on changing the distance, refer to ⇨ *page 98*. If the distance selected is exceeded or not reached, the arrow moves into the red zone on the scale.

WARNING

If you press the SET button when driving at speeds below 20 mph (30 km/h), the vehicle accelerates automatically up to 20 mph (30 km/h), which is the minimum speed that can be set.

Tips

- If you switch the ignition or the adaptive cruise control system off, the set speed is erased for safety reasons.
- The electronic stabilization control (ESC) and the anti-slip-regulation (ASR) are automatically switched on when the adaptive cruise control is switched on.

Changing the speed

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 109 Operating lever: changing the speed

- ▸ To increase or reduce the speed in increments, **tap** the lever up or down.
- ▸ To increase or decrease the speed quickly, **hold** the lever up or down until the red LED Ⓐ reaches the desired speed ⇨ *page 96, fig. 108*.

After each change, the new stored speed appears briefly in the information line Ⓓ ⇨ *page 96, fig. 108*.

Driving in stop-and-go traffic

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

The adaptive cruise control system also assists you in stop-and-go traffic. If an object ahead stops, your vehicle will brake and stay at a stop, within the limits of the system.

- ▸ To resume driving with adaptive cruise control, tap the accelerator pedal or
- ▸ Pull the lever toward you into position ② ⇨ *page 98, fig. 110*.

Tips

If an obstacle is detected when your vehicle starts moving, the driver intervention request appears ⇨ *page 99*. Your vehicle will drive more slowly when starting. This may also happen in some situations when there is no apparent obstacle.

Interrupting cruise control

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

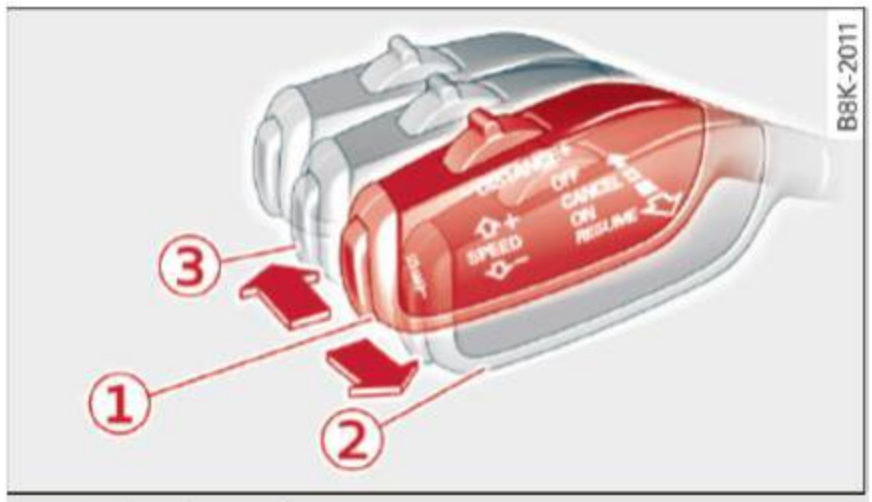


Fig. 110 Selector lever

Requirement: adaptive cruise control must be switched on.

Overriding cruise control

- To accelerate manually, pull the lever toward you into position ② and hold it there. The message **ACC: override** appears. Or
- press the accelerator pedal.
- To resume cruise control, release the lever or take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Canceling cruise control while driving

- Move the lever into position ③. The message **ACC: standby** appears. Or
- press the brake pedal.
- To resume the stored speed, move the lever into position ②.

Canceling cruise control when stopped

- Push the lever away from you into position ③. The message **ACC: standby** appears.
- To resume cruise control, press the brake pedal and pull the lever toward you into position ②.

WARNING

It is dangerous to activate cruise control and resume the stored speed when the current road, traffic or weather conditions do not permit this. This increases the risk of an accident.

Setting the distance

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

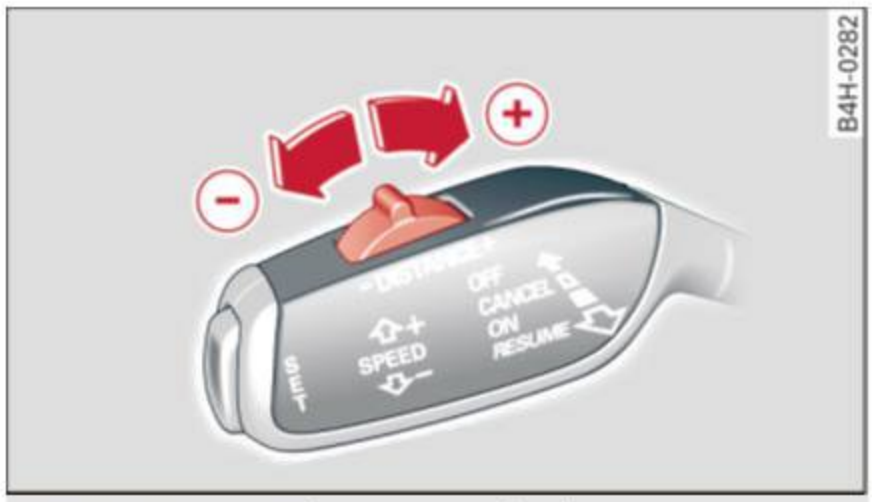


Fig. 111 Operating lever: setting the distance

- Tap the switch to display the current set distance ⇨ *fig. 111*.
- To increase or reduce the distance in increments, tap the switch again to the right or left. The distance between the two vehicles will change in the instrument cluster display.

When approaching an object ahead, the adaptive cruise control system brakes to match that speed and then adjusts to the set distance. If the object ahead accelerates, adaptive cruise control will also accelerate up to the stored speed.

The higher the speed, the greater the distance ⇨ ⚠. The **Distance 3** setting is recommended. That is equal to the general recommendation of "half the speed shown on the speedometer".

The distances provided are specified values. Depending on the driving situation and the way the object ahead is driving, the actual distance may be more or less than these target distances.

The various symbols for the time increments appears briefly in the information line Ⓓ ⇨ *page 96, fig. 108* when you change the settings.

Distance 1: this setting corresponds to a distance of 92 ft (28 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), for example (time between: 1 second).

Distance 2: this setting corresponds to a distance of 118 ft (36 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), for example (time between: 1.3 seconds). ▶

Distance 3: this setting corresponds to a distance of 164 ft (50 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), for example (time between: 1.8 seconds).

Distance 4: This setting corresponds to a distance of 210 ft (64 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), (time distance of 2.3 seconds).

WARNING

Following other vehicles too closely increases the risk of collisions and serious personal injury.

- Setting short distances to the traffic ahead reduces the time and distance available to bring your vehicle to a safe stop and makes it even more necessary to pay close attention to traffic.
- Always obey applicable traffic laws, use good judgment, and select a safe following distance for the traffic, road and weather conditions.

Tips

- **Distance 3** is set automatically each time you switch the ignition on.
- Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Selecting the driving mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

▸ Select the desired driving mode in drive select ⇨ *page 110*.

Tips

Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Driver intervention request

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 112 Instrument cluster: request for driver intervention

In certain situations, the system will request you to take action:

- if the braking from the adaptive cruise control system is not enough to maintain enough distance to the object ahead.

The danger is indicated by the indicator light ⇨ *fig. 112*. An audio signal will also sound.

- Press the brake pedal to slow your vehicle down.

Audi braking guard

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 113 Instrument cluster: approach warning

The braking guard uses radar sensors and a video camera. It also functions within the limits of the system when adaptive cruise control is switched off.

What can the braking guard do?

When detected in time, the system can assess dangerous situations where an object ahead brakes suddenly or if your own vehicle is traveling ▶

at a high speed and approaching an object that is moving more slowly. The braking guard does not react if it cannot detect the situation.

The system advises you of various dangerous situations:

– The **distance warning** occurs if you drive too closely to the object ahead for a long period of time. If the object ahead brakes strongly, you would not be able to avoid a collision. The indicator light appears as an indication for this.
– The **approach warning** occurs when an object ahead is traveling more slowly or brakes strongly. When this warning occurs, it may only be possible to avoid a collision by swerving or braking strongly. The danger is indicated by the indicator light ⇨ *fig. 113*. An audio signal will also sound.

If you do not react early enough or at all to a dangerous situation, the braking guard supports you with a braking intervention. The approach warning indicators and the message **Braking guard: engaged** also appear.

– If a collision is imminent, the system will first provide an **acute warning** by braking sharply.
– If you do not react to the acute warning, the braking guard can increase the braking force within the limits of the system. This reduces the vehicle speed in the event of a collision.
– The system can initiate complete deceleration shortly before a collision [1]. Full deceleration at high speeds occurs only in vehicles with adaptive cruise control and side assist (pre sense plus).
– If the braking guard determines that you are not braking strongly enough when there is an impending collision, it can increase the braking force.
– The pre sense functions also engage when there is an impending collision ⇨ *page 216*.

Which functions can be controlled?

You can switch the braking guard and the distance/approach warning on or off in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 101, Settings in the Infotainment system*.

WARNING

Lack of attention can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injuries. The braking guard is an assist system and cannot prevent a collision by itself. The driver must always intervene. The driver is always responsible for braking at the correct time.

– Always pay close attention to traffic, even when the braking guard is switched on. Be ready to intervene and be ready to take complete control whenever necessary. Always keep the safe and legal distance between your vehicle and vehicles up ahead.
– Braking guard works within limits and will not respond outside the system limits, for example when approaching a stopped vehicle or stationary obstacle (end of a traffic jam or vehicle that has broken down in traffic).
– Always remember that the radar sensor for the braking guard works only within defined detection and range limits that may prevent the proper detection of other vehicles.
– The radar sensor's function and range can be reduced by rain, snow and heavy spray. Moving vehicles up ahead may not be promptly detected or may not be detected at all.
– Reflective surfaces including crash barriers or tunnel entrances may impair the function of the radar sensor.

Tips

– You can cancel the braking with increasing force that is initiated by the system by braking yourself, by accelerating noticeably or by swerving.
– Keep in mind that braking guard can brake unexpectedly. Always secure any cargo or objects that you are transporting to reduce the risk of damage or injury.

[1] Market-specific

Settings in the Infotainment system

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Driver assist** > **Audi braking guard**.

System - Switch the braking guard **On**/**Off**. When you switch the ignition on, the message **Braking guard: Off** appears if the system is switched off.

Early warning - The distance and approach warnings in the display can be switched **On**/**Off**.

Tips

– Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.
– If you restrict or switch off the ESC, the braking guard also switches itself off ⇨ *page 127*.
– Switch braking guard off when you are loading the vehicle onto a vehicle carrier, train, ship or other type of transportation. This can prevent undesired warnings from the braking guard system.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

Braking guard: Off

This message appears if the system is switched off through the Infotainment system. Otherwise, if the system is turned off, the information appears every time shortly after the start of the trip.

The message also appears if the system is not available due to a malfunction or if the ESC is switched off ⇨ *page 127*. If this is the case, the system will not provide warnings about a possible collision.

Braking guard: engaged

This message appears if a sharp brake pressure was applied due to an acute warning.

ACC: unavailable

ACC and Audi braking guard: Unavailable

The system cannot guarantee that it will detect objects correctly and is switched off. The sensors have been moved or are faulty. The pre sense functions may also be affected. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

ACC: Currently unavailable. No sensor vision

ACC and Audi braking guard: Currently unavailable. No sensor vision

This message appears if the sensor view is obstructed, for example by leaves, snow, heavy spray or dirt. Clean the sensors ⇨ *page 94, fig. 104*.

ACC: Currently unavailable. Gradient too steep

The road exceeds the maximum possible angle for safe adaptive cruise control operation. Adaptive cruise control is switched off.

ACC: only available in D, S or M

Select the D, S or M selector lever position.

ACC: Currently unavailable. Parking brake applied

The adaptive cruise control system switches off automatically if the parking brake is set.

ACC: Currently unavailable. Stability control (ESC) input.

This message appears if the Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) is taking action to stabilize the vehicle. In this case, adaptive cruise control switches off automatically.

ACC off: manual control!

This message appears when adaptive cruise control cannot set the parking brake. Press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

• • •

Three white dots appear if a setting cannot be selected with the operating lever. For example, this happens if adaptive cruise control cannot start driving automatically in stop-and-go traffic because the driver has not fastened their safety belt. ▶

Door open

The adaptive cruise control system cannot switch on when a door is open.

Stationary object ahead

This message appears if you would like to switch adaptive cruise control on and there is a stationary object or obstacle directly ahead of your vehicle.

Audi active lane assist (lane departure assist)

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

Active lane assist detects lane marker lines within the limits of the system using a camera in the windshield. If you are approaching a detected lane marker line and it appears likely that you will leave the lane, the system will warn you with corrective steering. You can override this steering at any time. If you pass over a line, the steering wheel will vibrate lightly. In order for this warning vibration to occur, it must first be switched on in the Infotainment system. Active lane assist is ready for operation when the lane marker line is detected on at least one side of the vehicle.

The system is designed for driving on expressways and highways and therefore only activates at speeds above approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

Applies to vehicles with side assist

If you activate a turn signal when active lane assist is ready and it classifies a lane change as critical because of vehicles traveling alongside you or approaching you, there will be noticeable corrective steering shortly before you leave the lane. This will attempt to keep your vehicle in the lane.

Applies to vehicles without side assist

The system will not warn you before crossing a lane marker line if you have activated the turn signal. In this case, it assumes that you are changing lanes intentionally.

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise control

The corrective steering is targeted based on the driving situation. In addition to the lane marker lines, the system can also take into account other objects such as guard rails. If they are detected in close proximity to the vehicle, active lane assist helps prevent the vehicle from driving too close to them. There is also passing assistance. The system does not provide any corrective steering if it detects that you are passing another vehicle.

WARNING

- The system warns the driver that the vehicle is leaving the lane using corrective steering. The driver is always responsible for keeping the vehicle within the lane.
- The system can assist the driver in keeping the vehicle in the lane, but it does not drive by itself. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel.
- Corrective steering may not occur in certain situations, such as during heavy braking.
- There may be cases where the camera does not recognize all lane marker lines. Corrective steering can only take place on the side of the vehicle where lane marker lines are detected.
- Other road structures or objects could possibly be identified unintentionally as lane marker lines. As a result, corrective steering may be unexpected or may not occur.
- The camera view can be restricted, for example by vehicles driving ahead or by rain, snow, heavy spray or light shining into the camera. This can result in active lane assist not detecting the lane marker lines or detecting them incorrectly.
- Under certain conditions such as ruts in the road, a banked roadway or crosswinds, the corrective steering alone may not be enough to keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane.
- For safety reasons, active lane assist must not be used when there are poor road and/or weather conditions such as slippery roads, fog, gravel, heavy rain, snow and the potential for hydroplaning. Using active lane assist under these conditions may increase the risk of a crash.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

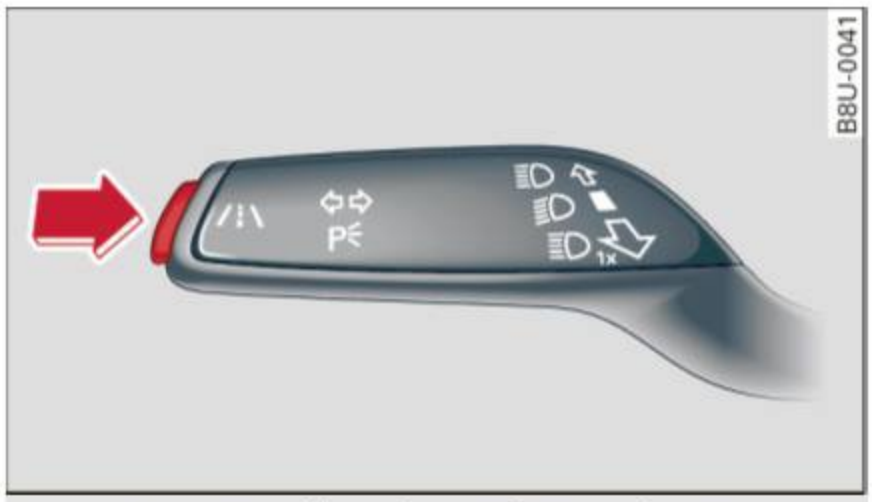


Fig. 114 Turn signal lever: button for active lane assist

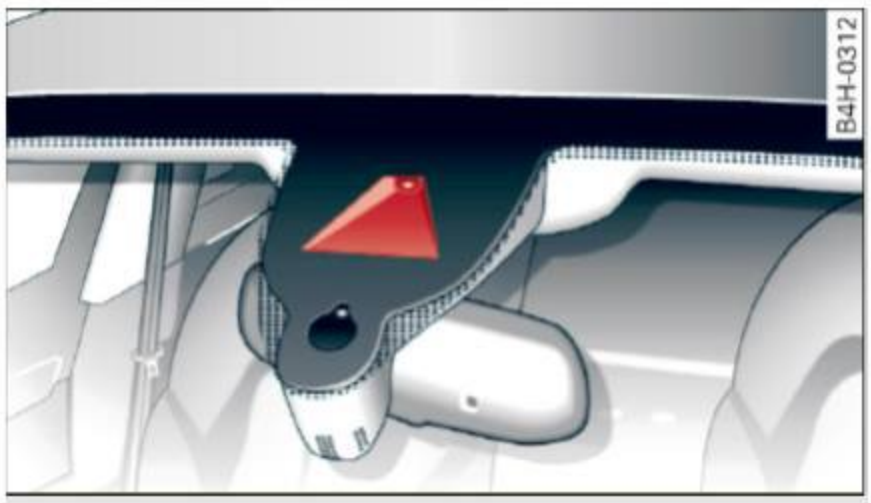


Fig. 115 Windshield: camera window for active lane assist

- Press the button to switch the system on and off ⇨ *fig. 114*. The or indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on or off.

Indicator lights

Ready: the indicator light turns on when the system is ready for use. The system can now be operated.

Not ready: the indicator light turns on if the system is switched on but is inoperable. This may be due to the following reasons:

- There is no lane marker line.
- The relevant lane marker lines are not detected (for example, markings in a construction zone or because they are obstructed by snow, dirt, water or lighting).
- The vehicle speed is below the activation speed of approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).
- The lane is too narrow or too wide.
- The curve is too narrow.
- The driver's hands are not on the steering wheel.

Tips

Make sure the camera's field of view ⇨ *fig. 115* is not obstructed by stickers or anything else. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 306*.

Image in the instrument cluster display

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist



Fig. 116 Instrument cluster: active lane assist is switched on and providing warnings



Fig. 117 Instrument cluster: active lane assist is switched on but not ready to provide warnings

You can call up the active lane assist display using the buttons in the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 12*.

White line(s)	Active lane assist is activated and ready to provide warnings.
Red line(s) (left or right)	Active lane assist warns you before leaving a lane ⇨ *fig. 116*. In addition, the steering wheel vibrates lightly.
Gray line(s)	Active lane assist is activated, but not ready to give warning ⇨ *fig. 117*.

Messages in the instrument cluster display

If the active lane assist switches off automatically, the indicator light in the display turns off and one of the following messages appears:

Audi active lane assist: Currently unavailable. No camera view

This message appears if the camera is unable to detect the lines. This could happen if:

- The camera field of view ⇨ *page 103, fig. 115* is dirty or covered in ice. Clean this area on the windshield.
- The camera field of view is fogged over. Wait until the fog has cleared before switching the active lane assist on again.
- The system has been unable to detect the lanes for an extended period of time due to road conditions. Switch active lane assist back on when the lines are more visible.

Audi active lane assist: Currently unavailable

There is a temporary active lane assist malfunction. Try switching the active lane assist on again later.

Audi active lane assist: System fault!

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Audi active lane assist: Please take over steering

This message appears if you are not steering by yourself. If this is the case, active lane assist does not switch off, but it is "not ready" to provide a warning. The system can help you keep the vehicle in the lane. However, you are responsible for driving the vehicle and must steer it yourself.

Setting the vibration warning

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Driver assist** > **Audi active lane assist**.

Vibration warning

You can switch the additional vibration warning in the steering wheel on or off.

Tips

Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Audi side assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

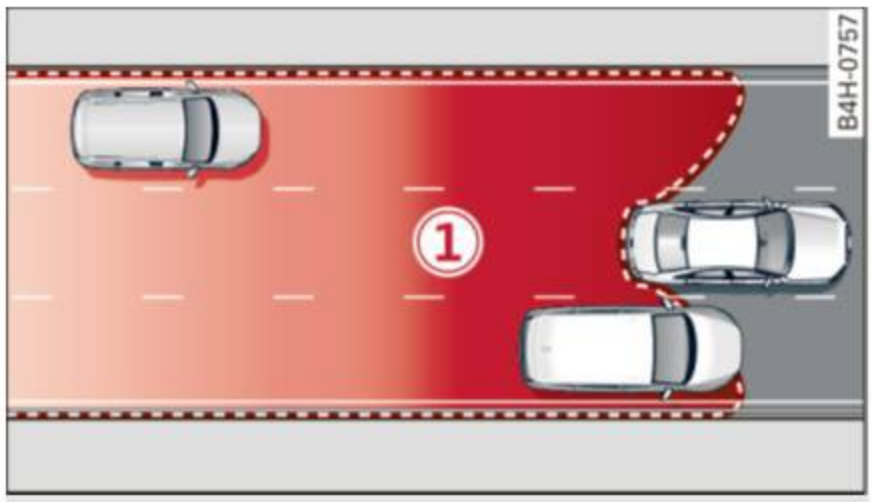


Fig. 118 Sensor detection range

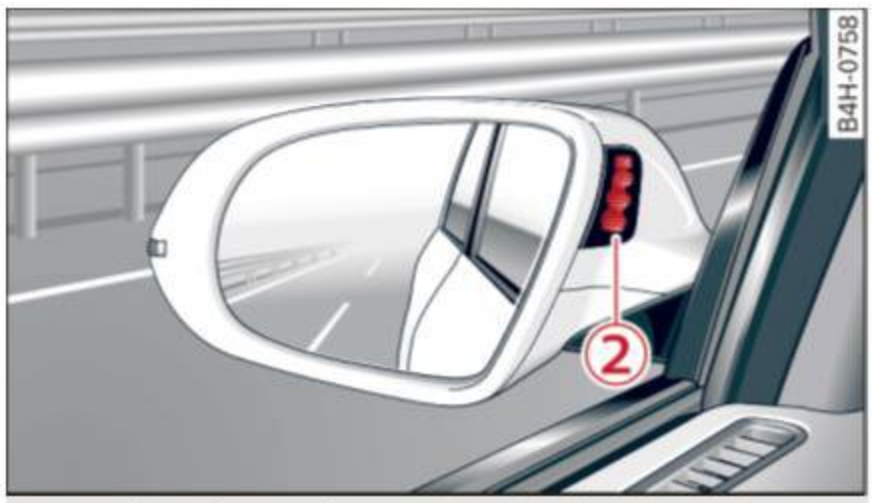


Fig. 119 Display on the exterior mirror

Side assist helps you monitor your blind spot and traffic behind your vehicle. Within the limits of the system, it warns you about vehicles that are coming closer or that are traveling with you within sensor range ① ⇨ *fig. 118*: if a lane change is classified as critical, the display ② in the exterior mirror ⇨ *fig. 119* turns on.

The display in the left exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the left, while the display in the right exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the right.

Information stage

As long as you do not activate the turn signal, side assist informs you about vehicles that are detected and classified as critical. The display in the mirror turns on, but is dim. ▸

The display remains dim in the information stage so that your view toward the front is not disturbed.

Warning stage

If the display in a mirror blinks brightly when you activate a turn signal, side assist is warning you about detected vehicles that it has classified as critical. If this happens, check traffic by glancing in the exterior mirrors and over your shoulder ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 106*.

Applies to vehicles with active lane assist

The display in the mirror can also blink if you have not activated a turn signal: if you are approaching a detected lane marker line and it appears you will be leaving the lane, side assist will warn you about detected vehicles that it has classified as critical.

Tips

- You can adjust the brightness of the display in the exterior mirror (2) ⇨ *page 107*.
- Please refer to the instructions for towing a trailer located in ⇨ *page 105*.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

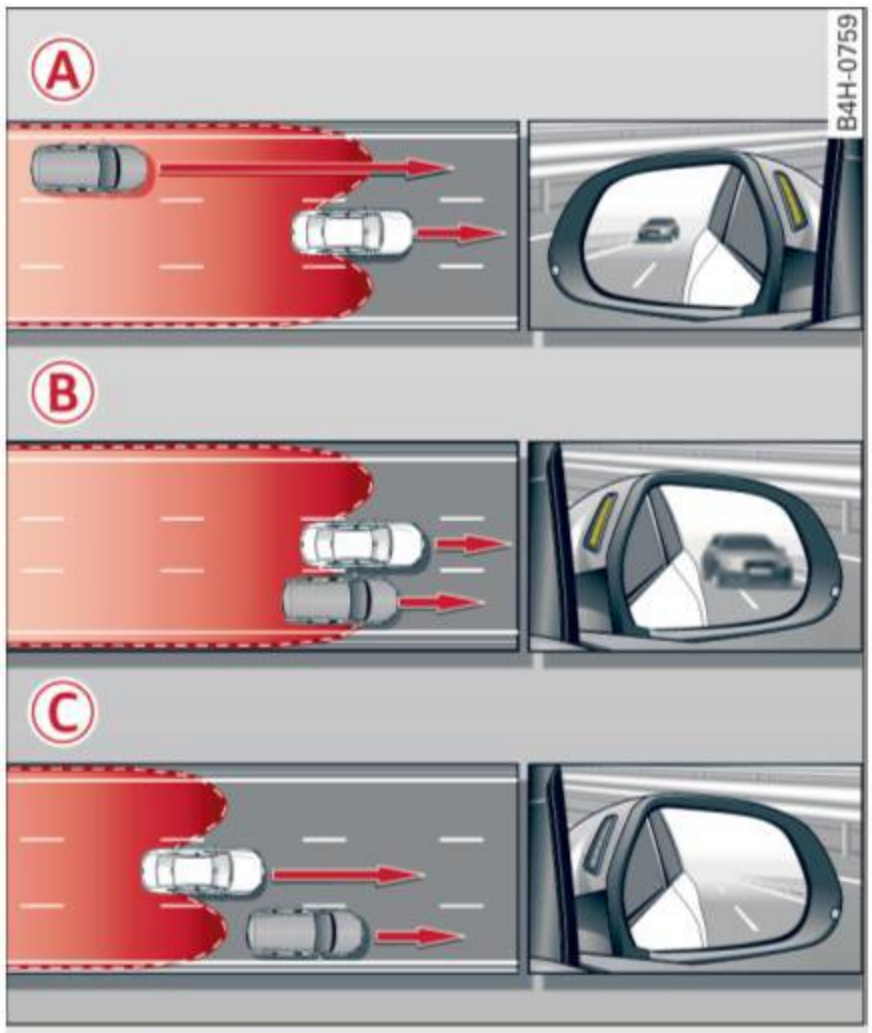


Fig. 120 Driving situations



Fig. 121 Rear of the vehicle: position of the sensors

Side assist functions at speeds above approximately 19 mph (30 km/h).

Ⓐ Vehicles that are approaching

In certain cases, a vehicle will be classified as critical for a lane change even if it is still somewhat far away. The faster a vehicle approaches, the sooner the display in the exterior mirror will turn on.

Ⓑ Vehicles traveling with you

Vehicles traveling with you are indicated in the exterior mirror if they are classified as critical for a lane change. All vehicles detected by side assist are indicated by the time they enter your "blind spot", at the latest.

Ⓒ Vehicles you are passing

If you slowly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed between the vehicle and your vehicle is less than 9 mph (15 km/h)), the display in the exterior mirror turns on as soon as the vehicle enters your blind spot.

The display will not turn on if you quickly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed is greater than 9 mph (15 km/h)).

Functional limitations

The radar sensors are designed to detect the left and right adjacent lanes when the road lanes are the normal width. In some situations, the display in the exterior mirror may turn on even though there is no vehicle located in the area that is critical for a lane change. For example:

- If the lanes are narrow or if your are driving on the edge of your lane. If this is the case, the ▶

system may have detected a vehicle in another lane that is not adjacent to your current lane.
– If you are driving through a curve. Side assist may react to a vehicle that is one lane over from the adjacent lane.
– If side assist reacts to other objects (such as high or displaced guard rails).
– In poor weather conditions. The side assist functions are limited.

Do not cover the radar sensors ⇨ *fig. 121* with stickers, deposits, bicycle wheels or other objects, because they will impair the function. Do not use side assist when towing a trailer. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 306*.

WARNING

– Always pay attention to traffic and to the area around your vehicle. Side assist cannot replace a driver's attention. The driver alone is always responsible for lane changes and similar driving maneuvers.
– In some situations, the system may not function or its function may be limited. For example:
  – if vehicles are approaching or being left behind very quickly. The display may not turn on in time.
  – In poor weather conditions such as heavy rain, snow or heavy mist.
  – On very wide lanes, in tight curves, or if there is a rise in the road surface. Vehicles in the adjacent lane may not be detected because they are outside of the sensor range.
– Audi side assist cannot detect all vehicles under all conditions, which can increase the risk of accidents.
– Please note that side assist only displays approaching vehicles or vehicles in your blind spot if your vehicle is traveling at least 19 mph (30 km/h).
– In certain situations, the system may not work or its function may be limited. For example:
  – The display may not turn on at the right time if vehicles are approaching or passing very quickly.
  – In poor weather conditions, such as heavy rain, snow or fog.
  – In very wide lanes, in tight curves or when there are slopes in the roadway, vehicles in the neighboring lanes may not be detected because they are outside of the sensor range.

Note

The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. This can impair the system. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

Tips

– If the window glass in the driver's door or front passenger's door has been tinted, the display in the exterior mirror may be incorrect.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 339*.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist



Fig. 122 Driver's door: side assist button

▸ Press the button to switch the system on and off ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 106*. The LED in the button turns on when side assist is switched on.

Setting the display brightness

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

The display brightness can be adjusted in the Infotainment system.

- Select: the CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Driver assist** > **Audi side assist**.

The display brightness adjusts automatically to the brightness of the surroundings, both in the information and in the warning stage. In very dark or very bright surroundings, the automatic adjustment will set the display to the minimum or maximum level. In such cases, you may notice no change when adjusting the brightness, or the change may only be noticeable once the surroundings change.

Adjust the brightness to a level where the display in the information stage will not disrupt your view ahead. If you change the brightness, the display in the exterior mirror will briefly show the brightness level in the information stage. The brightness of the warning stage is linked to the brightness in the information stage and is adjusted along with the information stage.

Tips

- Side assist is not active while you are making the adjustment.
- Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

If side assist switches off by itself, the LED in the button turns off and a message will appear in the instrument cluster display:

Audi side assist: Currently unavailable. No sensor vision

The radar sensors' vision is affected. Do not cover the area in front of the sensors with bike wheels, stickers, dirt or other objects. Clean the area in front of the sensors, if necessary ⇨ *page 105, fig. 121*.

Audi side assist: currently unavailable

Side assist cannot be switched on at this time because there is a malfunction (for example, the battery charge level may be too low).

Audi side assist: System fault!

The system cannot guarantee that it will detect vehicles correctly and it has switched off. The sensors have been moved or are faulty. Have the system checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon.

Audi side assist: Unavailable when towing

Side assist switches off automatically when a factory-installed trailer hitch is connected to the electrical connector on the trailer. There is no guarantee the system will switch off when using a retrofitted trailer hitch. Do not use side assist when towing a trailer.

Night vision assist with pedestrian and wild animal detection

Description

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

The night vision assist can detect, highlight and, if necessary, warn about pedestrians and large wild animals.

Night vision assist with pedestrian and wild animal detection assists you at night by using an infrared camera to monitor the area in front of your vehicle, within the limits of the system. It can display objects up to a distance of approximately 1000 feet (300 m). The thermal image detected by the camera is shown in the instrument cluster display. Warm areas appear lighter and cold areas appear darker.

4H0012721BD

Highlighting detected pedestrians and wild animals

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist



Fig. 123 Instrument cluster: yellow highlighted pedestrians



Fig. 124 Instrument cluster: symbol when the infrared image is not visible

Within the limits of the system, the night vision assist can detect pedestrians and wild animals that are between approximately 32 ft (10 m) and 295 ft (90 m) in front of the vehicle and within the detection zone. Within the limits of the system ⇨ *page 109*, a pedestrian or wild animal detected when the low beams are switched on is highlighted in yellow ⇨ *fig. 123*. Animal recognition is not active within highly developed areas. The system only detects large wild animals such as deer.

Tips

If another display such as navigation replaces the night vision assist image, the symbol appears in a tab ⇨ *fig. 124*. You can access night vision assist using the multifunction steering wheel buttons ⇨ *page 11*.

Pedestrian and wild animal warning

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist



Fig. 125 Instrument cluster: Ⓐ pedestrian warning, Ⓑ wild animal warning



Fig. 126 Instrument cluster: Ⓐ pedestrian warning/Ⓑ wild animal warning, when the night vision assist image is not selected in the instrument cluster display

Image in the instrument cluster/Head-up display*

If there are pedestrians or wild animals in an area in front of your vehicle that is classified as critical, the system will direct your attention to this:

- Pedestrians or wild animals are highlighted in red and the corresponding symbol or turns on ⇨ *fig. 125*.
- There is also an audible signal.

The area classified as critical is based on the vehicle speed and the steering wheel angle. Pedestrian and wild animal warning encourages you to pay more attention.

If the night vision assist image is replaced by another display (such as the on-board computer), the red or indicator light ⇨ *fig. 126* will appear if there is a pedestrian or wild animal warning. ▶

If the Head-up display* is switched on and the night vision assist content is activated, or will appear in the Head-up display*.

Marking light*

To direct the driver's attention to a pedestrian, the headlights can flash on the pedestrian three times in a row when there is a pedestrian warning.

This occurs at speeds above approximately 35 mph (60 km/h) if you are outside of illuminated areas and no detected vehicles are shown. The high beam assistant* controls the marking light* ⇨ *page 44, High beam assistant*.

The marking light is not used for wild animals.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist



Fig. 127 Front of the vehicle: night vision assist camera

The following situations may affect the function of the night vision assist system:

– Poor visibility such as snow, rain, fog or heavy spray
– Dirty lens on the night vision assist camera

Make sure the night vision assist camera ⇨ *fig. 127* is not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions because that can affect the camera function. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 306*.

The pedestrian and wild animal recognition depends on the temperature difference between the person/wild animal and the background. People/wild animals may not be detected if the difference is too small. The pedestrian/wild animal marking and the marking light* deactivate at temperatures above approximately 77 °F (25 °C) and during daylight. If the night vision assist image is selected in the instrument cluster display, then the symbol appears at the top on the right side.

WARNING

Pay attention to traffic and the area around your vehicle when night vision assist is switched on. The driver is always responsible for assessing the traffic situation.

– Night vision assist can only warn about people and wild animals located within the visual range of the infrared camera. The visual range corresponds to the image in the instrument cluster display.
– Night vision assist may not detect people or wild animals and mark them if
  – they are not in an upright position, for example if they are sitting or lying down and/or
  – the silhouette in the display appears incomplete or interrupted, for example because the person is partially covered by a vehicle or an animal by tall grass. This could increase the risk of an accident.
– Never try to swerve around animals if doing so will endanger you or other road users, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Tips

– Even though the system evaluates the shape and heat given off by all detected objects, there are limits to the system. There may be false warnings.
– For technical reasons, the image pauses in split second intervals.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist



Fig. 128 Area around the light switch: night vision assist button

Requirement: switch the ignition on and turn the light switch to the **AUTO** position.

- ▸ Press the button ⇨ *fig. 128*. The heat image from the night vision camera appears in the instrument cluster display.
- ▸ Press the button again to switch the night vision assist off.

If conditions are bright enough, night vision assist can be switched on without moving the light switch to the **AUTO** position. Pedestrian and wild animal highlighting and warnings are only active when it is dark outside and the headlights are switched on.

Adjusting the contrast

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

- ▸ Select: the CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Driver assist** > **Night vision assist contrast**.

When the night vision assist is switched on and the image is visible in the instrument cluster display, you can adjust the contrast in the image from **Min** to **Max**.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

Night vision assist: System fault

The system cannot guarantee correct function and is switched off. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Night vision assist: Currently unavailable

The system cannot guarantee correct function at this time and is switched off.

Night vision assist: Only available at night with lights turned on

Night vision assist only works when it is dark outside and the headlights are on.

Night vision assist: Pedestrian marking currently unavailable

The pedestrian and wild animal marking was switched off by the system.

Audi drive select (drive settings)

Introduction

Drive select makes it possible to experience different types of vehicle settings in one vehicle. The driver can select **Comfort**, **Auto** and **Dynamic** modes in the Infotainment system to switch between, for example, a sporty and a comfortable driving mode.

You can adjust the vehicle settings to your personal preferences in the **Individual** mode. This makes it possible to combine settings such as a sporty engine setting with light steering.

Description

The following systems, among other things, are influenced by drive select:

Engine and transmission

Depending on the mode, the engine and transmission respond more quickly or in a more balanced manner to accelerator pedal movements. In the sporty dynamic mode, the transmission shifts at higher speed ranges.

Air suspension

The adaptive air suspension/adaptive air suspension sport* is an electronically controlled air suspension and damping system. The adjustment ▶

depends on the driving mode selected, steering movements, the driver's braking and acceleration, and as the road surface, vehicle speed and load. A sporty setting is generally used in vehicles with adaptive air suspension sport*.

The vehicle ground clearance depends on the mode selected and the speed. When you are in the auto or dynamic mode, the highway setting is activated when you drive above 75 mph (120 km/h) for more than 30 seconds. The ground clearance is increased automatically if the speed drops below 44 mph (70 km/h) for more than 120 seconds.

Steering

The power steering adapts. Indirect steering that moves easily as in comfort mode is especially suited to long drives on a highway. The dynamic mode provides sporty, direct steering.

Applies to: vehicles with dynamic steering

The steering ratio changes based on vehicle speed in order to maintain optimum steering effort for the driver at all times. This sets the steering to be less sensitive at higher speeds in order to provide improved vehicle control. At reduced speeds, steering is more direct in order to keep the steering effort as minimal as possible when the driver is maneuvering the vehicle. At low and average speeds, dynamic steering* additionally provides more responsive steering performance.

Sport differential*

As a component of the all wheel drive system (quattro) ⇨ *page 130*, the sport differential distributes the driving power to the rear axle depending on the situation. The distribution of power varies from balanced (comfort) to sporty (dynamic) depending on the selected mode. The goal is a high level of agility and ability to accelerate on curves. The vehicle is very responsive to steering.

Cornering light*

The cornering light adapts the high beams to the direction of the curve depending on the speed. The pivoting action and the lighting also adapt to the mode.

Adaptive cruise control*

The behavior when accelerating can be adjusted from comfortable to sporty, depending on the drive select mode. Adaptive cruise control also responds to the driving behavior of the vehicle ahead in a more conservative or sporty manner.

Engine sound*

The engine sound adapts to the current mode and can be subtle to sporty.

Note

- Make sure there is enough clearance above and below the vehicle when parking. The height of the vehicle can change once it is parked due to temperature fluctuations, changes to the load conditions and changes to the driving modes, which can affect clearance.
- When transporting the vehicle on a car carrier, train, ship or by other means, only tie the vehicle down at the running surface of the tires, which is the outer circumference. Securing the vehicle at the axle components, suspension struts or towing eyes is not permitted because the pressure in the air suspension struts can change during transport. The vehicle may not be secured sufficiently if this happens.

Tips

- In some models, the maximum vehicle speed can only be reached in the auto and dynamic modes.
- The S selector lever position automatically engages if the dynamic mode is selected.
- In vehicles that have dynamic steering*, operating noise is heard when starting or stopping the engine. This does not indicate a problem.

4H0012721BD

Selecting the driving mode

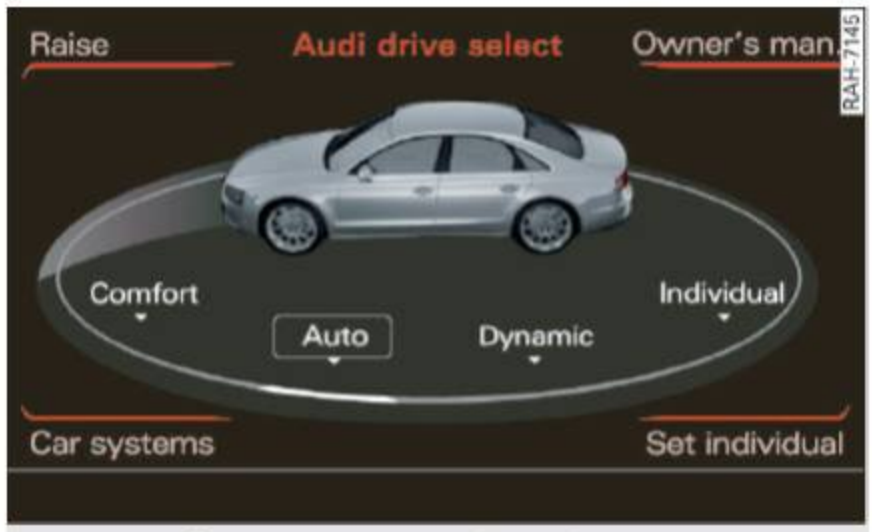


Fig. 129 Infotainment system: drive select

▸ To select the mode, select the following in the Infotainment: CAR function button > **Comfort**, **Auto**, **Dynamic** or **Individual**.

You can change the driving mode when the vehicle is stationary or while driving. If traffic permits, after changing modes, briefly take your foot off the accelerator pedal so that the recently selected mode is also activated for the engine.

Comfort - provides a comfort-oriented vehicle setup and is suited for long drives on highways.

Auto - provides an overall comfortable yet dynamic driving feel and is suited for everyday use.

Dynamic - gives the driver a sporty driving feel and is suited to a sporty driving style.

Individual - ⇨ *page 112*.

WARNING

Pay attention to traffic when operating the drive select to reduce the risk of an accident.

Adjusting the individual mode

You can adjust the vehicle settings to your personal preferences.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **Set individual** control button. Once you select the menu, you will automatically drive in the **Individual** mode.

The equipment in your vehicle will determine which settings you can adjust. The following table gives an overview of the characteristics.

	Comfort	Auto	Dynamic
Engine/transmission	balanced	balanced	sporty
Air suspension	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Steering	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Dynamic steering*	comfortable/indirect	balanced/direct	sporty/direct
Sport differential*	balanced	agile	sporty
Adaptive cruise control*	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Engine sound*	subtle	subtle/sporty[a)]	sporty

a) Subtle in the selector lever position D and sporty in S.

Tips

Your **Individual** mode settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Raising/lowering the vehicle

Raising the vehicle

▸ Select the following in the Infotainment system: the CAR function button > **Raise** control button.
▸ Wait for the arrows in the display to stop blinking and the vehicle to reach its final position. ▶

Lowering the vehicle

- ▸ To lower the vehicle, select the following in the Infotainment system: the CAR function button > **Lower** control button.
- ▸ Wait for the arrows in the display to stop blinking and the vehicle to lower completely.

Note

– Remember that your vehicle is not suitable for driving offroad even when it is raised. There is not enough ground clearance.
– If the vehicle is raised, it will lower automatically when driving 62 mph (100 km/h) or faster.

Messages

Air suspension: Vehicle is too high. Controlling level...

Air suspension: Vehicle is too low. Controlling level...

The driver message switches off when the level control process is complete.

Parking systems

General information

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/rearview camera/peripheral camera

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, various parking aids will help you when parking and maneuvering.

The **parking system plus** assists you when parking by audibly and visually indicating objects detected in front of and behind the vehicle ⇨ *page 115*.

The **rearview camera** shows the area behind the vehicle in the Infotainment system display. This display assists you when you are cross or parallel parking ⇨ *page 116*. The parking system plus functions are also available ⇨ *page 115*.

The **peripheral cameras** give various views to help you when parking or maneuvering ⇨ *page 119*. The parking system plus functions are also available ⇨ *page 115*.

WARNING

- Always look for traffic and check the area around your vehicle by looking at it directly as well. The parking system cannot replace the driver's attention. The driver is always responsible when entering or leaving a parking space and during similar maneuvers.
- Please note that some surfaces, such as clothing, are not detected by the system.
- Sensors and cameras have blind spots in which people and objects cannot be detected. Be especially cautious of small children and animals.
- The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the radiator grille, bumper, wheel housing and the underbody. The parking system may be impaired as a result. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.
- Make sure the sensors are not obstructed by stickers, deposits or other materials. If they are, the sensor function could be impaired. For additional information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 306*.

Note

- Some objects are not detected or displayed by the system under certain circumstances:
  - Objects such as barrier chains, trailer draw bars, vertical poles or fences
  - Objects above the sensors such as wall extensions
  - Objects with certain surfaces or structures such as chain link fences or powder snow
- If you continue driving closer to a low object, it may disappear from the sensor range. Note that you will no longer be warned about this obstacle.

Tips

- The system may provide a warning even though there are no obstacles in the coverage area in some situations, such as:
  - certain road surfaces or when there is tall grass.
  - external ultrasonic sources such as from cleaning vehicles.
  - in heavy rain, snow, or thick vehicle exhaust.
- We recommend that you practice parking in a traffic-free location or parking lot to become familiar with the system. When doing this, there should be good light and weather conditions.
- You can change the volume and pitch of the signals as well as the display ⇨ *page 124*.
- Please refer to the instructions for towing a trailer located in ⇨ *page 124*.
- What appears in the infotainment display is somewhat time-delayed.
- The sensors must be kept clean and free of snow and ice for park aid to operate.

Parking system plus

Description

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus

Parking system plus provides audio and visual signals when parking.

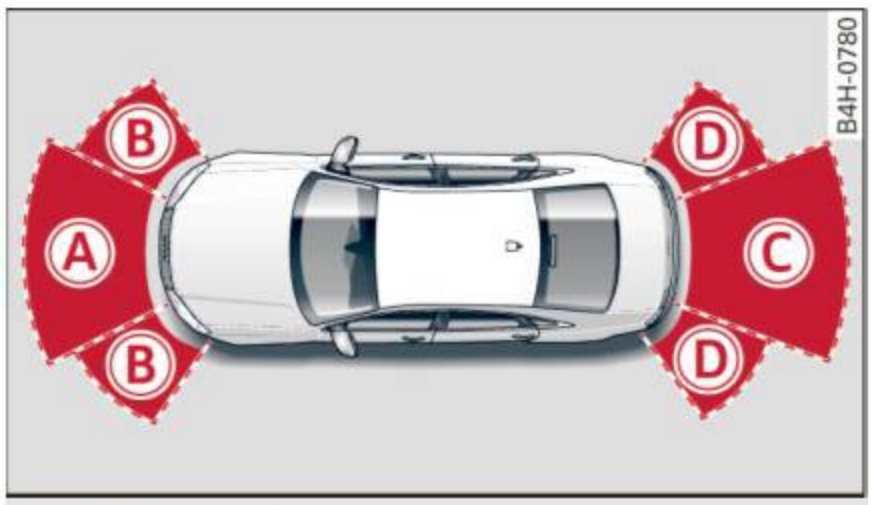


Fig. 130 Display field

Sensors are located in the front and rear bumpers. If these detect an obstacle, audible and visual signals warn you.

Make sure the sensors are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the sensor function. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 306*.

The display field begins approximately at:

Ⓐ	4 ft (1.20 m)
Ⓑ	3 ft (0.90 m)
Ⓒ	5.2 ft (1.60 m)
Ⓓ	3 ft (0.90 m)

The closer you get to the obstacle, the shorter the interval between the audible signals. A continuous tone sounds when the obstacle is less than approximately 1 foot (0.30 meters) away.

Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 114*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 114*!

If the distance to an obstacle remains constant, the volume of the distance warning gradually drops after about four seconds (this does not apply in the continuous tone range).

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus

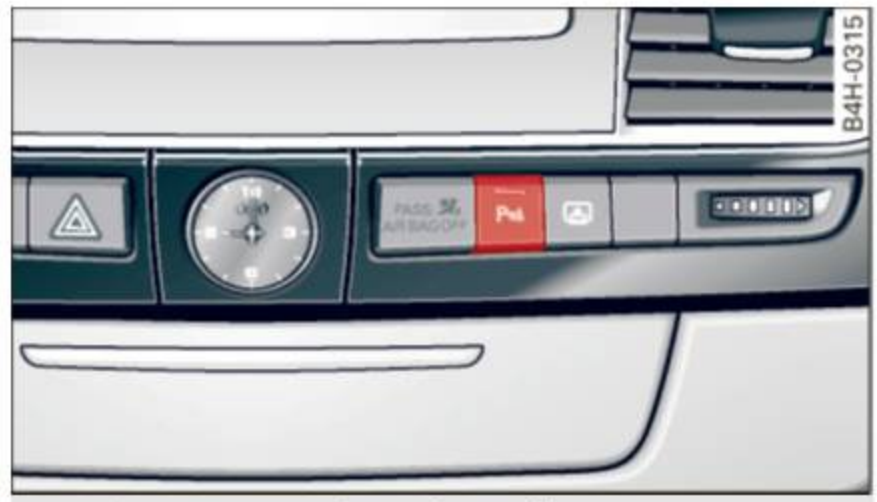


Fig. 131 Center console: parking aid button

Switching on

- Shift into reverse, or
- Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *fig. 131*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching off

- Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
- Press the P button, or
- Switch the ignition off.

Visual display

The segments in front of and behind the vehicle help you to determine the distance between you and an obstacle.

The red lines mark the expected direction of travel according to the steering angle. A white segment indicates an identified obstacle that is outside of the vehicle's path. Red segments show identified obstacles that are in your vehicle's path. As your vehicle comes closer to the obstacle, the segments move closer to the vehicle. The collision area has been reached when the next to last segment is displayed. Obstacles in the collision area, including those outside of the vehicle's path, are shown in red. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 114*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 114*!

Rearview camera

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

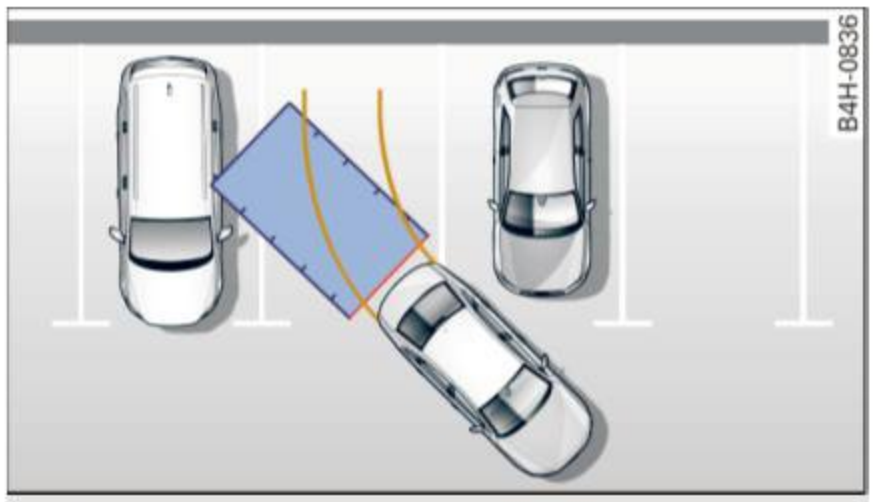


Fig. 132 Illustration: Cross parking

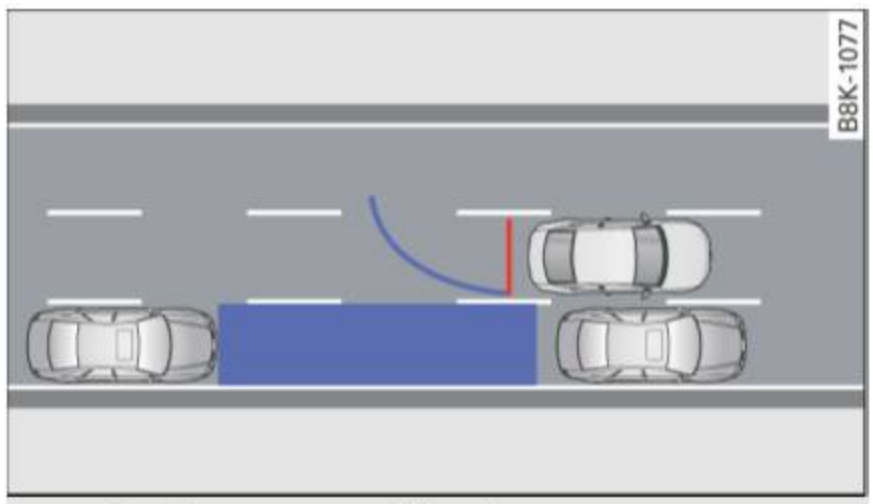


Fig. 133 Illustration: parallel parking

The rearview camera gives you two views: you can use *Cross parking* to park in a parking space or a garage, for example ⇨ *fig. 132*. You can use *parallel parking* if you would like to park on the side of the road ⇨ *fig. 133*.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

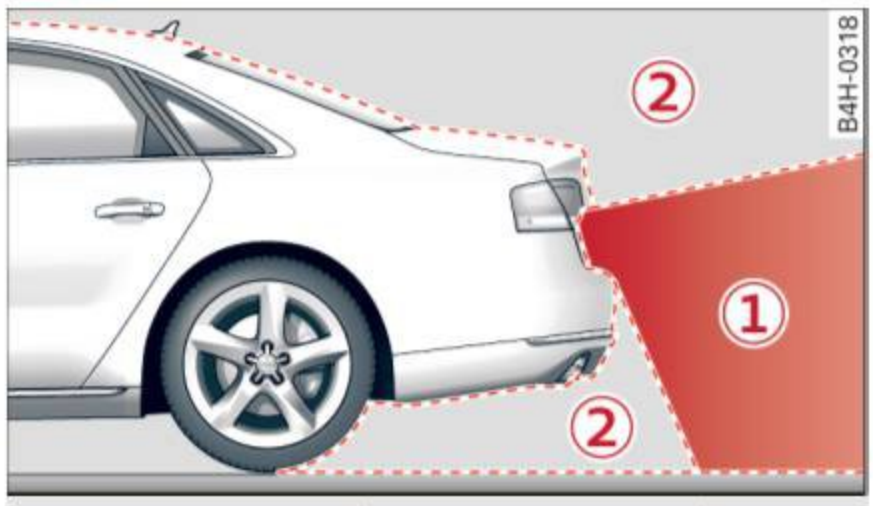


Fig. 134 Area covered ① and area not covered ② by the rearview camera.

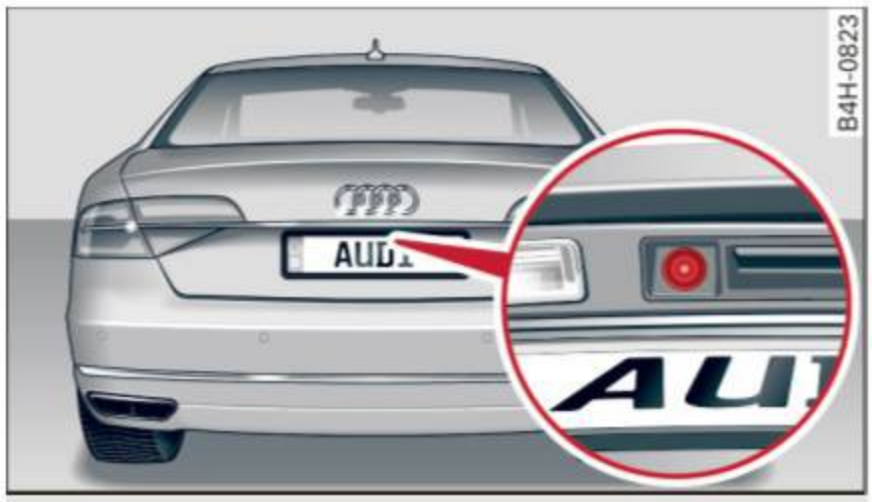


Fig. 135 Luggage compartment lid: location of the rearview camera

The rearview camera is located above the rear license plate bracket. Make sure that the lens for the rearview camera ⇨ *fig. 135* is not covered by deposits or any other obstructions because this can impair the function of the parking system. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 306*.

The rearview camera coverage area corresponds to ① ⇨ *fig. 134*. Only this area is shown in the Infotainment display. Objects that are outside of this area ② are not displayed.

WARNING

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 114*.
- If the position and the installation angle of the rearview camera was changed, for example after a collision, do not continue to use the system for safety reasons. Have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Only use the rearview camera to assist you if it shows a good, clear picture. For example, the image may be affected by the sun shining into the lens, dirt on the lens, or if there is a malfunction.
- Use the rearview camera only if the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on the luggage compartment lid do not block the rearview camera.
- The camera lens enlarges and distorts the field of vision. The object appears both altered and inaccurate on the screen. ▶

– In certain situations, people or objects in the display appear closer or farther away:
  – For objects that do not touch the ground, such as the bumper of a parked vehicle, a trailer hitch or the rear of a truck. Do not use the orientation lines in this case.
  – If driven from a level surface onto an incline, or a downward slope.
  – If driven toward protruding objects.
  – If the vehicle is carrying too much load in the rear.
– The accuracy of the orientation lines and blue surfaces decreases when the vehicle is raised/lowered ⇨ *page 110*.

Note

– Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 114*.
– The orange-colored orientation lines in the Infotainment display show the vehicle path based on the steering wheel angle. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that an exterior mirror or a corner of the vehicle does not collide with any obstacles.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

Switching on

▸ Shift into reverse, or
▸ Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *page 115, fig. 131*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching between the rearview camera and optical display

▸ Press the **Graphic** control button ⑤ ⇨ *page 117, fig. 136* to see the optical display.
▸ Press the **Rear view** control button to see the rearview camera image.

Switching off

▸ Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
▸ Press the P button, or
▸ Switch the ignition off.

Tips

– The visual display in the left part of the display should help you detect the critical vehicle areas.
– You can change the volume and pitch of the signals as well as the display ⇨ *page 124*.

Perpendicular parking

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

This view may be used when parking in a garage or in a parking space.

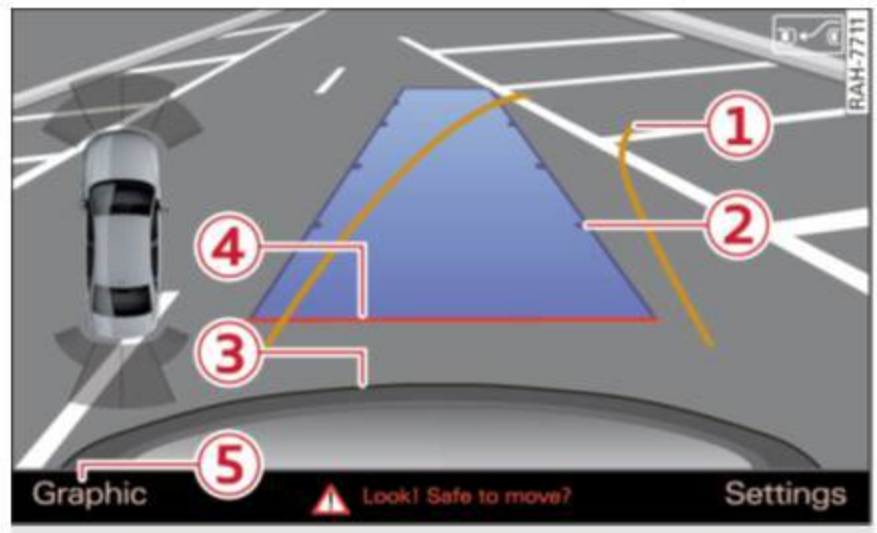


Fig. 136 Infotainment system: aiming at a parking space

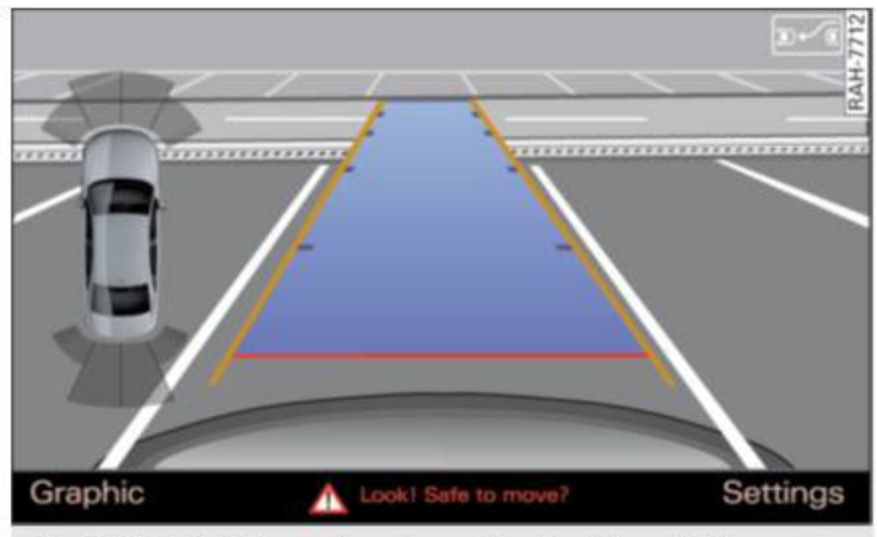


Fig. 137 Infotainment system: aligning the vehicle

▸ Turn the Infotainment system on and shift into reverse gear.
▸ The orange orientation lines ① show the direction of travel of the vehicle. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines appear in the parking space ⇨ *fig. 136*. Use the markings ② to help you estimate the distance to an obstacle. Each marking represents approximately 3 ft (1 m). The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear. ▸

- ▸ While driving in reverse gear, adjust the steering wheel angle to fit the parking space using the orange orientation lines for assistance ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 116*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 117*. ③ represents the rear bumper. At the very latest, stop the vehicle when the red orientation line ④ borders an object.

Parallel parking

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

This view may be used when parallel parking along the side of a street.

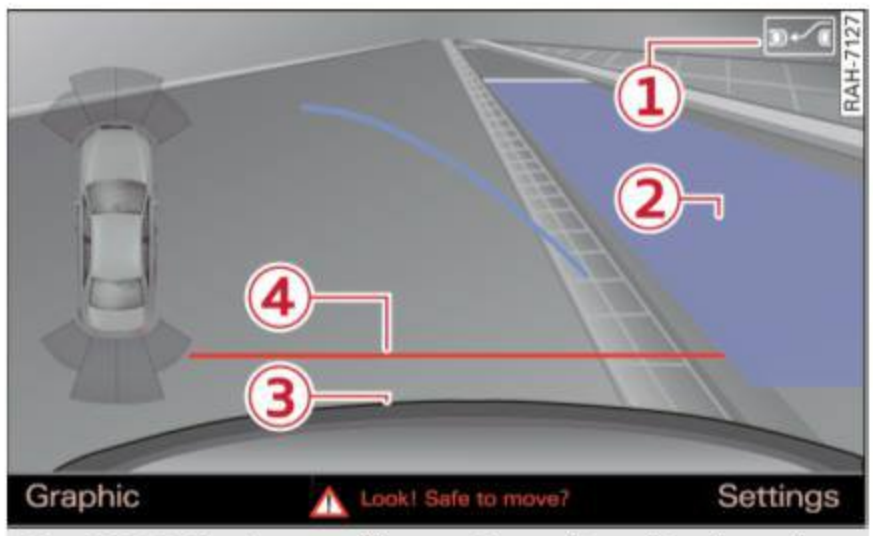


Fig. 138 Infotainment: blue surfaces aligned in the parking space

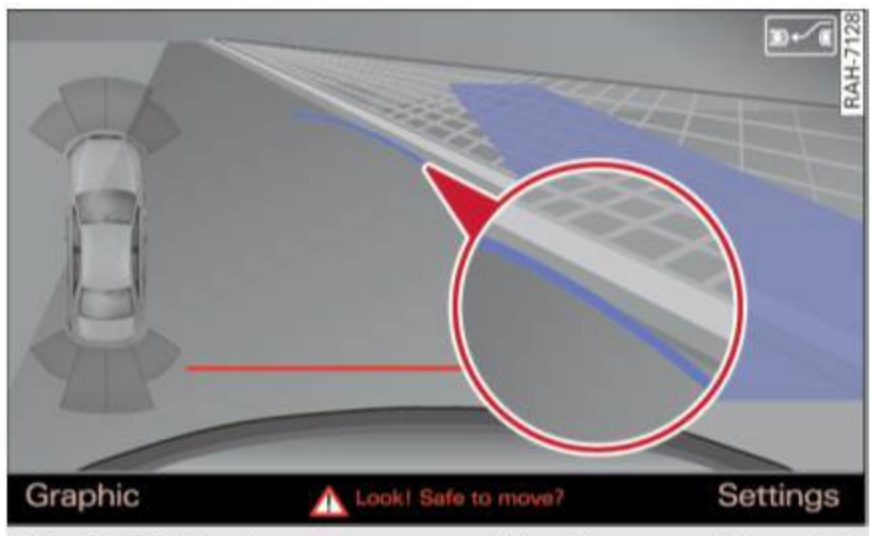


Fig. 139 Infotainment: contact of the blue curved line with the curb

Parking on the right is described here. It is identical when parking on the left.

If there is an obstacle next to the parking space (such as a wall), refer to Information for parking next to obstacles ⇨ *page 118*.

- ▸ Activate the turn signal.
- ▸ Position your vehicle next to a parked vehicle in front of the desired parking space. The distance to this vehicle should be approximately 3 ft. (1 m).
- ▸ Turn the Infotainment system on and shift into reverse gear. The parking system is turned on and the **Cross parking** view is displayed.
- ▸ Press the control button on the Infotainment unit ① ⇨ *fig. 138*. The **Parallel parking** view is displayed.
- ▸ Back up and align your vehicle so the blue area ② borders on the rear end of the vehicle behind you or on the parking space line ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 116*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 117*. The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear. The long side of the blue area should be on the curb. The entire blue area must fit into the parking space.
- ▸ With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel to the right as far as it will go.
- ▸ Back into the parking space until the blue curve ⇨ *fig. 139* touches the curb ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 116*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 117*. Stop the vehicle.
- ▸ With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel to the left as far as it will go.
- ▸ Continue to back into the parking space until the vehicle is parked parallel to the curb ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 116*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 117*. ③ represents the rear bumper. At the very latest, stop the vehicle when the red orientation line ④ borders an object. Keep an eye on the front of your vehicle while doing this.

Parking next to obstacles

If there is an obstacle (such as a wall) next to the parking space, position the vehicle so there is more space on that side. Position the long side of the blue surface so that there is sufficient space from the obstacle. The surface must not be touching. You will also need to start turning the steering wheel earlier. The blue curve ⇨ *fig. 139* must **not** touch the obstacle, but rather there should be enough distance. ▶

Tips

The left or right orientation lines and surfaces will be displayed, depending on the turn signal being used.

Peripheral cameras

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

With this equipment, the parking system plus* ⇨ *page 115* is supplemented with various peripheral cameras.

The four cameras give you the following views: area around the vehicle, front corner view and rear corner view, view in front of the vehicle and behind the vehicle.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

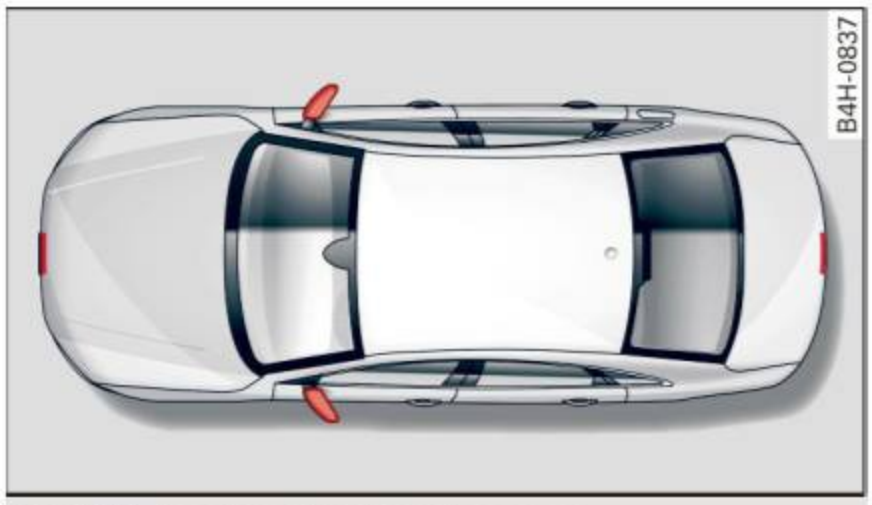


Fig. 140 Location of peripheral cameras

The four peripheral cameras are located in the radiator grille, in the luggage compartment lid and on both exterior mirrors ⇨ *fig. 140*. Make sure that the lenses are not covered by deposits or any other obstructions as this may impair the system. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 306*.

In the **Top view** mode, black corners are shown in the vehicle silhouette. Objects in these areas are outside of the camera's field of view and are not detected.

The accuracy of the orientation lines and the blue surfaces is reduced if the adaptive air suspension/sport* is faulty, if the vehicle is lifted or if the **Dynamic** mode is activated ⇨ *page 110*.

WARNING

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 114*.
- If the position or the installation angle of a camera was changed, for example after a collision, do not continue to use the system for safety reasons. Have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Keep in mind that the image in the display is incorrect if the exterior mirror housing has been manually adjusted.
- Use the **Rear** mode and the **corner view (rear)** mode only when the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. Otherwise the image in the display will be distorted.
- The vehicle surroundings are shown using the camera images. The vehicle image is shown by the system. Objects and obstacles above the camera are not displayed.
- Camera lenses enlarge and distort the field of vision. The objects appear both altered and inaccurate on the screen.

Note

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 114*.
- The Infotainment display shows the direction in which the rear of the vehicle is traveling based on the steering wheel angle. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that an exterior mirror or a corner of the vehicle does not collide with any obstacles.

Tips

If the ⇄/⇄/⇄ symbol appears in the display and the respective display area is grayed out, then the power exterior mirrors were folded in or one of the doors/luggage compartment lid was opened.

Switching on or off

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

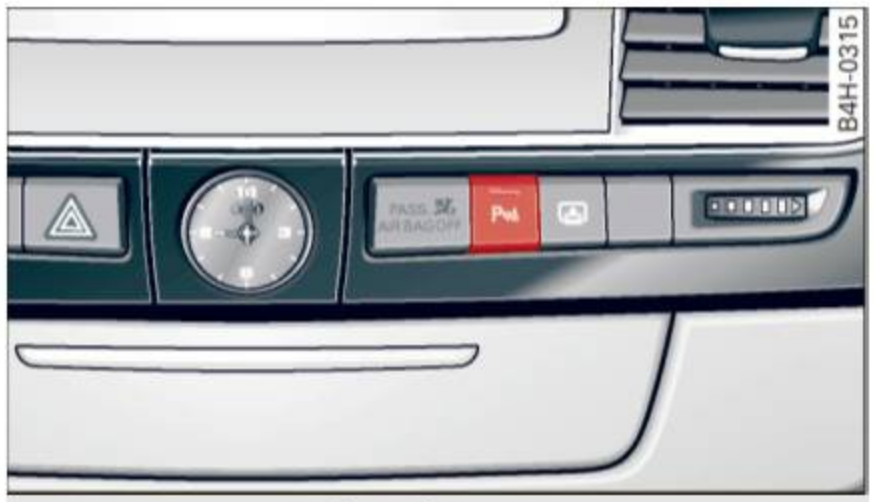


Fig. 141 Center console: P button

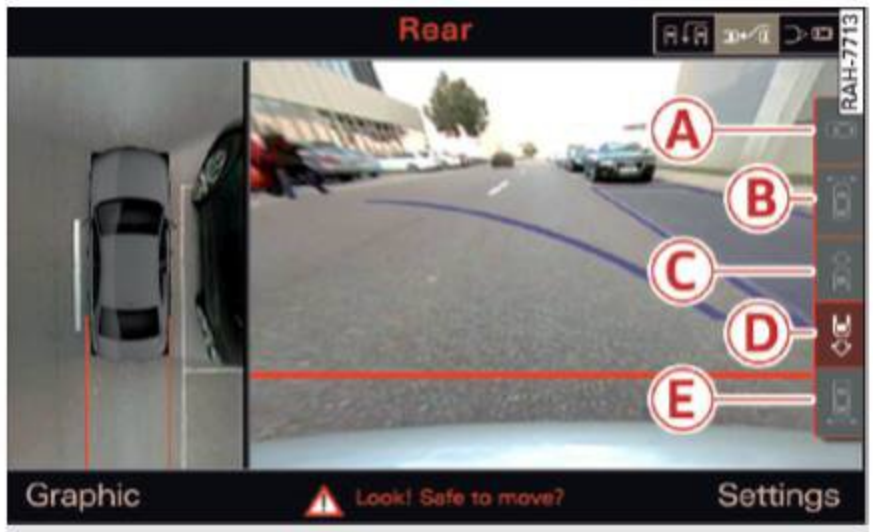


Fig. 142 Infotainment system: select the mode

Switching on

- Shift into reverse, or
- Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *fig. 141*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Selecting the mode

- Turn the control knob to the symbol for the desired mode Ⓐ through Ⓔ ⇨ *fig. 142* and press the control knob.

Switching off

- Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
- Press the P button, or
- Switch the ignition off.

You may select from the following modes:

Ⓐ - Top view ⇨ *page 120*

Ⓑ - Corner view (front) ⇨ *page 121*

Ⓒ - Front ⇨ *page 121*

Ⓓ - Rear ⇨ *page 121*

Ⓔ - Corner view (rear) ⇨ *page 121*

Peripheral

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

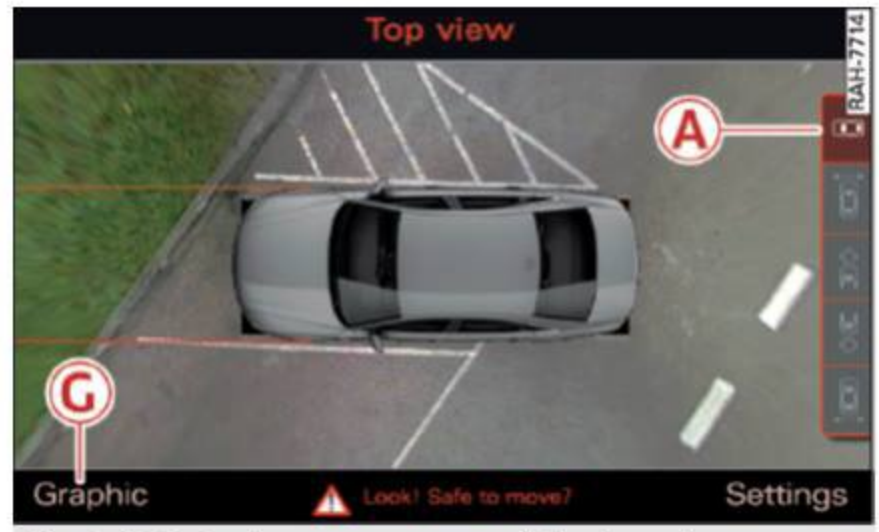


Fig. 143 Infotainment system: peripheral mode

This view is ideal for maneuvering. The vehicle surroundings are shown using the camera images. The vehicle image is shown by the system.

Selecting peripheral

- Select the Ⓐ symbol with the control knob and press the control knob.

Switching between optical view and camera image

- Press the **Graphic** Ⓖ control button to see the optical display.
- To display the camera image, press the **Camera** control button.

Corner view (front)/corner view (rear)

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

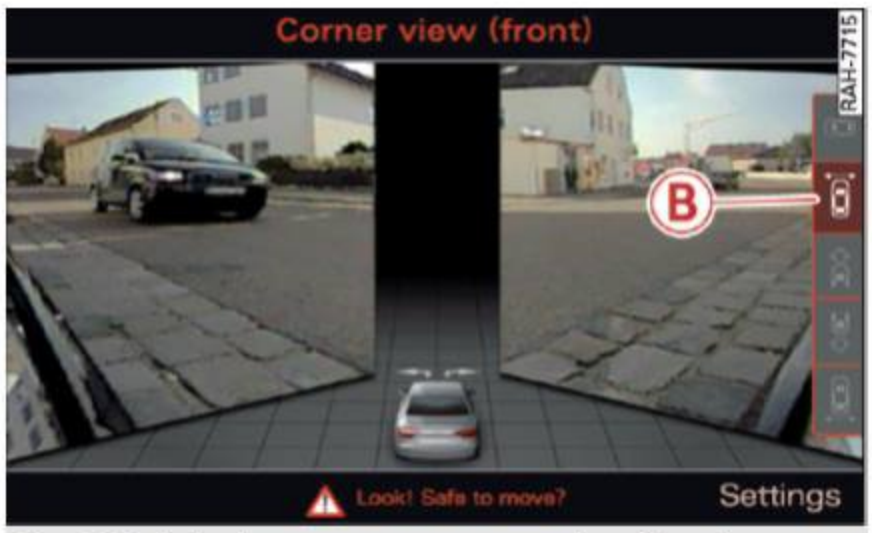


Fig. 144 Infotainment system: corner view (front)



Fig. 145 Infotainment system: corner view (rear)

This view can assist you for example, when you are exiting from an area with poor visibility. The area at the front and rear sides of the vehicles is displayed.

- ▸ To show the side view toward the front, select the symbol Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 144* with the control knob and press the control knob.
- ▸ To show the side view toward the rear, select the symbol Ⓔ ⇨ *fig. 145* with the control knob and press the control knob.

Front

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

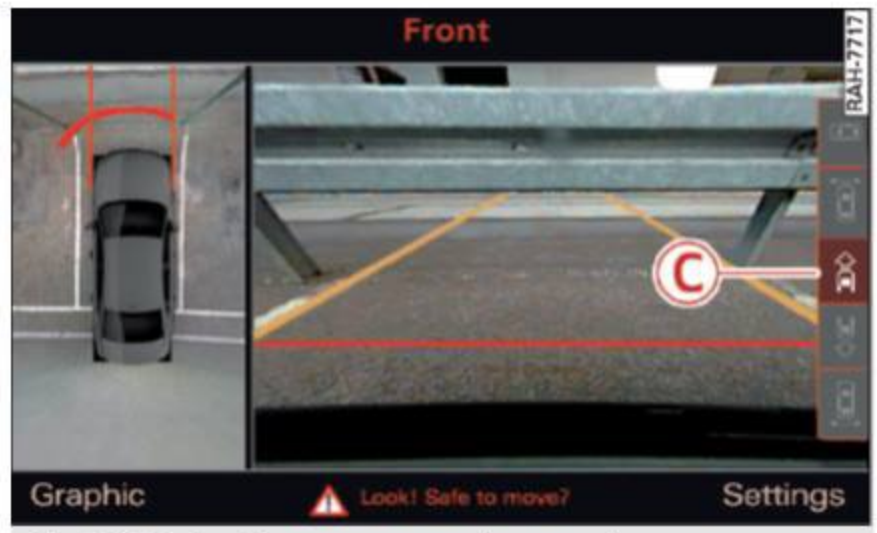


Fig. 146 Infotainment system: front mode

This view assists you for example, in using the full maneuvering range in front of the vehicle. The area in front of the vehicle is displayed. The vehicle surroundings are shown in the left area of the display. You can switch between the optical display and camera image ⇨ *page 120*.

- ▸ Select the Ⓒ symbol with the control knob. The orange-colored orientation lines denote the projected direction of travel. Stop the vehicle when the red orientation line* borders an object ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 119*.

Rear

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

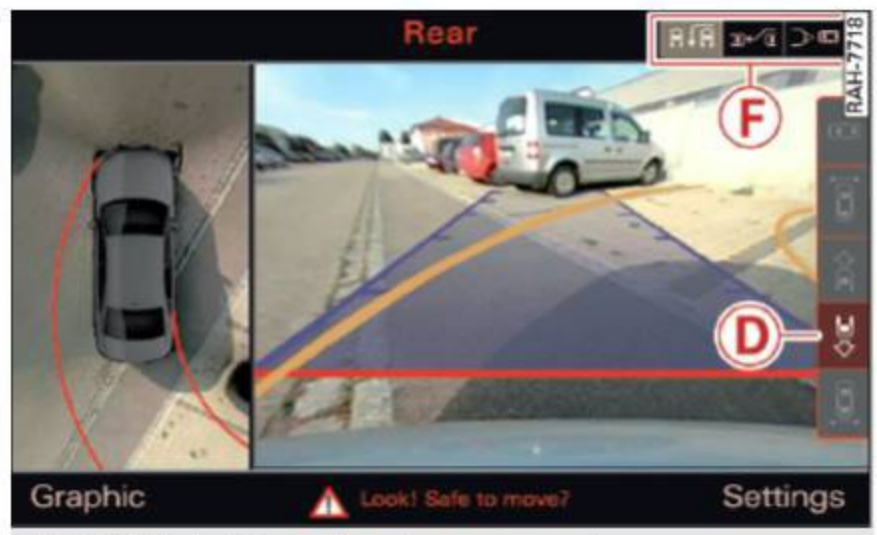


Fig. 147 Infotainment system: rear mode

This view assists you for example, in using the full maneuvering range behind the vehicle. The area behind the vehicle is displayed. The vehicle surroundings are shown in the left area of the display. You can switch between the optical display and camera image ⇨ *page 120*.

- ▸ Select the symbol Ⓓ with the control knob. ▶

You can choose between three different views in this mode.

- ▸ To cross park, parallel park or position the vehicle in front of a trailer*, press the control button (F) on the control panel repeatedly until the symbol for the desired mode is selected.

Perpendicular parking

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

This view may be used when parking in a garage or in a parking space.

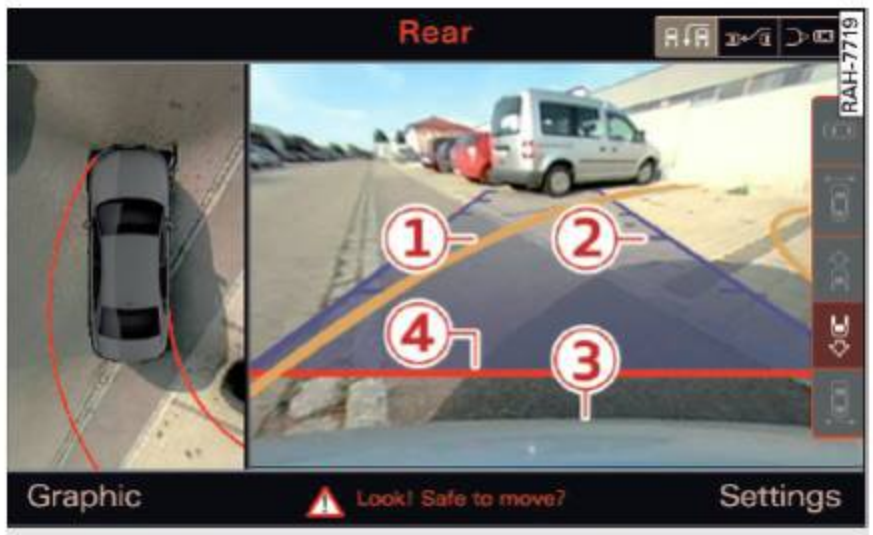


Fig. 148 Infotainment system: aiming at a parking space

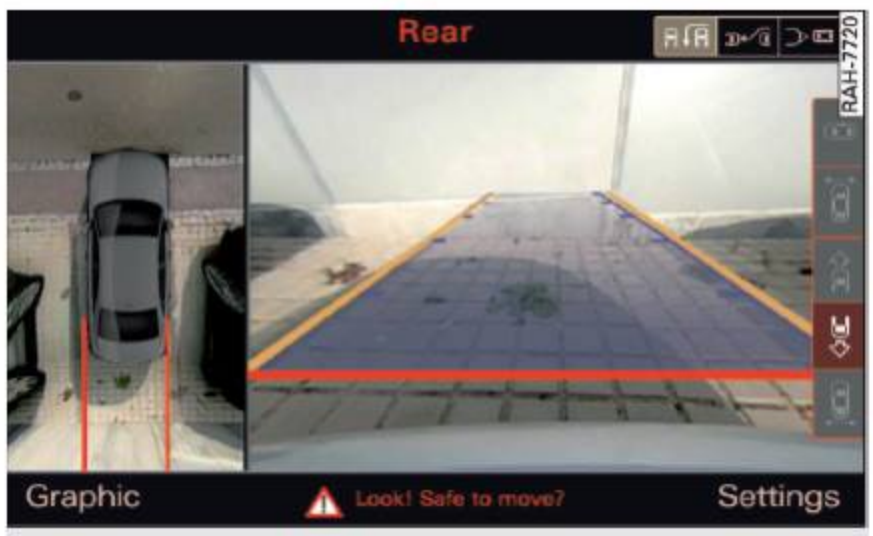


Fig. 149 Infotainment system: aligning the vehicle

Requirements: cross parking must be selected ⇨ *page 121*.

- ▸ The orange orientation lines (1) show the direction of travel of the vehicle. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines appear in the parking space ⇨ *fig. 148*. Use the markings (2) to help you estimate the distance to an obstacle. Each marking represents approximately 3 ft (1 m). The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear.
- ▸ While driving in reverse gear, adjust the steering wheel angle to fit the parking space using the orange orientation lines for assistance ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 119*, ⇨ (!) *in General information on page 119*. (3) represents the rear bumper. You should stop reversing at the latest when the red orientation line (4) borders an object ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 116*.

Parallel parking

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

This view may be used when parallel parking along the side of a street.



Fig. 150 Infotainment: blue surfaces aligned in the parking space

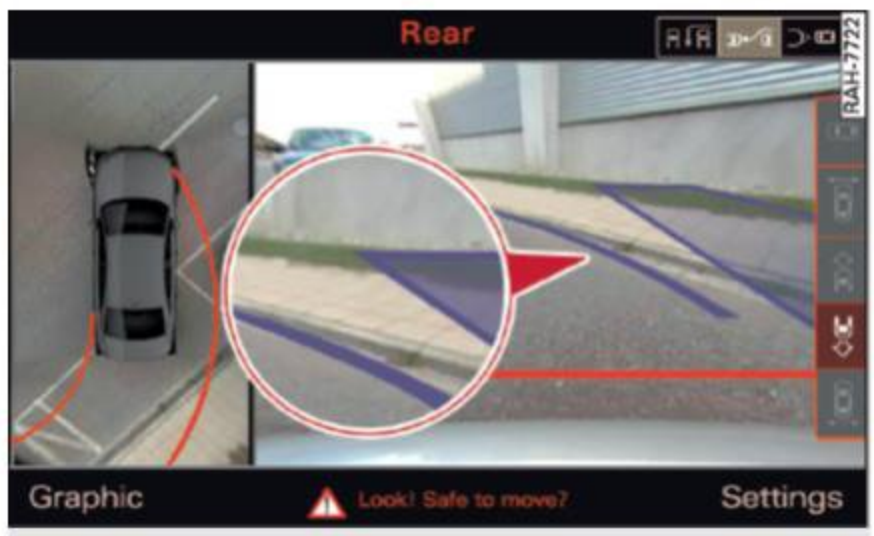


Fig. 151 Infotainment: contact of the blue curved line with the curb

Parking on the right is described here. It is identical when parking on the left.

If there is an obstacle next to the parking space (such as a wall), refer to Information for parking next to obstacles ⇨ *page 118*.

- ▸ Activate the turn signal.
- ▸ Position your vehicle next to a parked vehicle in front of the desired parking space. The distance to this vehicle should be approximately 3 ft. (1 m).

- ▸ Turn the Infotainment system on and shift into reverse gear. The parking system is turned on and the **Cross parking** view is displayed.
- ▸ Press the control button on the Infotainment unit ① ⇨ *page 118, fig. 138*. The **Parallel parking** view is displayed.
- ▸ Back up and align your vehicle so the blue area ② borders on the rear end of the vehicle behind you or on the parking space line ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 119*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 119*. The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear. The long side of the blue area should be on the curb. The entire blue area must fit into the parking space.
- ▸ With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel to the right as far as it will go.
- ▸ Back into the parking space until the blue curve ⇨ *fig. 151* touches the curb ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 119*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 119*. Stop the vehicle.
- ▸ With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel to the left as far as it will go.
- ▸ Continue to back into the parking space until the vehicle is parked parallel to the curb ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 119*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 119*. ③ represents the rear bumper. At the very latest, stop the vehicle when the red orientation line ④ borders an object. Keep an eye on the front of your vehicle while doing this.

Parking next to obstacles

If there is an obstacle (such as a wall) next to the parking space, position the vehicle so there is more space on that side. Position the long side of the blue area so that there is sufficient space from the object. The area must not be on the obstacle. You will also need to start turning the steering wheel earlier. The blue curve ⇨ *page 118, fig. 139* must **not** touch the obstacle, but rather there should be enough distance.

Tips

The left or right orientation lines and surfaces will be displayed, depending on the turn signal being used.

Trailer mode

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras and trailer hitch

This view assists you in positioning the vehicle in front of a trailer.

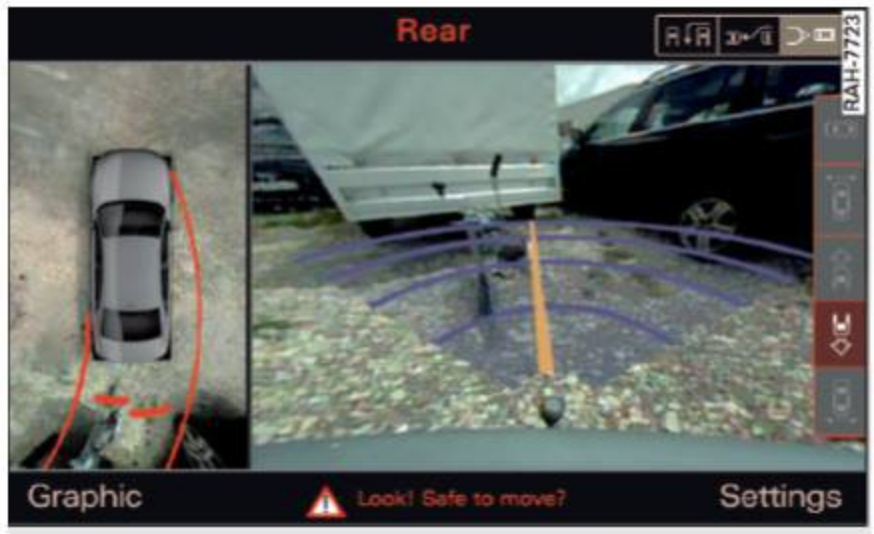


Fig. 152 Infotainment system: rear mode

Requirement: the trailer mode must be selected ⇨ *page 121, Rear*.

- ▸ Now you can position your vehicle in front of the trailer ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 119*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 119*. The orange orientation line indicates the expected path toward the trailer hitch. Use the blue lines to help you estimate the distance to the trailer hitch.

Setting the mode

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

- ▸ Select: CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Driver assist** > **Parking aid** > **Change to front/rear** > **Auto** or **Manual**.

Auto - This view behind the vehicle (**Rear** mode) is displayed automatically when you shift into reverse. This view in front of the vehicle (**Front** mode) is displayed automatically when you shift into the forward gears.

Manual - When you switch the system on, the view behind the vehicle (**Rear** mode) is always displayed and it does not switch to the **Front** mode when a forward gear is selected.

Adjusting the display and the warning tones

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/rearview camera/peripheral camera

The display and warning tones can be adjusted in the Infotainment.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Driver assist** > **Parking aid**.

Display

On* - An optical display is shown for the parking system plus, a rearview camera image is shown for the rearview camera*.

Off - When the parking system is switched off, only audible signals are given.

Signal tones

Front volume - volume for the front area

Rear volume - volume for the rear area

Front frequency - frequency for the front area

Rear frequency - frequency for the rear area

Entertainment volume - when the parking system is turned on, the volume of the audio/video source is lowered.

The newly selected level is demonstrated briefly by the sound generator.

Tips

– The warning tones can also be adjusted directly by the visual display or the picture from the camera. Simply press the **Settings** control button.
– Changed settings are activated when the parking system is switched on again.
– The settings for volume and frequency are automatically saved and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Error messages

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/rearview camera/peripheral camera

There is an error in the system if the LED in the P button is blinking and you hear a continuous alarm for a few seconds after switching on the parking system or when the parking system is already activated. If the error is not corrected before you switch off the ignition, the LED in the P button will blink the next time you switch on the parking system by shifting into reverse.

Parking system plus*

If a sensor is faulty, the P symbol will appear in front of/behind the vehicle in the Infotainment display. If a rear sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas Ⓐ and Ⓑ are displayed ⇨ *page 115, fig. 130*. If a front sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas Ⓒ and Ⓓ are displayed. There is also a system malfunction if all segments around the vehicle are red or if no segments are displayed.

Peripheral cameras*

There is a system malfunction if the symbol appears and the corresponding display area is shown in blue. The camera is not working in this area.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Trailer hitch

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/rearview camera/peripheral cameras and trailer hitch

For vehicles using the trailer socket, the parking system rear sensors are not activated when you shift into reverse gear or when you press the P button. This results in the following restrictions.

Parking system plus*

There is no distance warning for the rear. The front sensors remain activated. The visual display switches to trailer mode.

Rearview camera*/Peripheral cameras*

There is no distance warning for the rear. The front sensors remain activated. The visual display switches to trailer mode. The rearview camera image will not show the orientation lines and the blue surfaces. ▶

Tips

Trailer hitches that are not installed at the factory may cause the parking system to malfunction or they may restrict its function.

Intelligent Technology

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)

Description

The ESC increases driving safety. It reduces the risk of slipping and improves driving stability. ESC detects critical situations such as when the vehicle is oversteering and understeering or the wheels are spinning. The vehicle is stabilized by applying the brakes or reducing engine torque. When ESC engages, the  indicator light blinks in the instrument cluster.

The following systems are integrated in the ESC:

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when braking. The vehicle can still be steered even during hard braking. Apply steady pressure to the brake pedal. Do not pump the pedal. A pulsing in the brake pedal indicates that the system is acting to stabilize the vehicle.

Brake assist system

The brake assist system can decrease braking distance. It increases braking power when the driver presses the brake pedal quickly in emergency situations. You must press and hold the brake pedal until the dangerous situation is over. In vehicles with adaptive cruise control*, the brake assist system is more sensitive if the distance detected to the vehicle driving ahead is too small. On vehicles with activated and functioning night vision assist*, the brake assist system can respond more sensitively if there is a warning.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

ASR reduces engine power when the drive wheels begin spinning and adapts the force to the road conditions. This makes it easier to start, accelerate and drive up hills.

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

EDL applies the brakes to a wheel that starts spinning and transfers the drive power to the other driving wheels. This function is not available at higher speeds.

In extreme cases, EDL automatically switches off to keep the brake on the braked wheel from overheating. The vehicle is still working correctly. EDL will switch on again automatically when conditions have returned to normal.

Steering recommendation

The ESC helps to stabilize the vehicle by changing the steering torque.

In vehicles with dynamic steering*, ESC also helps to stabilize the steering in critical situations.

Selective wheel torque control

Selective wheel torque control is used when driving on curves.

The front wheel on the inside of the curve or both wheels on the inside of the curve are braked selectively as needed. This allows more precise driving in curves. The applicable system may not activate when driving in wet or snowy conditions.

Automatic post-collision braking system

The “automatic post-collision braking system” can help to reduce the risk of sliding and of additional collisions after an accident. If the airbag control module detects a collision above a certain vehicle speed, the vehicle is braked by the ESC.

The vehicle does not brake automatically if:

– the driver presses the accelerator pedal, or
– the braking force generated by the pressed brake pedal is greater than the braking force that would be initiated by the system, or
– the ESC, the brake system or the vehicle electrical system are not functioning.

WARNING

– The ESC and its integrated systems cannot overcome the limits imposed by natural physical laws. This is especially important on slippery or wet roads. If the systems begin acting to stabilize your vehicle, you should immediately alter your speed to match the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt ▶

you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
– Please note the risk of a collision increases when driving fast, especially through curves and on slippery or wet roads, and when driving too close to objects ahead. The ESC and its integrated systems cannot always prevent collisions - there is still a risk of accidents!
– Press the accelerator pedal carefully when accelerating on even, slippery surfaces such as ice and snow. The drive wheels can spin even when these control systems are installed and this can affect driving stability and increase the risk of a collision.

Tips

– The ABS and ASR only function correctly when all four wheels have a similar wear condition. Different tire sizes can lead to a reduction in engine power.
– You may hear noises when the systems described are working.

Switching on and off

ESC turns on automatically when you start the engine.

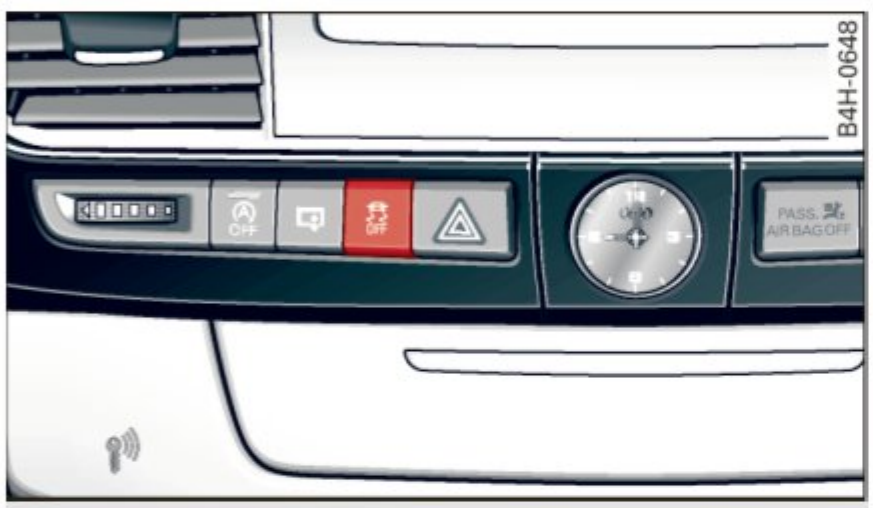


Fig. 153 Center console with ESC OFF button

The following examples are unusual situations where it may make sense to switch sport mode on in order to allow the wheels to spin:

– Rocking the vehicle to free it when it is stuck
– Driving in deep snow or on loose ground
– Driving with snow chains

ESC levels

	Sport mode on	Sport mode off
Behavior	The ESC and ASR stabilization functions are limited ⇨ ⚠.	The full stabilization function of the ESC and ASR is available again.
Operation	Press the button.	Press the button again.
Indicator lights	turns on.	turns off.
Messages	**Stabilization control (ESC): Off. Warning! Reduced stability**	**Stabilization control (ESC): On**

WARNING

Only switch sport mode on when your driving abilities and the traffic situation permit, because there is a risk of sliding.
– The stabilization function is limited when sport mode is switched on. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve, especially on slick or slippery road surfaces.

Tips

Sport mode cannot be switched on if the cruise control system* or adaptive cruise control* is switched on.

Brakes

New brake pads

New brake pads do not achieve their full braking effect during the first 250 mi (400 km). They must be “broken in” first. The break-in period can be considerably longer for vehicles with ceramic brake rotors*. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by pressing firmly on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking during the break-in period.

Wear

Brake pad wear depends largely on the way the vehicle is driven and on operating conditions. This is especially true if you are driving frequently in the city and on curves or with a sporty driving style.

Operating noise

Noises may occur when braking depending on the speed, braking force and outside conditions such as temperature and humidity.

Noises may become more apparent at lower speeds due to the nature of the materials in the ceramic brake rotors*.

Effect of water and road salt

In certain situations, for example after driving through water, in heavy rain, after overnight condensation or after washing your car, the braking effect can be reduced by moisture or ice on the brake rotors and brake pads. The brakes must be “dried” first with a few careful brake applications.

At higher speeds and with the windshield wipers turned on, the brake pads press against the brake rotors for a short amount of time. This action, which is not felt by the driver, happens at regular intervals and ensures a better reaction time for the brakes in wet weather.

The braking effect can also be reduced if you are driving on salted roads and you do not apply the brakes for long periods of time. The layer of salt on the brake rotors and pads must be worn off first when the brakes are applied.

Due to its surface, the ceramic brake rotor* absorbs moisture in certain situations. Therefore, there will temporarily be less braking force than when the brakes are dry. You can compensate for this by pressing the brake pedal harder.

Corrosion

Leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, low mileage and avoiding heavy braking can contribute to corrosion on the brake rotors and to dirty brake pads.

If you usually avoid heavy braking or if there is corrosion present, occasional heavy braking at high speeds is recommended to clean the brake rotors and pads ⇨ ⚠.

Brake system malfunction

if you notice that the brake pedal travel has *suddenly* increased, then a brake circuit in the dual-circuit brake system may have malfunctioned. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the problem corrected. On the way there, drive with reduced speed and keep in mind that you will need a longer distance to stop and you will need to press the brake pedal harder.

Low brake fluid level

When the brake fluid level is low, malfunctions in the brake system may occur. The brake fluid level is electronically monitored.

Brake booster

The brake booster amplifies the pressure you apply to the brake pedal. It only works when the engine is running.

⚠ WARNING

- Only apply the brakes for the purpose of cleaning the brake system when road and traffic conditions permit. You must not endanger other road users. This increases the risk of an accident.
- Never let the vehicle roll while the engine is stopped because this increases the risk of an accident.

▶

– New brake pads do not achieve their full braking effect during the first 250 mi (400 km). They must be "broken in" first. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by pressing firmly on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking during the break-in period.
– Certain weather and operating conditions such as driving through water, driving in heavy rain or driving after washing your vehicle can impair the effectiveness of the brakes. In the winter, ice may build up on the brake pads, rotors and drums. Check these components by braking carefully. Applying the brakes carefully several times dries the brakes and removes ice build-up.
– The efficiency of the brakes can also be impaired by driving for long stretches on roads covered with salt without using the brakes. You can remove salt deposits from the brake rotors and pads by carefully applying the brakes several times.
– If the front spoiler is damaged or you install another spoiler, make sure the front wheel brakes are ventilated properly. Otherwise, the brake system could overheat, which reduces their effectiveness.
– Failure of a brake circuit impairs braking performance, which increases braking distance. Avoid driving the vehicle and have it towed it to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– If the brake booster is not working, you will have to press much harder on the brake pedal to compensate for the lack of the booster.

Note

– Never let the brakes "rub" by pressing the pedal lightly when braking is not actually necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and increases braking distance and causes wear.
– Before driving downhill a long distance on a steep hill, decrease your speed and select a lower gear. This makes use of the engine braking effect and relieves the brakes. If you need to brake additionally, brake in intervals and not continuously.

Tips

– If the brake booster is not working, you must press the brake pedal with much more force than normal.
– If you retrofit your vehicle with a front spoiler, wheel covers or similar items, make sure that the air flow to the front wheels is not interrupted. Otherwise the brake system can become too hot.

Electromechanical steering, dynamic steering

The electromechanical steering supports the driver's steering movements.

Power steering adapts *electronically* based on the vehicle speed.

Indicator lights and messages

Do not drive vehicle: Steering defective

If this indicator light turns on and stays on and this message appears, the power steering may have failed.

Stop the vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible. Do **not** continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering: System fault You can continue driving

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, the steering wheel may be more difficult to move or more sensitive than usual. The steering wheel may also be at an angle when driving straight.

Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

Dynamic steering: Initializing

If the indicator light is blinking and this message appears, dynamic steering* is being initialized. ▶

The steering wheel will be easy to move after starting the engine. Re-initialization might be necessary if the steering wheel was moved hard to the left and right while the vehicle was not moving. The display turns off if the initialization was successful.

Tips

- If the or indicator light only stays on for a short time, you may continue driving.
- The dynamic steering stability systems ⇨ *page 126* are not available in the event of a system malfunction.
- For additional information on dynamic steering, refer to ⇨ *page 110*.

All wheel drive (quattro)

In all wheel drive, all four wheels are powered.

General information

In all wheel drive, the driving power is divided between all four wheels. This happens automatically depending on your driving behavior as well as the current road conditions. Also see ⇨ *page 126, Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)*. With the sport differential*, power distribution to the rear wheels is variable and can be adjusted using the drive select ⇨ *page 110*.

The all wheel drive concept is designed for high engine power. Your vehicle is exceptionally powerful and has excellent driving characteristics both under normal driving conditions and on snow and ice. Always read and follow safety precautions ⇨ ⚠.

Winter tires

By using all wheel drive, your vehicle has good forward motion with standard tires in winter conditions. However, in winter we recommend using winter or all season tires on all four wheels, because this will improve the braking effect.

Snow chains

If there are snow chain laws, snow chains must also be used on vehicles with all wheel drive ⇨ *page 298, Snow chains*.

Replacing tires

For vehicles with all wheel drive, only wheels with the same rolling circumference should be used. Avoid using tires with different tread depths ⇨ *page 290, New tires or wheels*.

Offroad vehicle?

Your Audi is not an offroad vehicle - there is not enough ground clearance. For this reason, avoid difficult terrain.

WARNING

- Also, in vehicles with all wheel drive, adapt your driving style to the current road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- The braking ability of your vehicle is limited to the traction of the wheels. In this way, it is not different from a two wheel drive vehicle. Do not be tempted to accelerate to a high speed when the road is slippery, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Note that on wet streets, the front wheels can “hydroplane” if driving at speeds that are too high. Unlike front wheel drive vehicles, the engine does not rev higher suddenly when the vehicle begins hydroplaning. For this reason, adapt your speed to the road conditions to reduce the risk of an accident.

Energy management

The starting ability is optimized

The energy management system manages the electrical energy distribution and optimizes the availability of electrical energy for starting the engine.

When a vehicle with a conventional energy system is not driven for a long time, the vehicle battery is drained by equipment (for example, the immobilizer). In certain circumstances, there could may not be enough energy to start the engine. ▶

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent energy management system for distributing electricity. This significantly improves the starting ability and increases the vehicle battery life.

The energy management system Is made up of **battery diagnosis**, **idling current management**, and **dynamic energy management**.

Battery diagnosis

The battery diagnosis determines the vehicle battery charge level. The sensors determine the battery voltage, the battery current, and the battery temperature. The current charge level and the performance of the vehicle battery are determined based on this.

Idling current management

The idling current management decreases the energy used while parked. With the engine switched off, it manages the energy distribution to the different electrical components. Data from the battery diagnosis is taken into account for this.

Depending on the vehicle battery charge level, electrical equipment is switched off one item after the other to prevent the vehicle battery from draining and to maintain the starting ability.

Dynamic energy management

While driving, dynamic energy management distributes the appropriate amount of energy to the electrical equipment. It controls the battery charge level so that the amount of energy is not greater than the amount being generated in order to maintain an optimal vehicle battery charge level.

Tips

- Energy management cannot overcome the laws of physics. Note that the charge level and length of the vehicle battery life are limited.
- When the starting ability is endangered, the indicator light turns on ⇨ *page 21*.

What you should know

Maintaining the starting ability is the highest priority.

A lot of stress is placed on the vehicle battery when driving short distances, during city driving, and at cold times of the year. A lot of energy is used but little is generated. It is also critical when the engine is not running but electrical equipment is switched on. In this case, energy is used but none is generated.

In situations like this, energy management will actively regulate the distribution of energy.

Long periods without use

If you do not drive your vehicle for several days or weeks, electrical equipment is gradually scaled back or switched off. This reduces energy use and ensures the vehicle will be able to start after long periods of time. Some convenience functions, such as interior lighting or power seat adjustment, may not be available under certain circumstances. These convenience functions will be available again once you switch the ignition on and start the engine.

With the engine switched off

The vehicle battery will drain if you use Infotainment functions such as listening to the radio while the engine is switched off.

If the starting ability is impaired by the energy use, the following message will appear in the Infotainment system display:

Please start the engine, otherwise the system will turn off shortly.

This message indicates that the system will switch off automatically after 3 minutes. If you would like to continue using the functions, you must start the engine.

With the engine running

Although electrical energy is generated while driving, the vehicle battery can drain. This can happen if little energy is generated but much is used, and the charge level of the vehicle battery is not optimal. ▶

To restore the balance of energy, components that require large amounts of energy are temporarily scaled back or switched off. Heating systems in particular require a great deal of energy. If you notice, for example, that the seat heating* or rear window defogger is not working, then it has been temporarily reduced or switched off. These systems are available again as soon as the energy supply has been restored.

In addition, you may notice that the idle speed has slightly increased. That is normal and no cause for concern. By increasing the idling speed, the additional required energy will be generated and the vehicle battery will be charged.

Notice about data recorded by the Event Data Recorder and vehicle control modules

Event Data Recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Some state laws restrict the retrieval or downloading of data stored by EDRs installed in a vehicle for the express purpose of retrieving data after an accident or crash event without the owner's consent.

Audi will not access the EDR and/or similar data or give it to others -

- unless the vehicle owner (or lessee if the vehicle has been leased) agrees; or
- upon the official request by the police; or
- upon the order of a court of law or a government agency; or
- for the defense of a lawsuit through the judicial discovery process.
- Audi may also use the data for research about vehicle operation and safety performance or provide the data to a third party for research purposes without identifying the specific vehicle or information about the identity of its owner or lessee and only after the recorded vehicle data has been accessed.

Vehicle control modules

Your vehicle is also equipped with a number of electronic control modules for various vehicle systems, such as engine management, emission control, airbags, and safety belts.

These electronic control modules record data during normal vehicle operation that may be needed by trained technicians for diagnostic and repair purposes. The recording capability of these modules is limited to data (no sound is recorded). Only a small amount of data is actually recorded over a very limited period of time, or stored when a system fault is detected by a control module. Some of the data stored may relate to ▶

vehicle speed, direction, or braking, as well as restraint system use and performance in the event of a crash. Stored data can also only be read and downloaded with special equipment that is directly connected to the vehicle.

Tips

Your vehicle may be equipped with Audi connect. Your use of certain Audi connect features requires wireless services that are provided by a third party wireless telecommunications provider. For details regarding how information obtained through Audi connect is collected, processed, transmitted, used, and shared, please see your contract with the wireless telecommunications provider and the "About Audi connect" tab in your vehicle's MMI: MENU button > **Audi connect** > **About Audi connect**.

4H0012721BD

Multi Media Interface

Traffic safety information

Audi recommends performing certain Infotainment system functions, such as entering a destination, only when the vehicle is stationary. Always be prepared to stop operating the Infotainment system in the interest of your safety and the safety of other road users.

WARNING

Only use the Infotainment system when traffic conditions permit and always in a way that allows you to maintain complete control over your vehicle.

Introduction

The Multi Media Interface, or MMI for short, combines various systems for communication, navigation and entertainment in your Audi. You can operate the MMI using the MMI control panel, the multifunction steering wheel or the voice recognition system.*



Fig. 154 MMI control panel with MMI touch control pad

MMI control panel overview

① MMI touch control pad 136
② Buttons for opening menus directly 135
③ On/Off knob 134
④ Arrow buttons 135
⑤ Control buttons 135
⑥ Control knob 135
⑦ BACK button 135

Switching the MMI on and off

The MMI switches on and off automatically with the ignition. It can also be switched on or off manually.

– **Switching on manually**: press the On/Off knob ③ briefly ⇨ *page 134, fig. 154*. **Or**: press the MENU button or one of the buttons to directly open the menus ② ⇨ *page 135, fig. 155*.

When the system is switched on, the last menu that was selected is displayed and the last audio source that was selected begins playing.

– **Switching off manually**: press and hold the On/Off knob ③ ⇨ *page 134, fig. 154* until the MMI switches off. If the MMI has been switched off manually, it does *not* switch on again automatically the next time the ignition is switched on.

The MMI can still be operated for approximately ten minutes after switching the ignition off. If you do not press any buttons or the control knob on the MMI control panel within this time, the MMI switches off automatically.

Tips

– The MMI switches off automatically if the engine is not running and the vehicle battery is low.
– There may be delays when extending or retracting the display.

Adjusting the volume

The volume of an audio source or a system message (for example, from the voice recognition system) can be adjusted directly while the sound is playing using the On/Off knob.

– **Increasing or decreasing the volume**: turn the On/Off knob ③ ⇨ *page 134, fig. 154* to the right or left.
– **Muting or pausing**: press the On/Off knob ③ ⇨ *page 134, fig. 154* briefly. **Or**: turn the On/Off knob to the left. ▶

– **Unmuting or resuming**: press the On/Off knob ③ ⇨ *page 134, fig. 154* briefly. **Or**: turn the On/Off knob to the right.

Tips

Volumes that are too high or too low are automatically adjusted to a set level when the MMI is switched on.

Infotainment display

The Infotainment display switches on automatically when the MMI folds out. The MMI folds in automatically when it is switched off.

Adjusting the Infotainment display brightness: see ⇨ *page 206*.

Tips

– If the vehicle has a cell phone prep*, the Infotainment system display will automatically extend whenever there is an incoming phone call.
– Use the *arrow buttons* to switch stations, for example, when listening to the radio, after the display has retracted in.

MMI operation



Fig. 155 Operating

Selecting and confirming a function

▸ Ⓐ **Selecting a function**: turn the control knob to the desired function.
▸ Ⓑ **Confirming a selection**: press the control knob.

Accessing functions in a corner of the display

▸ Press the control button Ⓒ ⇨ *fig. 155* in the corresponding corner of the display. For example, the upper right control button corresponds to the upper right corner of the display.

Opening the main menu

▸ Press the MENU button ② ⇨ *page 134, fig. 154* The MMI menus (such as **Radio**) are displayed.

Opening a menu directly

▸ Press the respective button ② ⇨ *page 134, fig. 154* for the desired menu (such as RADIO or MEDIA).

Returning to functions at higher levels

▸ Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 134, fig. 154*.

Additional functions:

Selecting the previous/next function (for example, a radio station/track): briefly press the On/Off knob ③ ⇨ *page 134, fig. 154* toward the left ⏮ or right ⏭.

Fast forwarding/rewinding (for example songs): press and hold the On/Off knob ③ ⇨ *page 134, fig. 154* toward the left ⏮ or right ⏭.

MMI touch

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch control pad

The MMI touch allows you to enter data on the MMI touch control pad using handwriting recognition.



Fig. 156 Entering a navigation destination



Fig. 157 Saving a radio station

Entering numbers, letters, and symbols

Requirement: it must be possible to enter text or numbers.

- Write letters, numbers or characters on the MMI touch control pad with your finger. Characters that are recognized are shown in the Infotainment display (1) ⇨ *fig. 156* and may be confirmed with a prompt.
- **Selecting a different symbol**: turn the control knob to the left/right (2) ⇨ *fig. 156* and press the control knob. The selected symbol appears in the input field (3) ⇨ *fig. 156*.
- **Entering spaces**: move your finger across the MMI touch control pad from left to right.
- **Deleting characters**: move your finger across the MMI touch control pad from right to left.
- **Ending the input/selecting directly from the selection list**: tap the MMI touch control pad briefly. **Or**: press the control knob.

Searching for a contact in the phone book

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 150*.

- **Jumping to a specific initial letter in the list**: write the desired letter using your finger on the MMI touch control pad.
- **Narrowing the search results**: draw additional letters on the MMI touch control pad with your finger.
- **Ending the input/selecting directly from the selection list**: tap the MMI touch control pad briefly. **Or**: press the control knob.

Moving the map

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 170*.

- **Moving the crosshairs on the map**: press the control knob. The crosshairs are shown on the map. To move the crosshairs, move your finger in the desired direction on the MMI touch control pad. **Or**: place your finger on the respective edge of the MMI touch control pad.

Adjusting the sound focus

Requirement: the balance/fader function must be selected ⇨ *page 204*.

- **Moving the crosshairs for sound focus**: move your finger in the desired direction on the MMI touch control pad.

Saving/selecting a radio station

Requirement: the Radio menu must be open ⇨ *page 177*.

- **Storing the radio station currently set**: hold your finger on a number (1 to 6) on the MMI touch control panel until you hear a signal tone. The radio station will be stored on the selected number in the list.
- **Selecting a stored radio station**: tap a number (1 to 6) on the MMI touch control pad briefly. The preset buttons (1-6) appear in the Infotainment display (1) ⇨ *fig. 157*.
- **Moving a stored radio station**: move your finger on the MMI touch control pad to the left/right until the preset buttons (1-6) appear in the Infotainment display (1).

Browsing/selecting album covers

Requirement: the Media menu must be open and a source must be selected ⇨ *page 189*.

– **Browsing through album covers**: move your finger across the MMI touch control pad from left to right. **Or**: place your finger on the respective **arrow** edge of the MMI touch control pad.
– **Selecting an album cover**: tap the MMI touch control pad briefly.

Using the DVD main menu

Requirement: a DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 181*.

– **Selecting a menu item**: move your finger up/down or left/right on the MMI touch control pad. **Or**: place your finger on the respective **arrow** edge of the MMI touch control pad.
– **Confirming a selection**: tap the MMI touch control pad briefly.

Tips

The volume of the prompts for the MMI touch can be adjusted separately ⇨ *page 205*.

Letter/number speller

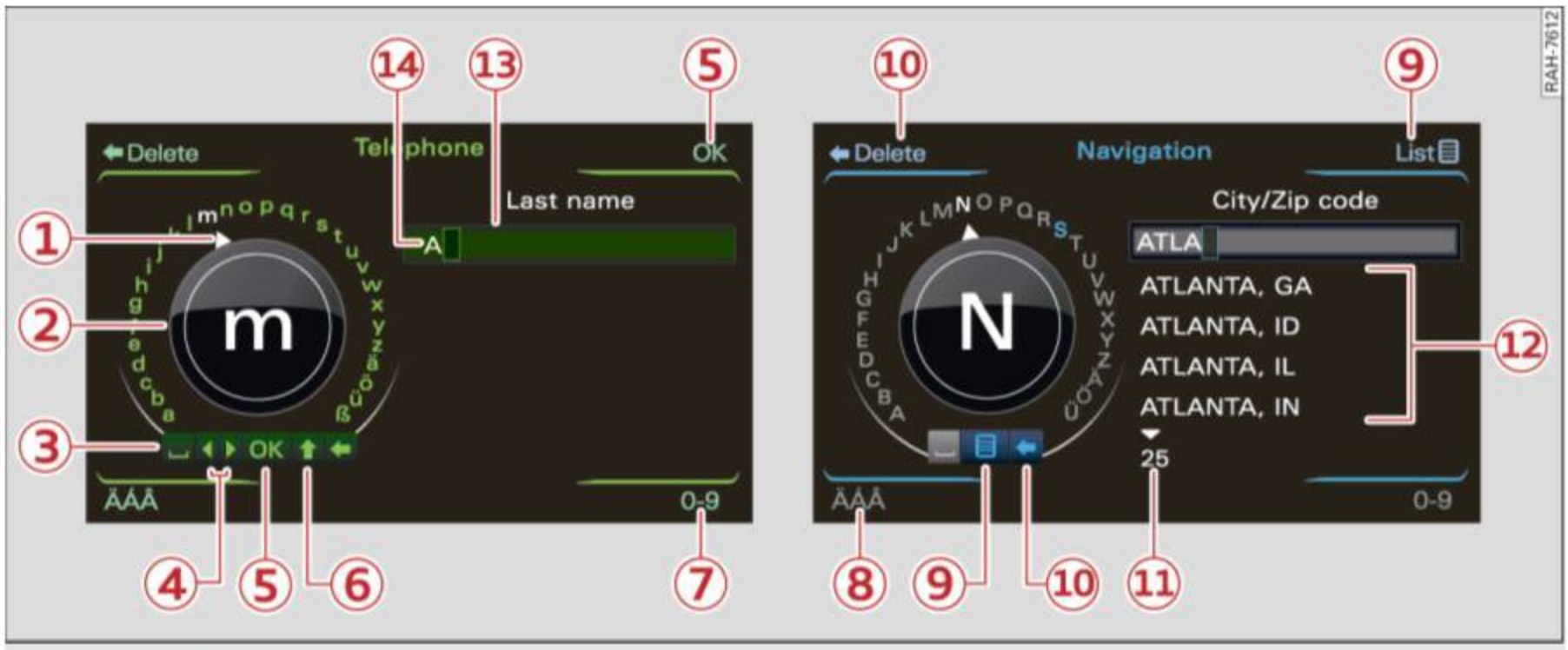


Fig. 158 Speller

– **Entering characters**: turn the control knob with the selection arrow (1) ⇨ *fig. 158* to the desired character. Your selection is shown enlarged in the input ring (2). Press the control knob to confirm the character. Your input is displayed in the input field (13). When you have entered all the characters, select and confirm **OK** (5).
– **Deleting characters**: turn the control knob with the selection arrow to ⬅ (10) and press the control knob. To delete all characters in the input field, press and hold the control knob on ⬅ until all characters in the input field are deleted.
– **Entering special characters**: press the **0-9** control button (7) ⇨ *fig. 158* and enter the desired special character (for example, a hyphen or period) using the number speller.
– **Input assistance**: in some cases, such as in the Navigation* menu, the selection of letters may be limited to available entries. This means that you can only select letters if they appear in that position in a possible word.

Overview of symbols in the speller

The symbols in the letter/number speller are explained in the following table: ▶

	Symbol/Description	Explanation
①	Selection arrow	The selected character is highlighted with a white background and appears large in the input ring.
②	Input ring	The character selected with the selection arrow is displayed large.
③	⎵	Adds a space in the input field.
④	◀▶	The cursor moves forward or back in the input field.
⑤	OK	The input is confirmed.
⑥	⬆	Deletes the character to the left of the cursor.
⑦	0-9/A-Z	Switches from letter to number input or from number to letter input.
⑧	ÄÁÂ	Displays language-specific special characters.
⑨	List	A list of suggestions is displayed.
⑩	⬅ Delete	Deletes the character to the left of the cursor.
⑪	Number of entries	The number of list entries that was found is displayed.
⑫	List with suggestions	For example, when entering a destination, major cities are listed first and then additional cities in alphabetical order.
⑬	Input field	The current input is displayed.
⑭	Cursor	The current editing position is marked.

Menus and symbols

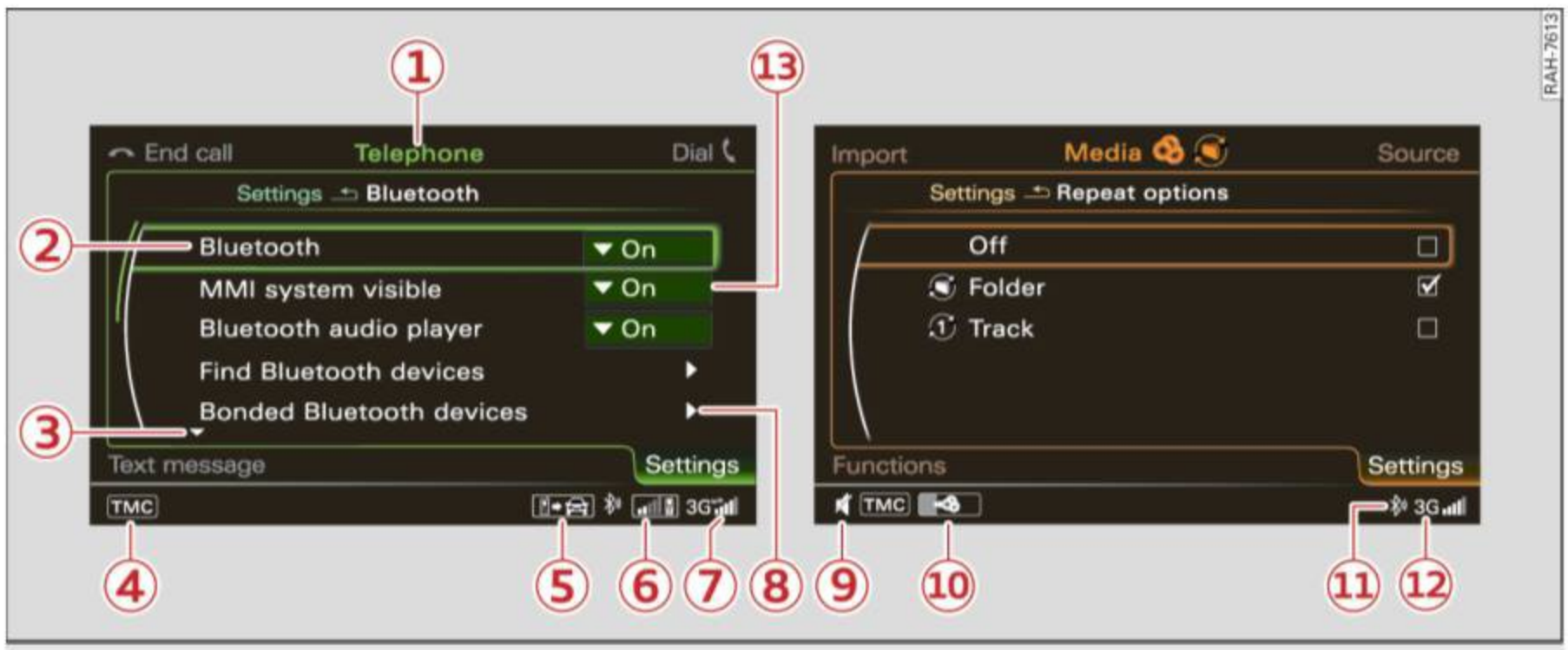


Fig. 159 Menus and symbols

	Symbol/Description	Explanation
①	Title line	Selected menu (such as **Telephone**)
②	Selected text	Selected function
③	▲▼	Additional functions for selection

	Symbol/Description	Explanation
④	TMC	Reception of TMC traffic reports
⑤	Importing process*	Import or update the contacts in the directory or the call lists
⑥	Cell phone signal strength bars*	Cell phone network signal strength for a connected cell phone
⑦	Data connection signal strength bars*	Signal strength for the active data connection, or **PIN**: enter the PIN (SIM) **PUK**: enter the PUK **SIM**: insert the Audi SIM card
⑧	Arrow	Submenu with additional functions that are accessed by pressing the control knob
⑨	Mute	The audio source is muted ⇨ *page 134*
⑩	Importing process	Importing audio/video files to the Jukebox ⇨ *page 182*
⑪	Bluetooth	Bluetooth device connected
⑫	2G/3G*	Network coverage for the active data connection **2G**: GSM network **3G**: UMTS network
⑬	Selection list	Settings for the selected function that are accessed by pressing the control knob

4H0012721BD



Fig. 160 Command overview

Voice recognition system

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

You can operate many Infotainment functions conveniently by speaking.

Requirement: the ignition and the MMI must be switched on ⇨ *page 134*, there must be no phone call in progress and the parking system must not be active.

- **Switching on**: briefly press the button ② ⇨ *page 11, fig. 7* on the multifunction steering wheel* and say the desired command after the **Beep**.
- **Switching off**: press and hold the button. **Or**: press any button on the MMI control panel.
- **Canceling**: press the button and say a new command. **Or**: say the command **Cancel**.

Input assistance

The system guides you through the input with visual and audio feedback.

– **Visual input assistance**: after turning on voice recognition, a display with a selection of possible commands appears in the Infotainment display. The command display can be turned on or off in the main menu using the **Setup MMI** control button.
– **Audio input assistance**: to have the possible commands read, turn the voice recognition system on and say **Help**.

For the system to understand you:

Speak clearly and distinctly at a normal volume. Speak louder when driving faster.

Emphasize the words in the commands evenly and do not leave long pauses.

Do not speak a command when the voice recognition system is making an announcement.

Close the doors, the windows and the sunroof* to reduce background noise. Make sure that passengers are not speaking when you are giving a voice command.

Do not direct the air vents toward the hands free microphone, which is on the roof headliner near the front interior lights.

Only use the system from the driver's seat because the hands free microphone is directed toward that seat.

Additional settings

Additional settings, such as **individual speech training** based on your voice, the **Command display** or the **prompt volume**, can be adjusted in the main menu using the **Setup MMI** control button ⇨ *page 205*.

WARNING

– Direct your full attention to driving. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the functions in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.
– Do not use the voice recognition system in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. It may take longer to dial the number or the system may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.

Tips

– The dialog pauses when there is an incoming phone call and will continue if you ignore the call. The dialog ends if you answer the call.
– You can select an item in the list using either the voice recognition system or the control knob.

Command overview information

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

The following overviews describe the commands that can be used to operate the MMI using the voice recognition system.

Alternative commands are separated by a "|", for example, say: **Telephone** | (or) **Navigation** | (or) **Radio**. ▶

Sequences of commands used to perform an action are identified with a ">", for example say: **Enter destination** > (then) **Enter country**.

The majority shown are main commands. This system also recognizes synonyms in certain cases. For example, for **business address**, you can also say **business**, **work**, **office** or **job**.

Global commands

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

You can always use the global commands, regardless of the menu selected.

Function	Say:
Opening a menu	**Telephone*** | **Directory*** | **Navigation*** | **Map*** | **Radio** | **Media** | **Info**
Having the possible commands read aloud	**Help** | **Help voice recognition** | **Help Telephone*** | **Help Navigation*** | **Help Map*** | **Help Radio** | **Help Media** | **Help Info**
Telephone functions*	**Call (XY)**, for example **Call John Smith** | **Enter number** | **Redial** | **Directory**
Navigation functions*	**Navigate to (XY)**, for example **Navigate to John Smith** | **Enter address** | **Cancel route guidance** | **Map**
Selecting an entry from a list	**Line (XY)**
Scrolling through a list	**Next page** | **Previous page**
Switching the voice recognition system off	**Cancel**

Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and telephone

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 146* and the **Telephone** menu must be open ⇨ *page 147*.

Function	Say:
Call contact from directory	**Call (XY)**, for example **Call John Smith**
Selecting a specific contact number	**Call (XY) business** | **private** | **land line** | **cell**, for example, **Call John Smith private**
Selecting a phone number with an address card open	**Call** | **Call business** | **Call private** | **Call landline** | **Call business mobile**
Show contact information	**Directory** | **Find contact** > *the desired contact when prompted*, such as **John Smith**
Personalizing a contact with a name tag	**Find contact** > *the desired contact when prompted*, such as **John Smith** > **Name contact** > *the personal name tag*, such as **Uncle John**
Dialing a phone number	**Enter number** > *After being prompted, say the telephone number in groups of individual numbers*, for example. **888 555 1212** > **Dial**

Function	Say:
Correcting the phone number that was entered	**Delete number** | **Correction**
Displaying call lists	**Dialed numbers** | **Received calls** | **Missed calls**
Calling the last number dialed	**Redial**
Listening to messages	**Call voice mail**

Tips

– You can assign up to 50 additional name tags for address cards.

– Name tags can only be stored using the voice recognition system.
– Name tags can only be deleted using the MMI control panel.

Navigation

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and navigation system

Requirement: the **Navigation** menu must be open ⇨ *page 165*.

You can say the following commands to enter a destination:

Function	Say:
Open navigation list	**Last destinations** | **Favorites**
Selecting the home address	**Home address**
Entering a destination	**Enter address** > *the name of the city, the street and the house number*, for example “Los Angeles, Main Street.”
Individual commands for entering a destination	**Country** | **City** | **Street** | **Street in vicinity** | **House number** | **Downtown**
Making a correction while entering a destination	**Correction**
Navigating to a contact	**Navigate to (XY)**, for example **Navigate to John Smith**
Navigating to a specific address for a contact	**Navigate to (XY) business address** | **private address**, such as **Navigate to John Smith business address**
Starting route guidance with an address card open	**Navigate** | **Navigate to private address** | **Navigate to business address**
Starting route guidance after entering a destination	**Start route guidance**
Canceling current route guidance	**Cancel route guidance**
The following points of interest can be entered directly as a destination	**Next Audi Dealer** | **Next ATM** | **Next gas station** | **Next diesel fuel station** | **Next parking lot** | **Next restaurant** | **Next accommodation** | **Next hospital** | **Next police station** | **Next coffee shop**
Changing the search area for point of interest entry	**Point of interest** > *the desired search area when prompted* > **Top categories** | **Immediate vicinity** | **Along the route** | **In vicinity of destination** | **In vicinity of stopover** | **In new city** | **Nationwide**
Entering a destination in the selected search area with guidance from the system	**Point of interest** > **Audi Service** | **Train station** | **Airport** | **Hotel** | **Hospital** | **Parking** | **Rest area** | **Restaurant** | **Gas station**

4H0012721BD

Function	Say:
Entering a point of interest directly in the selected search area	**Point of interest** > *point of interest and search area*, such as "Search gas station in immediate vicinity"
Selecting an online destination in the immediate vicinity directly	**Online destination (XY)**, such as "Online destination "Five star hotel""
Online search in the immediate vicinity/vicinity of the destination	**Online destinations** > **In immediate vicinity** | **In vicinity of destination** > *the desired online destination*, such as "Five star hotel" > **Line (XY)** | **Show on map** > **Start route guidance**
Online search in a new city	**Online destinations** > **In new city** | *the desired city* > *the desired online destination*, such as "Five star hotel" **Line (XY)** | **Show on map** > **Start route guidance**

You can say the following commands for more settings in Navigation:

Function	Say:
General map options	**Map** | **Day map** | **Night map** | **Route info off**
Map type	**2D** | **3D** | **Destination map** | **Overview map**
Map orientation	**Map orientation north** | **Map orientation in direction of travel** | **Map orientation automatic**
Changing the map view	**Zoom in** | **Zoom out**
Automatic map zoom	**Automatic zoom** | **Automatic zoom off**
Changing the map scale	**Scale (XY) meters/kilometers/yards/miles**
Showing the route list	**Route list**
Switching voice guidance on or off during active route guidance	**Voice guidance on** | **Voice guidance off**
Auto rerouting (traffic)	**Auto rerouting traffic on** | **Auto rerouting traffic off**
Route criteria	**Fast route** | **Mixed route** | **Short route**

Tips

– Destinations may have to be spelled when entered, depending on the country where you are located and which menu language you have selected.
– Refer to the notes in the chapter **About Audi connect** ⇨ *page 162*.

Info

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Requirement: the **Info** menu must be open.

Function	Say:
Accessing TMC traffic information	**Read traffic reports**

Radio

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Requirement: the **Radio** menu must be open ⇨ *page 177*. ▶

Function	Say:
Selecting the frequency band	**Set band** | **FM** | **AM** | **Sirius***
Selecting a station from the station list	**Station (XY)** | **Station list** > **Line (XY)**
Selecting a station from the presets list	**Presets** > **Channel (XY)** | **Line (XY)**
Setting the frequency	**Set frequency** > *the desired frequency*
Additional commands	**Read station list** | **Read presets** | **Next/previous station** | **Update station list** [a)]

a) Applies to the medium wave/long wave band

Media

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Requirement: the **Media** menu must be open
⇨ *page 189*.

Function	Say:
Selecting a source directly	**Jukebox** | **CD** | **SD card 1/2** | **Audi music interface*** | **Bluetooth** | **DVD** | **Wi-Fi** | **Next/previous medium**
Selecting an audio/video* file in the Jukebox	**Video (XY)** | **Artist (XY)** | **Album (XY)** | **Song (XY)** | **Genres (XY)**
Navigating between audio and video* files within a source	**Next/Previous track**
Navigating within a folder structure/list	**Folder up** | **Line (XY)**

Telephone

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

To make phone calls in your vehicle using the MMI, connect your cell phone to the MMI via Bluetooth.

Handsfree

With this connection, you use the handsfree system and operate telephone functions through the MMI. Phone calls are transmitted through the antenna on your cell phone.

WARNING

- Medical experts warn that cell phones can interfere with the function of pacemakers. Always maintain a minimum distance of 20 centimeters between the cell phone antenna and the pacemaker.
  - Do not carry the cell phone in a pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
  - Switch the cell phone off immediately if you suspect it may be interfering with the pacemaker.
- Do not use the voice recognition system ⇨ *page 141* in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. It may take longer to dial the number or the system may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.
- Switch your cell phone off in areas where there is a risk of an explosion. These locations are not always clearly marked. This may include gas stations, fuel and chemical storage facilities or transport vehicles, or locations where fuel vapors (such as propane or gasoline vapor in vehicles or buildings), chemicals or large quantities of dust particles (such as flour, sawdust or metal) may be present in the air. This also applies to all other locations where you would normally turn your vehicle engine off.
- The demands of traffic require your full attention. Read and follow the guidelines provided in ⇨ *page 134*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ! *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 160*.

Tips

The Bluetooth connection range is limited to inside the vehicle. It can also be affected by local conditions and interference with other devices.

Setup

Connecting a cell phone using Bluetooth

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

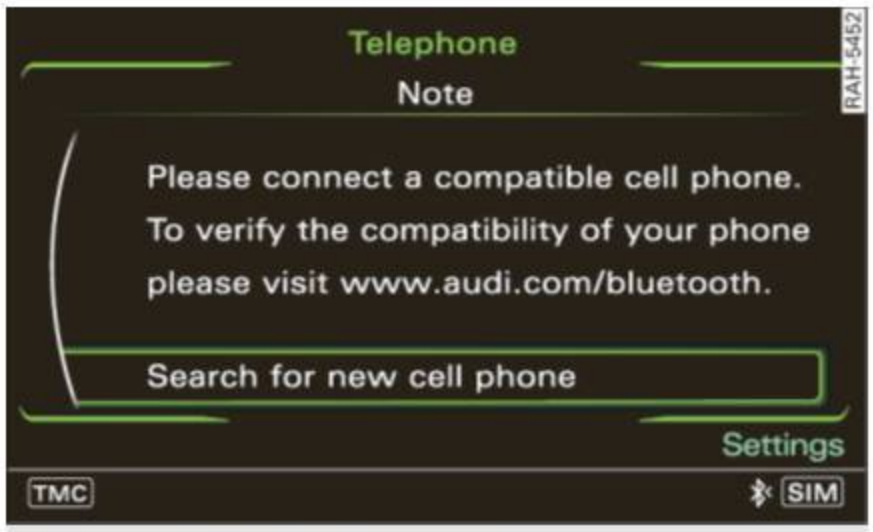


Fig. 161 Searching for cell phones

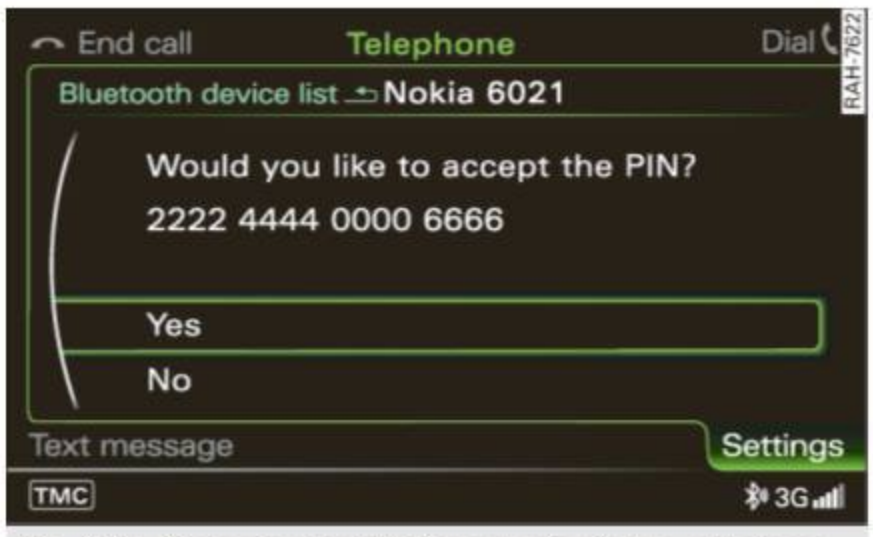


Fig. 162 Displaying the PIN for entering in the cell phone

Requirements

The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on.

The Bluetooth function and visibility of the MMI ⇨ *page 155* and cell phone must be switched on.

The MMI and the cell phone to be paired must not be actively connected to any other Bluetooth devices. ▶

Connecting a cell phone

- ▸ Select the TEL button > **Search for new cell phone** ⇨ *fig. 161*. The available Bluetooth devices are shown in the Infotainment system display. **Or**: search for the MMI using the Bluetooth device search on your cell phone.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired cell phone from the list of displayed Bluetooth devices.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Handsfree**. The MMI generates a PIN for the connection setup ⇨ *fig. 161*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Yes**.
- ▸ Enter the PIN for connecting on your cell phone. **Or**: if the PIN is already displayed on your cell phone, confirm it in the cell phone and in the MMI. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.

Pay attention to any additional system prompts displayed on your cell phone, for example if the system should connect automatically in the future. Depending on the cell phone, you may have to confirm downloading the directory separately.

After connecting successfully

After connecting successfully, the signal strength symbol ⑥ ⇨ *page 138, fig. 159* and the Bluetooth symbol ⑪ appear in the status line of the Infotainment display. In addition, the cell phone contacts are automatically loaded in the MMI directory. This process can take several minutes, depending on the number of contacts.

If all of the memory capacity is filled, you will be asked to replace the contacts from one cell phone when connecting another cell phone. With the option **Restricted use of telephone**, only contacts in the cell phone and the local MMI memory are available ⇨ *page 150*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 160*.

Tips

- You only have to pair your device one time. Bluetooth devices that are already paired automatically connect to the MMI when they are within range and the ignition is switched on.
- Authorizing the MMI connection in your cell phone will speed up the automatic connection.
- Several cell phones can be paired to the MMI, but only one cell phone can be actively connected.
- A Bluetooth device that is already paired with the MMI will be disconnected if another device is paired.
- When leaving the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection to the cell phone will automatically disconnect.
- You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider or from your cell phone user guide. For information on using the telephone, visit **www.audiusa.com/bluetooth** or contact your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Opening the telephone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

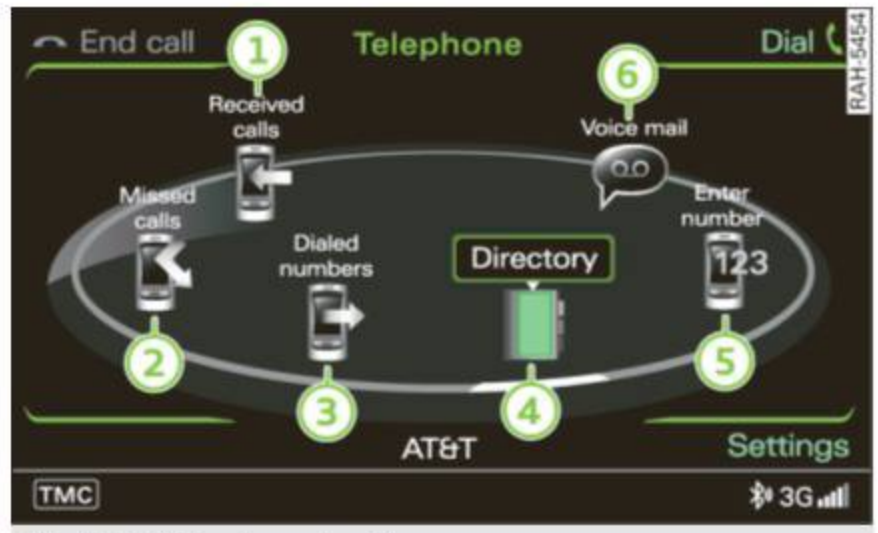


Fig. 163 Telephone functions

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 146*.

▸ Select the TEL button.

The last active telephone menu is shown in the Infotainment display. Press the TEL button in the **Telephone** menu again to access the telephone functions.

The following telephone functions are available ⇨ *fig. 163*:

① List of received calls 148
② List of missed calls 148
③ List of dialed numbers 148
④ Directory . . . . . 150 ▶

⑤ Enter number 148
⑥ Assigning a voicemail number or calling voicemail 155

Dialing a telephone number

From the directory

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can select a phone number directly from the directory ⇨ *page 150*.

From a list

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

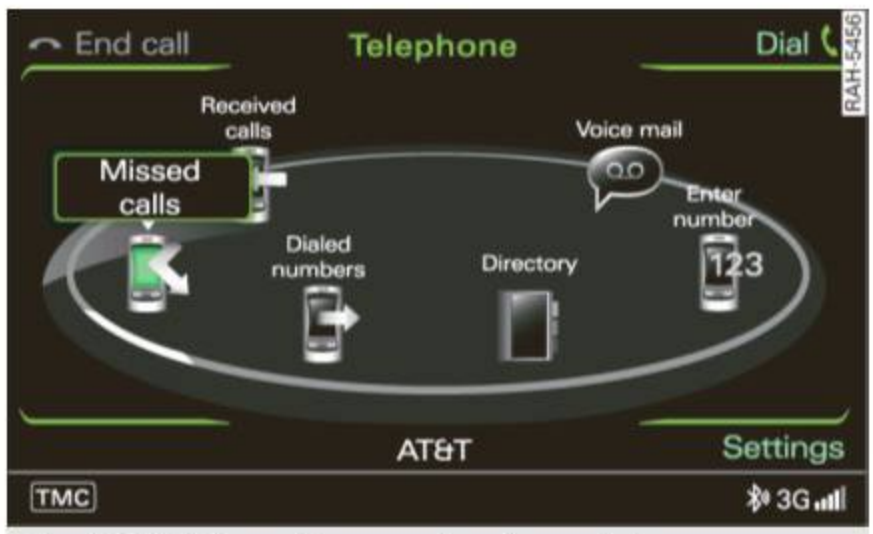


Fig. 164 Dialing a phone number from a list

Requirement: a phone number must be stored in the call lists.

▸ Select the TEL button.

Received calls / Missed calls / Dialed numbers

– **Dialing a phone number**: select and confirm the desired phone number from the call list. Select and confirm **Call**.

Dial control button

– **Dialing a phone number**: select and confirm the desired phone number from the **Dialed numbers** list. Select and confirm **Call**.

Using the speller

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 165 Entering phone numbers using the number speller



Fig. 166 Entering phone numbers using the letter speller

▸ Select: the TEL button > **Enter number**.

– **Entering a phone number as a sequence of numbers**: enter the number using the number speller ⇨ *fig. 165*.
– **Entering a phone number using a sequence of letters**: press the **A-Z** control button. Enter a sequence of letters using the letter speller, for example *AUDISERVICE* ⇨ *fig. 166*.
– **Dialing a phone number**: select and confirm **OK**. **Or**: press the **Dial** control button. The active audio source is muted when making a call.
– **Deleting individual characters**: select and confirm ⬅.
– **Deleting all characters entered at once**: turn the speller to ⬅ and press and hold the control knob.

Tone sequences (**DTMF**) can be entered directly into the speller during a phone call.

Storing a phone number

Storing a new phone number

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can store a new phone number as a contact in the directory ⇨ *page 153*.

Storing from the call lists

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can store a phone number from the call lists in the directory.



Fig. 167 Storing a phone number in the directory

Requirement: a phone number must be stored in the call lists.

- Select: the TEL button > **Dialed numbers**, **Missed calls** or **Received calls** > *Telephone number* > **Save**.

– **Storing a phone number as a new address card**: select and confirm **New contact**. Enter a **Name**. Enter additional data, if necessary. Select and confirm **Store contact**.
– **Assigning a phone number to an existing address card**: select and confirm a contact in the list. Select and confirm **Store contact**.

Tips

– The contacts are only stored in the MMI directory.
– You can edit the directory ⇨ *page 153*.

Accepting/ending a call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- **Accepting an incoming call**: press the **Answer** control button.
- **Ignoring an incoming call**: press the **Ignore** control button.
- **Ending a call or canceling dialing**: press the **End call** control button.

Accepting another call: If there is an incoming call during a call, you can select **Answer** to put the existing phone call on hold and answer the incoming call. If you select **Ignore**, the incoming call will be ignored.

Caller information: the *name*, *phone number* or **Unknown** appears in the Infotainment display and driver information system, depending on if the caller has been stored in the directory and if the phone number has been transmitted.

Tips

– The audio/video source is muted during an incoming or outgoing call.
– If you have switched the Infotainment display off, it will switch on again automatically when an incoming call is received.

During a phone call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 168 Swap call

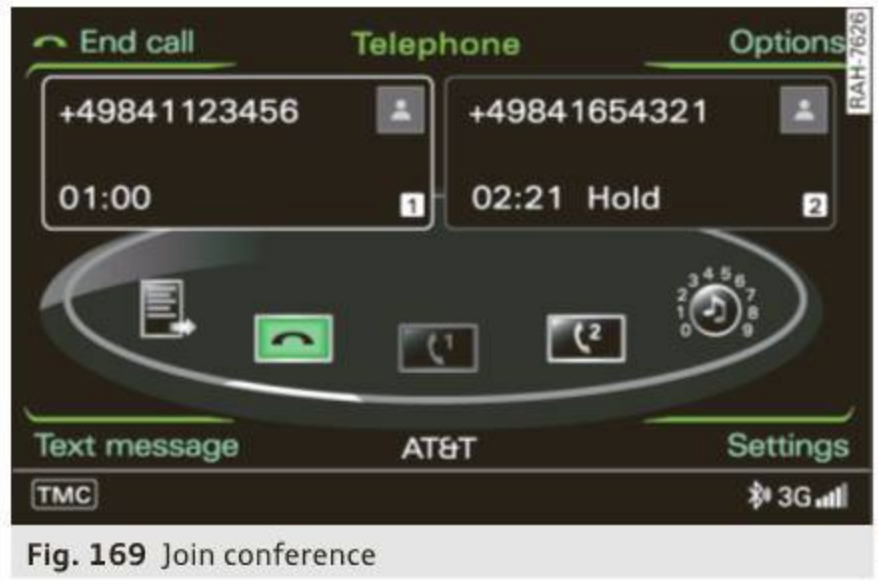


Fig. 169 Join conference

Requirement: there must be a call in progress.

▸ Select the **Options** control button.

– **Making an additional call**: select **Additional call** > **Directory** or *a call list* > *an entry in the list.*
– **Accepting an incoming call when there is an active call and a call on hold**: select **Answer**. The active call is replaced with the incoming call.

Additional functions include:

Mute: if you select and confirm this function, the other person on the phone cannot hear you. You can hear the other person.

Hold/Resume: you can put an active phone call on hold and resume it. **On hold** and the duration of the phone call is shown in the Infotainment display.

Swap call: you can alternate between two phone calls at the same time. One of the calls will be on hold. **End call** ends the active phone call. A phone call that is on hold stays on hold and can be resumed using the **Options** control button and **Resume**.

Join conference: a party on hold and up to five active parties (depending on the network) can be added to a conference call. To make an additional call, put all participants in the current conference call on hold using **Hold**. Press the **Options** control button. Select and confirm **Additional call** and select a phone number from the **Call list** or the **Directory**, or select **Enter number**. To add this party to the conference call, select **Join conference**. With **Resume**, all participants are taken off hold. **Show conference participants** shows all participants.

Tips

– To be notified of an incoming call during a phone call, the *Call waiting* function in your cell phone must be switched on when using the handsfree profile (**Handsfree**).
– The display of an incoming phone call in the Infotainment system display may still be visible for a few seconds depending on the cell phone in use. If you use the **Replace** or **Ignore** functions in the MMI while the display is still visible, the active phone call may end.

Emergency call functions

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 146*.

▸ Select: TEL button > **Enter number** > *Enter emergency call number (for example, 911)* > **OK**.
▸ **Setting an automatic emergency call***: select the TEL button > **Settings** control button > **Telephone settings** > **Auto. emerg. call**.

WARNING

– Because your phone works with radio signals, a connection cannot be guaranteed under all circumstances. Do not rely on only your phone when it comes to essential communication (such as a medical emergency).
– Always follow the instructions given by the emergency personnel during an emergency call and only end the call when they instruct you to do so.

Tips

Emergency numbers are not the same everywhere. Find out which emergency number is used in your current location.

Opening the directory

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

After connecting the cell phone, the contacts in it are automatically imported into the MMI.



Fig. 170 Contact list ▶

▸ Select: the TEL button > **Directory**.

– **Selecting a contact**: select and confirm a contact from the directory. The address card is displayed.

Contacts are displayed in alphabetical order and can be sorted according to first or last name ⇨ *page 156* and are identified with a symbol to tell the location where they are stored ⇨ *fig. 170*:

① **Private MMI directory**: these contacts are only visible when the cell phone is connected.

You can pair up to four different cell phones with the MMI and manage up to four private directories.

② **Public MMI directory**: these contacts are visible to all users and can be used by all users regardless of the cell phone that is connected.

No cell phone connected: each new contact will be stored in the public directory ⇨ *page 153*.

Cell phone connected: to store a contact in the public directory so that all users can access it, the contact must be marked as a **Public contact** ⇨ *page 152*.

③ **Cell phone**: these contacts are stored in the cell phone and are only visible when the corresponding cell phone is connected.

If all of the memory capacity is filled, you will be asked to replace the contacts from one cell phone when connecting another cell phone. With the option **Restricted use of telephone**, only contacts in the cell phone and the local MMI memory (public) are available.

The directory can be opened through the **Telephone*** menu as well as through the **Navigation*** menu.

Tips

– Check for a possible request to synchronize on your cell phone. Requests to synchronize the directory must be confirmed so that your cell phone contacts can be loaded into the MMI.
– The contact display in the MMI depends on the cell phone used. For more information on the supported cell phones, visit **www.audiusa.com/bluetooth** or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– The contacts from the cell phone may not be transferred in alphabetical order. If there are too many entries, contacts with different first letters may be missing in the MMI.
– The public contacts in the local MMI memory are always visible and can be accessed by other users.

Searching for a contact

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: the TEL button > **Directory**.

– Select and confirm **Find contact**. Enter the name. **Or**: select and confirm the contact using the **List**.

Both the first and last names are searched.

Tips

– You can scroll through long lists quickly by turning the control knob quickly.
– You can go directly to the first letter of the contact you are searching for by entering the first letter on the MMI touch control pad* using your finger ⇨ *page 136*. Entering additional letters narrows down the list of found contacts.

Using contacts

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 171 Calling a contact



Fig. 172 Selecting a destination

► Select: the TEL button > **Directory** > *a contact from the directory*.

– **Call**: select and confirm the desired telephone number. **Or**: select the desired phone number and press the **Call** control button.
– **Navigate**: select and confirm the desired destination ① ⇨ *fig. 172*. **Or**: select the desired destination and press the **Navigate** control button. To start navigation, select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

If no destination is set, you can set a mailing address ② as a destination by selecting and confirming the desired address when an address card is open.

Read contact

The MMI automatically creates a name tag for each entry in the directory that can be read by the MMI.

Create copy for editing/Edit contact

A copy of the contact is stored in the private local MMI memory.

You can change the information in the input fields ⇨ *page 153* using the speller.

Storing a contact in the public directory

You can mark a contact as a **Public contact** ☑. The contact is then stored in the local MMI memory (public) ② ⇨ *fig. 172* and is available to all MMI users. If a contact is not marked as a **Public contact**, it is stored in the local MMI memory (private) ① and is only visible when the cell phone, in which the contact is saved, is connected.

Delete contact

Only the contacts in the MMI memory (private/public) can be deleted.

Tips

– Contacts edited in the MMI directory cannot be automatically updated in the connected cell phone. Audi recommends editing cell phone contacts directly in the cell phone.
– Only the contacts in the MMI memory (private/public) can be edited or deleted.
– To delete all shared or private contacts at one time, select the **Delete public contacts** or **Delete private contacts** option in the directory settings ⇨ *page 156*.

Importing and exporting contacts

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Contacts in vCard format (.vcf) can be imported into the directory or exported.



Fig. 173 Importing the phone book manually

Requirement: an SD card must be in the SD card reader ⇨ *page 181* or a USB storage device must be connected to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 185*.

▸ Select: the TEL button > **Directory** > **Memory** control button.

– **Importing contacts from a storage device:**: select and confirm **Import contacts** > **SD card 1**, **SD card 2** or **USB storage device** > *desired contacts* > **Import**.
– **Exporting contacts to a storage device**: select and confirm **Export contacts** > **SD card** or **USB storage device** > *desired contacts* > **Export**.
– **Selecting all contacts at once for import or export**: select and confirm **Import contacts/Export contacts** > **SD card** or **USB storage device** > **All** control button > **Import/Export**.
– **Importing the phone book manually**: select and confirm **Import phone book**. The symbol ① ⇨ *fig. 173* appears in the status line in the Infotainment display as long as the contacts are being imported from the cell phone.

To make it easier to find a contact, you can filter the contacts according to their storage location (**Vehicle**, **Telephone** or **All**) using the **Memory used** function.

Tips

– The imported contacts are stored in the local memory of the directory.
– A maximum of 100 contacts can be imported. You can check the memory capacity for the directory at any time ⇨ *page 154*.
– Never save important data on SD cards or USB storage devices. Audi is not responsible for damaged or lost files and media.
– Refer to the notes in the chapter **About Audi connect** ⇨ *page 162*.

Storing a new contact

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 174 Storing a new contact

▸ Select: the TEL button > **Directory** > **New contact**.

Last name/First name

Enter the last name and first name using the speller.

Telephone numbers

You can store up to five telephone numbers in an address card. You can also assign a **Type** (**Business** or **Private**) as well as a **Category** (**Land line**, **Cell** or **Fax**) for each phone number. You can also use **Default phone number** to set a frequently used phone number as the default number. That number is then displayed first in the open address card.

You can import a phone number from the call lists (such as **Dialed numbers**) into the address card using the **New number** function and the **List** control button. ▶

Navigation destination (business)/ Navigation destination (private)

Two navigation destinations, **Private**/**Business**, can be assigned to each contact. You can access the stored navigation destinations in the **Navigation** menu using the **Route guidance** control button ⇨ *page 169*.

A stored private/business mailing address is automatically downloaded into the **Address** input field for each navigation destination. You can store these easily as navigation destinations using **Create entry in directory**.

You can find the next rest stop, gas station, Audi dealer or hospital under the **Top categories** menu item. The **Point of interest** menu item contains additional submenus that you can use to create navigation destinations. For more information about the submenus, refer to ⇨ *page 167*.

Mailing address (business)/Mailing address (private)

You can specify a business and private address in an address card. With the **Delete mailing address** function, you can delete the business or private address.

Structured addresses from a cell phone that have information regarding country, ZIP code, city and street name can be imported directly into the directory.

Tips

- The public contacts in the local MMI memory are always visible and can be accessed by other users.
- The new contact will be stored in the memory in the directory that is currently being used.
- The importing of new addresses depends on the cell phone.
- Up to 100 contacts can be stored in memory in a private or public directory.
- Contacts edited in the MMI directory cannot be automatically updated in the connected cell phone. Audi recommends editing cell phone contacts directly in the cell phone.

Name tags

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

The MMI automatically creates a name tag for each contact in the directory. You can also assign up to 50 personal name tags for contacts using the voice recognition system.

▸ Select: the TEL button > **Directory** > **Settings** control button.

– **Playing personal name tags**: select and confirm **Read name tags** > *contact from the list*.
– **Deleting name tags**: select and confirm **Delete name tags** > **Delete individually**/**Delete all entries** > **Yes**.

Tips

- You can only assign and store personal name tags using the voice recognition system.
- You can only delete personal name tags you have recorded.

Memory capacity

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: the TEL button > **Directory** > **Memory** control button > **Memory capacity**.

The **Memory capacity** for each directory and for the entire memory is displayed.

You can manage up to 5,000 contacts with the directory. You can load up to 2,000 contacts from your cell phone into each private directory. In addition to this, you can store up to 100 private contacts and up to 100 public contacts into the MMI memory.

Additional settings

Telephone settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: the TEL button > **Settings** control button. ▶

Call options

Automatic redial: when the function is switched **On**, a phone number will be automatically redialed up to five times if it is busy. Automatic redial can be canceled with **End call**. The function is only active when the network gives a busy signal.

Auto answer: when the function is switched **On**, incoming calls are automatically answered after a brief time.

Three-way conference (GSM)

- **On**: you can answer an incoming call while another call is in progress by selecting **Answer**. The first call is put on hold. Using the **Hold** option, you can also put an active call on hold and start another call or a conference call.
- **Off**: you can replace a call with an incoming call by selecting **Replace**. You can ignore an incoming call using the **Ignore** option. You cannot put an active call on hold or start a new call.

Telephone settings

Volume settings[1]: for the **Ring tone volume**/ **Call volume**, refer to ⇨ *page 205*.

Voice mail: the voicemail number can be entered or edited in the **Number** input field using the speller. When a voicemail number is stored, the voicemail can be accessed with the ⌾ symbol in the speller. The **Delete number** function deletes the stored voicemail number.

Invert call lists: the phone numbers in the call lists are sorted according to the time the call took place. When the function is switched **On**, the sorting order is reversed.

Bluetooth

Bluetooth: the MMI Bluetooth function can be switched **On** or **Off**. The Bluetooth symbol (11) ⇨ *page 138, fig. 159* appears in the Infotainment display when the function is switched **on**.

Visible: the visibility of the MMI in cell phones or in Bluetooth audio players can be switched **On** or **Off**. When **Auto** is selected, the MMI will remain visible for cell phones or a Bluetooth audio player for about five minutes when the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is switched on. The visibility switches off after that. However, it is still possible to establish a Bluetooth connection with cell phones or devices that have already been paired when the visibility is switched off. The visibility of the MMI automatically switches **Off** when audio files are being played using a connected Bluetooth audio player to avoid problems during playback.

Bluetooth audio player: the **Bluetooth audio player** function must be switched **On** to be able to select the **Bluetooth audio player** as the source in the **Media** menu. Switch the **Bluetooth audio player** function **Off** if you are not using it to prevent malfunctions in the **Telephone** or **Media** menus.

Find Bluetooth devices: the system searches for and lists Bluetooth devices that are within range.

Bonded Bluetooth devices: the Bluetooth devices connected to the MMI are listed. The currently connected Bluetooth device is labeled with the Bluetooth symbol. To delete connected Bluetooth devices individually, select the device and delete it with the **Delete Bluetooth device** function. To disconnect or connect paired cell phones individually, select the Bluetooth device and change the profile using the **Connect** function while the vehicle is stationary. Use **Disconnect** to disconnect the paired Bluetooth device.

Known Bluetooth devices: up to 50 known devices can be listed. These Bluetooth devices may no longer be in range when searching to connect.

Bluetooth name: the Bluetooth name of the MMI (for example, “AUDI MMI 2613”) is shown and can be changed.

Delete Bluetooth devices: all connected Bluetooth devices can be deleted by confirming with **Yes**.

Wi-Fi settings

See ⇨ *page 160*. ▶

1) Depends on the connected cell phone.

Connections

See ⇨ *page 161*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 160*.

Tips

– Several cell phones can be paired to the MMI, but only one cell phone can be actively connected.
– To delete all connected Bluetooth devices, the **Bluetooth** function can be reset to the factory settings ⇨ *page 206*.

Directory settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: the TEL button > **Directory** > **Settings** control button.

Sort order

You can sort the contacts in your directory alphabetically according to **Last name/First name**.

Display public contacts

You can show or hide the public contacts. With **Yes**, all the contacts in the local MMI memory (public) are shown, and with **No**, they are hidden.

Delete private contacts/Delete public contacts

You can delete all private contacts in the local memory using the **Delete private contacts** function. You can delete the public contacts in the local memory using the **Delete public contacts** function.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Problem	Solution
Connecting the cell phone to the MMI failed.	Check if the Bluetooth visibility on the cell phone and MMI is switched on. For some cell phones, the visibility turns off automatically after a short period. **Or**: restart your cell phone. For more information on this, refer to the user guide for your cell phone.
After pairing, **not all contacts/no contacts** are loaded in the MMI.	Avoid using special characters in names. Avoid using contact groups.
Certain **telephone functions** are grayed out or not available.	The telephone functions depend on the cell phone service provider and the cell phone you are using. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider, in your cell phone user guide or in the database for mobile devices at **www.audiusa.com/bluetooth**.

Audi connect

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

With Audi connect services, online information is transmitted and integrated directly in the vehicle.

A mobile end device can be used to access the Internet through a Wi-Fi hotspot, either when the vehicle is stationary or from the rear seat when the vehicle is in motion.

A separate SIM card provided by Audi connect is used to access Audi connect services.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of an accident, only use Audi connect services when road and traffic conditions permit. Read and follow the guidelines provided in ⇨ *page 134*.
- Use the Audi connect services with a Wi-Fi hotspot only in the rear seat when the vehicle is in motion or only when the vehicle is stationary to reduce the risk of an accident.

Note

Audi connect is designed for use only with the provided Audi SIM card. Audi AG is not liable for the consequences of using other SIM cards.

Tips

Read and follow the **notes about Audi connect** before starting it ⇨ *page 162*.

Setup

Requirements for Audi connect

An Internet connection is required to use Audi connect. The following requirements must be met to establish a connection:

- You must be in an area that is covered by your provider.
- Your Audi SIM card must be inserted in the MMI SIM card reader ⇨ *page 157*.
- A data connection must be configured for Audi connect services ⇨ *page 161*.

Using the SIM card reader

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect



Fig. 175 Inserting the Audi SIM card, actual size of the Audi SIM card

Requirements

The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on.

Inserting the Audi SIM card

- ▸ Slide the Audi SIM card into the card reader slot with the label facing up (contact surface facing down) ⇨ *fig. 175*. The angled corner of the Audi SIM card must be at the left front corner. Then push the Audi SIM card into the slot until it clicks into place.
- ▸ To connect to the Internet automatically in the future, select and then confirm **Yes**.
- ▸ To establish a data connection for Audi connect, confirm the message that appears with **Yes**.

After connecting successfully

After connecting successfully, the signal strength is indicated in the Infotainment display status ▶

line with one or two symbols, depending on the connection type ⑥/⑦ ⇨ *page 138, fig. 159*.

You can now use Audi connect.

- ▸ Select: the MENU button > **Audi connect**.
- ▸ Confirm the prompt asking to connect to the Internet with **Yes**.

Removing the Audi SIM card

- ▸ Press on the Audi SIM card briefly. The card is released from the slot. Remove the Audi SIM card.

WARNING

The card reader must always be closed while driving for safety reasons.

Note

– Audi connect is designed for use only with the provided Audi SIM card. Audi AG is not liable for the consequences of using other SIM cards.
– If a SIM card of a different size is inserted in the SIM card reader instead of an Audi SIM card, do not under any circumstances remove this card yourself due to the risk of damaging the SIM card reader. Contact your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

To use your cell phone, you can connect your it through the **Handsfree** Bluetooth profile ⇨ *page 146*.
– Audi does not provide support for other SIM cards.
– Audi recommends using only the provided Audi SIM card.
– You can specify when the MMI connects to the Internet ⇨ *page 161*. The Internet connection disconnects automatically once the requested Audi connect service no longer requires any data packets.
– The data connection for Audi connect services is preconfigured at the factory. You can change the data connection at any time if you need to adjust the configuration ⇨ *page 161*.

Operating the browser

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect



Fig. 176 Display of Audi connect services



Fig. 177 Display of additional information about attractions or points of interest

The browser can be used in various ways.

– Display of Audi connect services ⇨ *page 159*
– Display of additional information about attractions or points of interest

The following functions are available within the browser ⇨ *fig. 176*:

① Opening the home page
② Opening or closing the side menu
③ Zooming in on browser content (50-200%)
④ Stopping the page from loading
⑤ Refreshing the current browser content
⑥ Opening the main menu
⑦ Closing the browser
⑧ Opening the Destination details menu
⑨ Previous point of interest or attraction
⑩ Next point of interest or attraction ▸

You can return to the previous page using the BACK button.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of an accident, only use Audi connect services when road and traffic conditions permit.

Tips

Some functions are only available when the vehicle is stationary.

Overview of Audi connect services

Basic functions

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

▸ Select: the MENU button > **Audi connect** > *the desired Audi connect service*.

Depending on the selected Audi connect service, you may need to set a search area first:

Setting the search area

– **Immediate vicinity**: the desired information for the area around your current location is displayed.
– **In vicinity of destination or stopover**: if you have entered a navigation destination, you can display the desired information for the area around the destination.
– **In new city**: you can enter any city for which you would like to receive the desired information using the MMI touch or the speller ⇨ *page 137*.

Travel information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Information on attractions and travel tips in the selected search area.

▸ Select and confirm an attraction to display the details.

Parking information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Information on parking locations and fees in the selected search area.

Fuel prices

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Information on gas stations with the lowest fuel prices for your vehicle in the selected search area.

Weather

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Information on current weather conditions as well as weather forecasts for the selected search area (for example, at the **Destination**).

City events

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Information on events in various categories in the desired search area.

▸ Select and confirm a category, such as **Sports**.
▸ Select and confirm an event to display the details.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

View the most current headlines in the MMI.

▸ Select and confirm a headline.

Audi connect services in navigation

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

The following Audi connect services are currently available:

– Navigation with the **online map service** and **online Street View** ⇨ *page 171*
– **Point of interest search (POI) with voice operation** (for example restaurants): plan route guidance using the MMI control panel and the voice recognition system ⇨ *page 143* and destination setup in your MMI using your **myAudi account** ⇨ *page 167*. ▶

– **Destination setup** in your MMI using your **myAudi Account** ⇨ *page 167* or **online map view** ⇨ *page 171*.
– **Traffic information (Sirius)**: receive information about accidents, road construction and other incidents ⇨ *page 175*

Audi connect services on the phone

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

The following Audi connect services are currently available:

– Storing contacts on your computer using your **myAudi Account** and loading the contacts into the MMI directory ⇨ *page 153*

Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

You can use the MMI as a Wi-Fi hotspot to connect up to eight wireless devices to the Internet. While driving, restricted use of non-secured, light, small wireless devices is only possible from the rear of the vehicle.

▸ Select: the TEL button > **Settings** control button > **Wi-Fi settings**.

The following settings can be modified in the **Wi-Fi settings** menu:

Wi-Fi active

The MMI Wi-Fi hotspot is deactivated at the factory. Your Wi-Fi hotspot must be activated and visible to establish a connection between your vehicle and your wireless device.

– **Off**: the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot is deactivated. An Internet connection is not possible.
– **Visible**: the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot is active and can be used to connect to the Internet.
– **Invisible**: the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot is active but not visible to other devices. A connection cannot be established with a new wireless device.

The Wi-Fi connection between your vehicle and your wireless device (laptop, cell phone) is encrypted. To establish a connection, you must enter the following settings when setting up your wireless device. You can change them if necessary.

– **Network ID (SSID)**: name of the Wi-Fi network.
– **Encryption type**: WEP, WPA or WPA2
– **Password**: depending on the encryption type, a password may be generated in the MMI that is used to encrypt the wireless connection. The password can be changed. Be sure to select a secure password. For the WEP encryption type, the password must be exactly 13 characters. For the WPA or the WPA2 encryption types, the password must be at least 8 (maximum of 63) characters.
– **Apply settings**: the modified settings are applied to the MMI. You must then update the changes in your mobile wireless device.

WARNING

– As the driver, do not allow usage of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.
– It is only safe to use laptops and similar mobile devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
– Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 207*.

Note

– Under some conditions, certain mobile devices and operating systems may automatically switch from your vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot to the device's mobile data connection. In that event, standard text and data usage rates would apply while the device's mobile data connection is in use. Please refer to documentation provided by your mobile device's manufacture and your data carrier for details, related terms and privacy statement.
– You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot. ▸

Tips

- In vehicles without Audi connect*, the use of the Wi-Fi hotspot is only possible for the Wi-Fi audio player*. A data connection to the Internet cannot be established.
- A separate, paid mobile subscription may be needed to use the Wi-Fi hotspot. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.
- Depending on your cell phone plan, receiving data packages through the Wi-Fi hotspot may result in additional charges, particularly when in another country. The use of a flat rate data plan is highly recommended. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.

Configuring a data connection

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

To use Audi connect services through a phone in the vehicle, a data connection must be configured.



Fig. 178 Configuring the data connection

▸ Select: the TEL button > **Settings** control button > **Data connection**.

Using the **Data connection** menu, you can set when an Internet connection should be made. The Internet connection disconnects automatically once the requested Audi connect service no longer requires any data packets.

The following options can be selected:

Connection setup

- **On request**: a data connection is only established when confirmed.
- **Without request**: a data connection is automatically established to use Audi connect services.
- **Never**: a data connection is not established. Audi connect services cannot be accessed.

When a data connection is established, the symbol for an active data connection (1) appears in the status line in the Infotainment system display ⇨ *fig. 178*.

An active data connection can be ended manually by selecting **Never** under **Connection setup**.

Data roaming

Data roaming is switched off at the factory. To use a data connection outside of the country, **Data roaming** must be switched on ☑.

Connection settings

Your vehicle is configured at the factory. The configuration should not be changed. If you have questions, contact Audi connect Support at 877-505-AUDI (2834). Audi connect is designed for use only with the provided Audi SIM card.

- **APN**: the access point depends on the cell phone service provider and is assigned automatically.
- **User name**: the user name for your online profile is assigned by the cell phone service provider.
- **Password**: the password for your online profile is assigned by the cell phone service provider.
- **Authentication**: depending on your cell phone service provider, authentication (verifying identity) may be necessary. If this is the case, select **Secure**. If not, select **Normal**.

The changed settings are saved once you leave the **Connection settings** menu using the BACK button.

SIM PIN entry

The PIN for the Audi SIM card that is currently in use can be entered. ▶

Data usage info

The number of data packets that are sent and received through the MMI is displayed. You can reset the data usage information to zero using the **Reset data usage** option.

Start automatic configuration

An online profile is set up and configured automatically. The connection settings that you changed manually are reset to the default settings.

Online status overview

An online status overview with information about your data connection (such as the cell phone service provider) is shown in the Infotainment display.

Switching the data connection module off

The data connection module is switched off. An Internet connection is no longer possible.

Network settings

Under **Login**, select **Auto** to log into a network automatically or select **Manual** to select from a list of networks within range. The available networks in the area can be selected in the **Network selection** list. This function is only available when **Manual Login** is set.

Serial number (IMEI)

The serial number for the MMI that is installed is displayed.

WARNING

- As the driver, do not allow usage of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.
- It is only safe to use tablets and similar mobile devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle when involved in an accident and can cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
- Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 207*.

Note

You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Tips

- When using Online map view, you are prompted again to allow roaming before connecting to a foreign mobile network.
- The speed of the data connection may vary depending on the vehicle location, the coverage area of your cell phone service provider and if the recommended provider is used or not.
- A data connection cannot be established if incorrect data is entered in the **Connection settings**.
- The Wi-Fi hotspot reception quality depends on the signal strength and the availability of the mobile network. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.

About Audi connect

Audi connect services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Tips

- You can only use services supported by Audi connect if you have the optional MMI Navigation plus equipment and Audi connect.
- Audi connect is designed for use only with the provided Audi SIM card. Receiving data packets from the Internet will quickly increase the volume of data used. For more information, contact Audi connect customer support at 877-505-AUDI (2834).
- The Audi connect services are available in the USA. Audi connect services are currently not available in Canada or in Mexico. ▶

- Availability, scope, providers, screen display and costs of services may vary depending on the country, model, model year, end device and rates. Additional information can be found under **www.audiusa.com/audiconnect**.
- An initial registration/activation on the myAudi platform at my.audiusa.com is necessary to use individual services. You can contact an authorized Audi dealer or Audi connect Support at 877-505-AUDI (2834) to receive information on options for expanding your usage and any costs that may result.
- It is only possible to use Audi connect services with a valid Audi SIM card.
- To ensure all of the Audi connect features work correctly, Audi recommends setting up a data service and Wi-Fi package with your cell phone service provider. Your cell phone service provider can be authorized by law, through a judicial order or other lawful instructions, to disclose the position of your vehicle. Additional information on your cell phone service provider's privacy policies can be found in their Terms of Use.
- The availability of Audi connect services, such as weather information, depends on the cell phone service provider.
- You can specify when the MMI establishes an online connection ⇨ *page 161*. The Internet connection ends automatically when the Audi connect service in use no longer requires any data packets.
- The Audi connect services are a Wi-Fi/Internet-based system. If the system does not function correctly even though all of the requirements are met, please try again later or contact Audi connect Support at 877-505-AUDI (2834).
- For detailed information on Audi connect and the Terms of Use, visit **www.audiusa.com/audiconnect**.

Privacy protection

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Tips

- Your privacy is important to us.
- AUDI AG collects, processes, shares and transmits your personal information in accordance with legal regulations in order to ensure proper function and availability of the individual Audi connect services. You can view the complete, current and valid Audi connect data protection policy in your MMI. The myAudi website is available for to you to activate additional Audi connect services and to transfer data with your vehicle, among other services. A one-time registration is required to establish a connection to your vehicle. For this purpose, AUDI AG collects, processes, transmits and uses your required personal information as required for you to use the services provided by AUDI AG. Your information is not distributed to third parties. Using your cell phone with the help of your myAudi platform, you can transfer information for Audi connect services functions to your vehicle and allow specific information to be transmitted from your vehicle.
- By activating special information services that are part of your Audi connect portfolio, you can use these functions directly in your vehicle by entering data to confirm your identity (to use social networks, for example). To do this, the identification information you provided is forwarded with the request to the respective service provider. Then you can access your personal content using a secure connection. This content is displayed in the vehicle for your use. Your personal content is not stored within Audi AG. The necessary connection information is processed and used for providing services and the proper function of the services in accordance with applicable legal guidelines.
- By providing Audi connect services, Audi of America is authorized to collect, process, transmit and transfer information about ▶

you and your vehicle. You can obtain additional information about this in your MMI under: MENU button > **Audi connect** > **About Audi connect**.
– Information on our data protection measures in conjunction with the mobile Audi connect application can be found in the application's privacy policy. For additional information about the my.audiusa.com website or other applications, websites or online services connected to Audi, visit **www.audiusa.com/privacy**.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Problem	Solution
Wi-Fi hotspot: problems establishing a Wi-Fi connection	Delete all existing Wi-Fi connections on your mobile device and restart it.

Navigation

Opening navigation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

The navigation system directs you to your destination, around traffic incidents and on alternative routes, if desired.

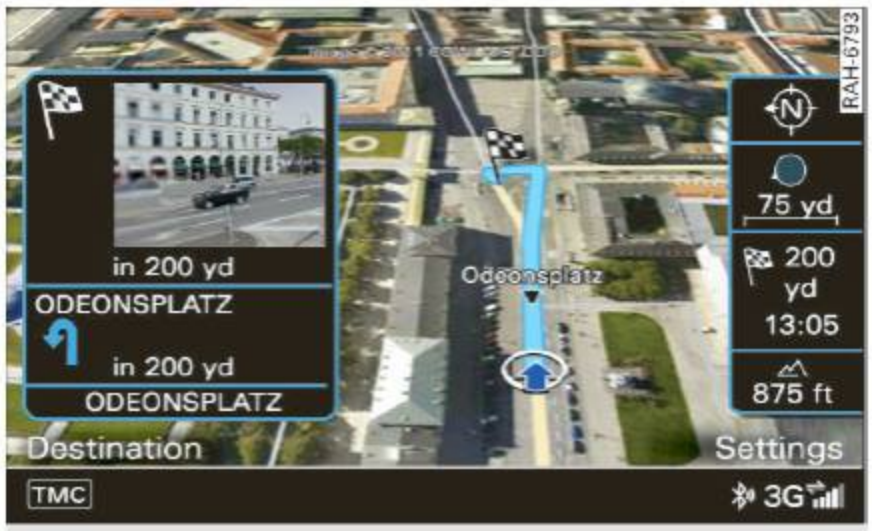


Fig. 179 Example: online map view

▸ Select: NAV button.

After selecting Navigation, the last menu that was open is displayed.

– **Switching between the map and the destination entry**: press the NAV button again.

WARNING

– The demands of traffic require your full attention. Read and follow the guidelines provided in ⇨ *page 134*.
– Obey all traffic laws when driving.
– The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation for reaching your destination. Obey traffic lights, stopping restrictions, one-way streets, lane change restrictions, etc.

Note

– If the driving directions conflict with traffic laws, obey the traffic laws.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, adjust the volume of the navigation system so that signals from outside the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times.

Tips

– Snow and obstructions on the GPS antenna or interference caused by trees and large buildings can impair satellite reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position. Several deactivated or malfunctioning satellites can also interrupt GPS reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position.
– Because street names sometimes change, the names stored in the MMI may in rare cases differ from the actual street name.
– Contact your authorized Audi dealer for information on updating the navigation data.
– The navigation system can be opened in **Demo mode** for simulations or planning purposes ⇨ *page 174*.

Entering a destination

Entering an address

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 180 Entering a destination city

▸ Select: NAV button > **Route guidance** control button > **Address**.

– **Changing the country**: select and confirm **Country**. Enter a country.
– **Entering a destination** using the **City/Zip**: select and confirm **City/Zip**. Enter a city or a ZIP code using the speller. Select and confirm a city from the list. Select and confirm additional details about the destination, such as **Add street**, **Set as stopover**, **Set point of interest in city** ⇨ *page 167* or **Set district**. Start route guidance. ▶

– **Entering a destination using a street**: select and confirm **Street**. Select and confirm a city from the list. Enter a street. To enter a street regardless of the city, turn the control knob to **In all cities** and press the control knob. Select and confirm additional details about the destination such as **House number** or **Intersection**. Start route guidance.

Assistance when entering an address: when entering an address, locations that have been entered in the past are provided as suggestions in the input field. By pressing the **List** control button, you can accept the suggested location as a destination. Additional cities that match your entry are listed below. The number of locations found is also listed Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 180*.

When the desired city is shown in the speller input field or the list below, you can press and hold the control knob to switch to the city list.

Destination on the map

You can select a new destination from the map by moving the crosshairs horizontally, vertically or diagonally using the MMI touch ⇨ *page 136* ⇨ *page 166*.

Coordinates

Display of the geocoordinates where the crosshairs are located (latitude and longitude).

Storing in the directory

Individual destinations can be stored directly in the directory after they are entered. Two navigation destinations, **Private**/**Business**, can be assigned to each contact.

Setting a destination from the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

A location on the map can be used as a destination or be entered in the directory.



Fig. 181 Selecting a destination on the map

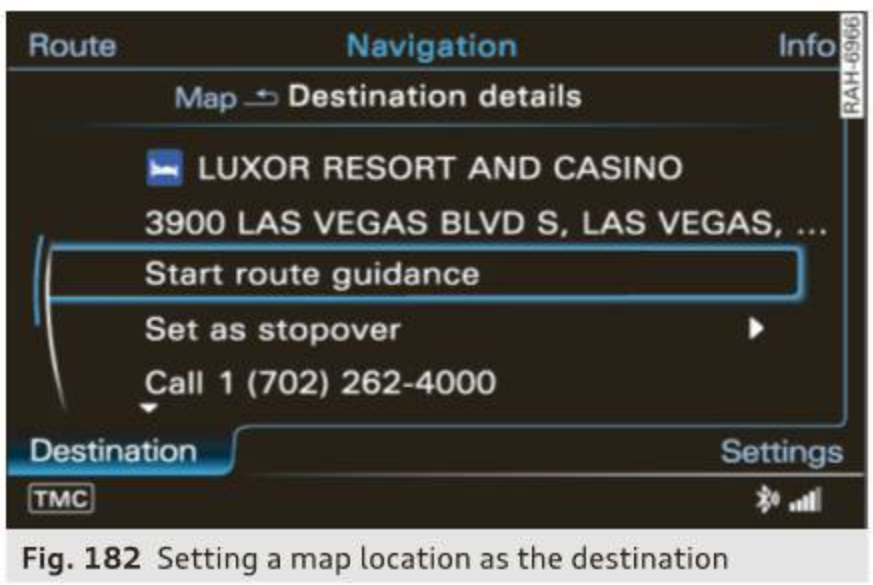


Fig. 182 Setting a map location as the destination

– **Opening the map**: press the NAV button (several times if necessary).
– **Adjusting the scale (to move the crosshairs more quickly)**: turn the control knob to the left/right.
– **Switching the side menu on**: press the control knob.
– **Sliding the crosshairs**: slide the crosshairs horizontally, vertically or diagonally to the desired destination using the MMI touch ⇨ *page 136*.
– **Selecting a destination**: press the control knob. Select and confirm the symbol ① ⇨ *fig. 181* in the side menu. Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Additional information in the crosshairs location: if you select an item on the map with the crosshairs, available information is displayed (such as the address or traffic information). ▶

Tips

– If a destination is *not* present in the navigation data, you can move the crosshairs to the location of the desired city and set the geocoordinates as a destination or add a contact to the directory.
– If you stop moving the crosshairs for a moment, additional information about the area highlighted by the crosshairs will be displayed (such as the city or street name, if available).

Enter point of interest

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Select: NAV button > **Route guidance** control button > **Points of interest**.

– **Changing the search area**: select **Search area**. Select and confirm a search area in the list.
– **Searching for a point of interest name in the selected search area**: select **Find entry**. Enter the name of the point of interest.
– **Searching for a point of interest in a specific category**: select and confirm a category, such as **Airport**.

The following search categories are available:

Top categories: this function helps you find popular locations such as the nearest parking lot. The points of interest are sorted in ascending order according to the distance from the vehicle.

Searching for an entry in the current country: the name of the country is entered in the speller. The point of interest does not depend on the vehicle position and the destination. This function is useful for searching for points of interest that you know about in a new country.

Immediate vicinity: points of interest can be selected from different categories. The points of interest are listed starting from the immediate vicinity of the vehicle up to a radius of approximately 125 miles (200 km).

Vicinity of destination/stopover: the points of interested can be selected from various categories, for example you can search for a hotel at the destination.

Along the route: points of interest along the route can only be selected during active route guidance. The point of interest is located directly along the calculated route or in the vicinity of it.

In new city: the name of the city is entered in the speller. Points of interest can be selected from various categories. This function is useful for searching for points of interest in a city independent from the destination.

Nationwide: you can either search for the point of interest by name or select it from various categories. The point of interest is independent from the vehicle position and destination. For example, you can navigate to an airport in the current country using this function.

Tips

– The points of interest in **Top categories** and **Immediate vicinity** are displayed according to straight-line distance (open arrow) from your current location. The actual distance from your current location to the point of interest is updated automatically (solid arrow).
– There may be entries in the list that cannot be displayed completely due to their length. If you select these entries with the control knob, a pop-up window containing detailed information about the selected list entry will open.

Online destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect

You can search for points of interest on the Internet.

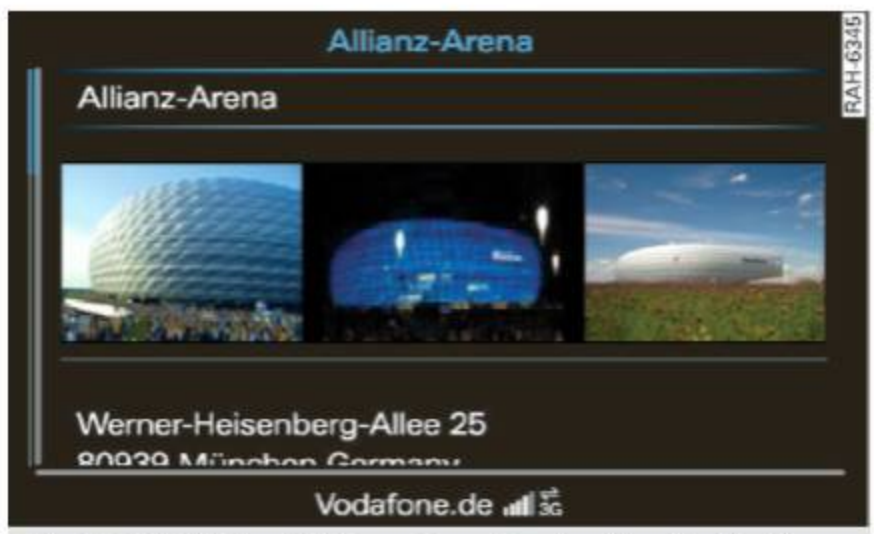


Fig. 183 Additional information about online destinations ▶

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect services must be met ⇨ *page 157*.

▸ Select: NAV button > **Route guidance** control button > **Online destinations**.

– **Search at location or vicinity of destination/ stopover**[1)]: select and confirm **Search in immediate vicinity** or **Search at dest./stopover**. Enter a search term, such as restaurant, and confirm the input with **OK**. Select and confirm a point of interest > **Start route guidance**.
– **Search in new city**[1)]: select and confirm **In new city** > **Find city**. Enter the name of the city and confirm the input with **OK**. Enter a search term, such as restaurant, and confirm the input with **OK**. Select and confirm a point of interest > **Start route guidance**.
– **Finding destinations from myAudi account**[2)]: select and confirm **Find destinations from myAudi account**. Enter the **myAudi PIN** for your myAudi account, if necessary. The contacts stored in the myAudi account are displayed. You only need to enter the **myAudi PIN** one time. You will receive the **myAudi PIN** in your myAudi account once you have assigned a vehicle to the account. Select and confirm a contact. Select and confirm a private or business navigation destination > **Start route guidance**.

You can display additional information about online destinations in the **Destination details** menu ⇨ *fig. 183*.

Tips

– For additional information on the myAudi account, visit **www.audi.com/myAudi**.
– Refer to the notes in the chapter **About Audi connect** ⇨ *page 162*.

Setting a favorite/home address as the destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Favorites make it easier to enter a destination that you use often.

Requirement: a favorite or home address must be stored ⇨ *page 172*.

▸ Select: NAV button > **Route guidance** control button > **Favorites**.
▸ Select and confirm a favorite or the home address. Start route guidance.

You can store up to ten individual destinations and your **Home address** as favorites ⇨ *page 172*.

Tips

– You can display, find, edit and delete your stored favorites and home address on the map ⇨ *page 172*.
– Favorites are displayed on the map at a scale up to 1.5 miles (2.5 km).

Loading the last destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Your previous destinations are stored automatically and can be loaded directly as destinations.

▸ Select: NAV button > **Route guidance** control button > **Last destinations**.
▸ Select and confirm a previous destination from the list. Start route guidance.

Tips

The list of last destinations can be deleted ⇨ *page 174*.

1) Provider at time of printing.
2) Requirement: you must have a myAudi account set up at my.audiusa.com. You must have a vehicle stored in your myAudi account and you must have a destination stored.

Setting the home address as the destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Start route guidance to the home address you set simply and quickly.

Requirement: a home address must be stored ⇨ *page 172*.

- ▸ Select: NAV button > **Route guidance** control button > **Home address**.
- ▸ Start route guidance.

Transferring a destination from the directory

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can navigate directly to destinations in the directory.

Requirement: the directory must contain contacts with private/business addresses stored as destinations.

- ▸ Select: NAV button > **Route guidance** control button > **Directory**.
- ▸ Select and confirm a contact. If a contact contains two navigation destinations (private and business), select and confirm one destination. Start route guidance.

Entering a destination using geo coordinates

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Select: NAV button > **Route guidance** control button > **Address** > **Coordinates**.
- ▸ Select and confirm the **Latitude** and **Longitude**. Start route guidance.

Entering a stopover/route plan

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can enter up to nine stopovers directly in the route plan or using the destination input options.

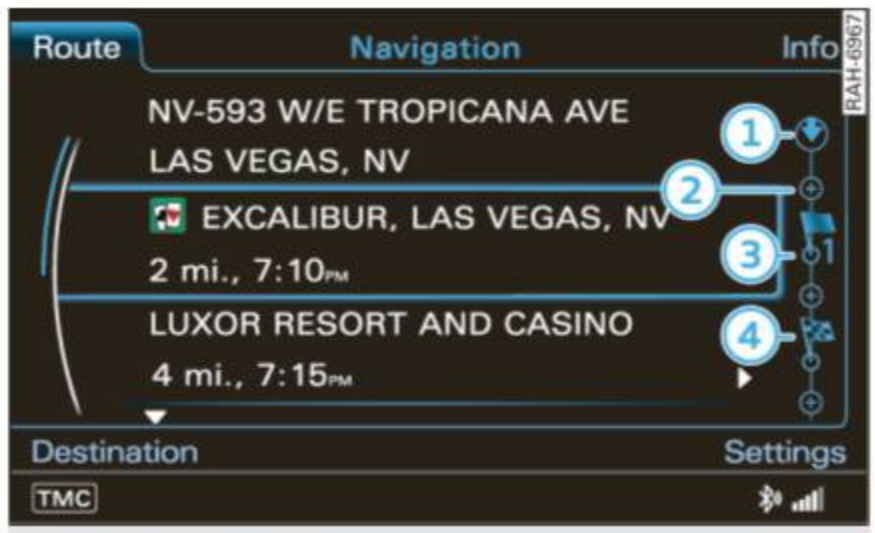


Fig. 184 Route plan

Requirement: a destination must be entered ⇨ *page 165*.

- ▸ Select: NAV button > **Route** control button.

– **Entering a destination as a stopover**: select and confirm the symbol for entering a stopover ② ⇨ *fig. 184*. Enter a destination ⇨ *page 165*. Select and confirm **Add to route plan**. Start route guidance.

– **Changing the route plan**: press the **Route** control button. Select and confirm the destination or stopover and then **Change**, **Move**, **Delete** or **Drive to this destination now**.

– **Save route plan**: press the **Route** control button. Select and confirm **Route memory** and then **Save route plan**. Enter a name.

– **Load route plan/Deleting**: press the **Route** control button. Select and confirm **Route memory** and then **Load route plan/Delete route plan**.

The following information appears in the route plan side menu ⇨ *fig. 184*:

① Vehicle location
② Symbol for entering a stopover
③ Entered stopover
④ Destination

To delete all stopovers from your route plan, enter the individual destination and start the route guidance ⇨ *page 165*.

Starting/canceling route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can also cancel route guidance by entering a new destination ⇨ *page 165*.

– **Starting route guidance when entering a new destination**: select the NAV button > **Route guidance** control button > *Enter a destination* > **Start route guidance**.
– **Restarting/canceling last route guidance**: select the NAV button > **Route guidance** control button > **Start/Cancel**.

The following additional functions are available when entering a new destination:

Alternative routes: three route suggestions are calculated for the destination that is currently entered. The side menu shows information about the alternative routes, such as distance to the destination and the calculated arrival time.

Alternative routes can only be calculated for individual destinations.

Set point of interest in city: allows you to search for attractions and public places around the specified location, such as hospitals, movie theaters, recreation areas, etc. The points of interest can be selected directly as a destination.

Set district: the navigation system calculates the route to the center of the city or district that is entered.

Display destination on map: the destination entered is displayed on the map.

Operating the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 185 Online map with crosshairs switched off



Fig. 186 Standard map with the crosshairs switched on

– **Opening the map**: press the NAV button (several times if necessary).
– **Switching the crosshairs on**: press the control knob in the map view.
– **Switching the crosshairs off**: press the BACK button.

When the crosshairs are switched off:

① Direction: the map is displayed either with an orientation to the **North** or to the **Driving direction** ⇨ *page 173*.
② Scale: turn the control knob to the left or right to decrease or increase the scale.
③ Distance to the destination or stopover
④ Calculated arrival time at the destination or stopover
⑤ Speed display[1)]
⑥ Altitude display
⑦ Vehicle location ▶

1) Only applies to vehicles without camera-based speed limit display.

⑧ Display of selected map information

⑨ Display of an upcoming maneuver

When the crosshairs are switched on:

⑩ Information regarding the location of the crosshairs: If you select a city on the map using the crosshairs, any information available is displayed, such as address, phone number or traffic information.

⑪ Map content, such as traffic information, favorites or points of interest

⑫ Display of the geocoordinates where the crosshairs are located (latitude and longitude)

⑬ Moving along the route: This function can be used while route guidance is active. Turn the control knob to the left or right to move the map along the current route.

⑭ Destination details menu: Display of available details about the location of the crosshairs, such as address. The location of the crosshairs can be used as a stopover, stored in the directory or called ⇨ *page 165*.

⑮ Repeat the last navigation message

If you select the map orientation ① and press the control knob when the side menu is switched on and the **2D** map view is selected ⇨ *page 173*, the display switches from **Dir. of travel** to **North** and vice versa. This setting is saved.

Online map view

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect

You can display the map with satellite images using the online map view.

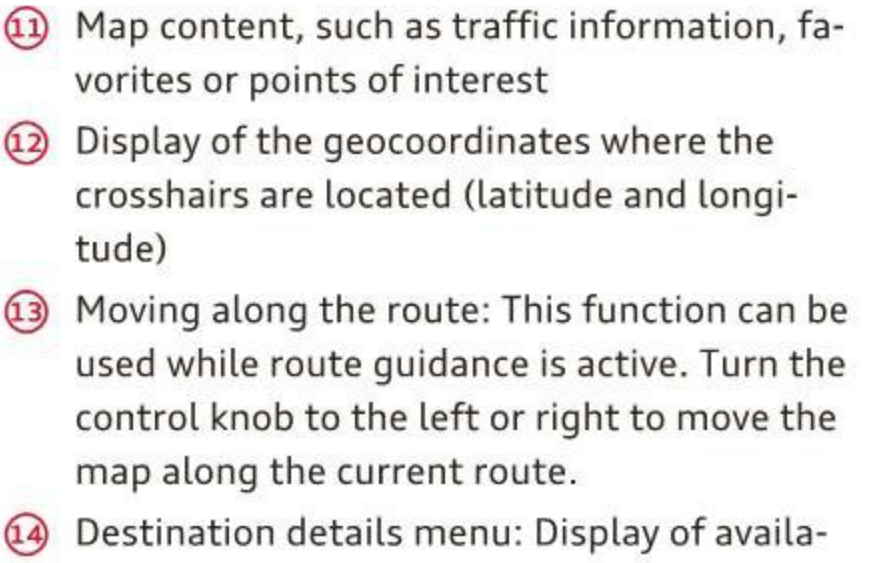


Fig. 187 Online map view



Fig. 188 Map view with online Street View

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect services must be met ⇨ *page 157*.

- Select the NAV button > **Settings** control button > **Map view**.
- Select and confirm the provider for the online map view.

The online map view is based on data packets received from the Internet in the form of satellite images, which are then combined with the roadways from the **Standard** map view. There are two gigabytes of memory space on the MMI hard drive that can be used to temporarily store the map or navigation data that was received. This is roughly the amount required for the map/navigation data from a 2,500 miles (4,000 km) route. As long as the satellite images loaded for route guidance are stored on the hard drive, you can use them without having an active data connection.

Online Street View*

You can explore many places in the world through the eyes of a pedestrian using online Street View. Online Street View is available when the symbol ① ⇨ *fig. 187* is displayed in the side menu.

To activate the Online Street View, turn the control knob to a scale of less than 30 m.

The following functions are available:

– **Exploring an area step-by-step**: tap the MMI touch control pad when the symbol is displayed ② ⇨ *fig. 188*. ▶

– **Zooming in or out on the current view in four stages**: turn the control knob to the left or to the right (3).
– **Turning the view to the left/right or tilting up/down**: move your finger over the MMI touch control pad in the desired direction.

Tips

– Refer to the notes in the chapter **About Audi connect** ⇨ *page 162*.
– Stored data for the online map view can be deleted with **Factory settings** ⇨ *page 206*.
– The online map view is an Audi connect service and is updated regularly when the function is opened. The process may take several seconds.
– When the online map display is switched on with the 3D map type, the Infotainment display automatically switches to the 2D map type when driving through tunnels.
– Content, scope and providers of available Internet-based services may vary.
– For safety reasons, the online Street View functions can only be used when the vehicle is stationary.

Additional settings

Storing a favorite or home address

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Favorites are stored automatically as a contact in the directory.

▸ Select: NAV button > **Route guidance** control button > **Favorites**.

– **Storing a favorite**: select **Create favorite**. Select and confirm a favorite with the displayed functions.
– **Storing a home address**: select **Home address**. Select and confirm a home address with the displayed functions.

A home address can be stored for each cell phone or SIM card that is paired with the MMI as well as for the public MMI directory. It is only visible when the respective directory is active.

Additional functions include:

– **Call**: select and confirm a favorite or the home address. Select and confirm **Call**.
– **Change**: select and confirm a favorite or the home address. Select and confirm **Re-assign home address/favorite**.
– **Showing on the map**: select and confirm a favorite/home address. Select and confirm **Display destination on map**.
– **Delete**: select and confirm a favorite or the home address. Select and confirm **Delete home address/favorite**.

Storing a destination in the directory

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and telephone

Two addresses (private/business) can be assigned as destinations for each contact in the directory.

▸ Select: NAV button > **Route guidance** control button > *enter a destination* > **Store in directory**.

– **Storing a destination as a new address card**: select **New contact**. Enter a name. Enter additional data, if necessary. Select and confirm **Store contact**.
– **Assigning a destination to an existing address card**: select and confirm an address card. Select and confirm **Store contact**. If you already have an address card for a destination, the old destination will be overwritten.

Display as favorite: to be able to access a destination quickly, the destination can be displayed in the list of favorites when the function is switched on ☑ ⇨ *page 169*.

Stored destinations are identified on the map by a blue or red push pin (business/private navigation destination).

General settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Select: NAV button > **Settings** control button.

Several criteria are used to calculate route guidance. ▶

Route criteria

Auto rerouting (traffic): when auto rerouting is **On**, the route is automatically adjusted based on TMC traffic information. If the MMI does not calculate a detour even though you have selected dynamic route **On** and a traffic jam was reported on the calculated route, then the detour the system calculated would take more time than the time spent waiting in the traffic jam.

Alternative routes: when the function is **On**, up to three suggested routes and their criteria appear in the Infotainment display in the side menu. After changing to map view, the new route that was calculated according to your criteria is highlighted. You can select the possible routing in the alternative routes by turning and pressing the control knob.

Route options: you can select a **Short**, **Fast** or **Mixed** route.

Highway/Toll road/Ferry: select the **Minimize** option you do not want the navigation system to include highways, toll roads or ferries when calculating a route.

Time restricted roads: using the **Minimize** function will exclude time restricted roads, such as pedestrian zones, from the route calculation. When **Auto** is selected, the MMI decides if the time restricted roads should be included when calculating the route guidance based on the entries stored in the navigation data.

Seasonal closing: using the **Minimize** function will exclude seasonal closings, such as mountain passes, from the route calculation. When **Auto** is selected, the MMI decides if the seasonal restricted roads should be included when calculating the route guidance based on the entries stored in the navigation data.

Map colors

Day/Night: the map is displayed with a light/dark background.

Auto: when the lights switch on, the map colors switch from day to night.

Orientation

North[1)]: the map orientation is facing north.

Dir. of travel: the map orientation is in the direction of travel. At a scale of 62 miles (100 km), the map is oriented to the north for easier orientation.

Auto: at a scale up to 3 miles (5 km), the map orientation is in the direction of travel. At a scale greater than 3 miles (5 km), the map is oriented to the north.

Map type

Destination: the destination is marked with a checkered flag. The map indicates the destination and is oriented to the north.

2D: the current vehicle position is displayed. The map orientation corresponds to the setting in the **Map orientation** menu ⇨ *page 173*.

3D: when this function is switched on, the current vehicle position is displayed in a three-dimensional terrain map and the map orientation is set automatically to the **Dir. of travel**. At a scale of 100 km and larger, the map is oriented to the north. At a scale between 30 - 100 meters, the display will show three-dimensional city models and landmarks will be shown at a scale of 30 - 200 meters.

Overview: the entire route from the vehicle location to the destination is displayed on the map. The map scale depends on the length of the route. The map is oriented to the north.

Map display

Online map view ⇨ *page 171*

Map content

Map contents such as traffic information, favorites or restaurants can be displayed (☑) or hidden.

The functions in the **Map content** menu depend on the map display that is selected. ▶

1) Only possible in the 2D map view

Route info

When the function is switched **On**, the three upcoming turns and the calculated distance and arrival time are shown in the Infotainment display during route guidance (8) ⇨ *page 170, fig. 185*.

The current street traveled, upcoming maneuvers, traffic information or points of interest on the current route are also displayed.

The next turn is displayed at the bottom of the table.

Automatic zoom

On: the map scale is adapted automatically depending on the type of road being traveled on (expressway, highway, other roads) so that you always have an optimal overview of the road ahead. When there are upcoming maneuvers, the scale is automatically reduced to provide a better detailed view.

Intersection: when route guidance is active, the map temporarily zooms in to a detailed scale when there are upcoming maneuvers so that you can see the route better.

Off: the map scale you have chosen is kept instead.

Gas station message

When this function is switched **On**, a message appears when the fuel gauge goes below the reserve marking. Confirming this message displays a list of gas stations in the area. When a gas station is selected, route guidance from the current vehicle position is calculated.

Speed limit display*[1)]

The maximum speed limits for expressways, highways and main streets can be switched **On**-/**Off** if they are stored in the navigation data.

Voice guidance

The voice guidance prompts can be **Complete** or **Compact**. When **Off** is selected, no voice guidance is given.

Navigation prompts can be given by pressing the [NAV] button.

Voice guidance on during call

Navigation prompts can be switched on ☑ or off during a phone call.

Delete recent destinations

The destinations you have entered last are automatically stored. They can be deleted individually or all at once.

Presentation mode

The **Demo mode** helps you to effectively plan and display a route by showing map contents or route criteria. You can **Set starting location** when you would like to calculate a route starting from a location other than the vehicle position. Start **Demo mode** to simulate the route guidance.

Tips

The route simulation in presentation mode is deactivated while driving for safety reasons.

Route settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Select: [NAV] button > **Route** control button.

Route list

The route list is visible only when route guidance is active and contains information regarding the route, the names of the streets and the length of the route sections. On longer route sections, additional information may be displayed such as possible interchanges when driving on expressways.

Avoid route from here

Determining the length of the route to be avoided: turn the control knob to the left or right.

When route guidance is active and the **Standard** ⇨ *page 170* map view is switched on, the calculated route is avoided for the distance you have ▶

1) Only applies to vehicles without camera-based speed limit display.

specified, if possible. The navigation system calculates an alternative route.

The route to be avoided that you have entered applies only to the current route and must be set again, if needed.

The areas you have selected to avoid will appear with red and white shading on the map.

Tips

If the MMI does not calculate an alternative route, that means there is none available.

Accessing traffic information

Auto rerouting (traffic)

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Sirius (satellite radio)

By receiving traffic information from the TMC or satellite - depending on availability - the MMI calculates an optimized route and the possible time saved for the current route guidance. You can decide yourself which route you would like to use.

Traffic information (TMC)

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Sirius (satellite radio)

TMC traffic reports can be shown in the Infotainment display using Sirius (satellite radio).*



Fig. 189 Accessing TMC traffic information

▸ Select: INFO button.

The last active Info menu is shown in the Infotainment display. To open the list with TMC traffic information ⇨ *fig. 189*, press the INFO button again in the **Info** menu.

Reception of traffic information is indicated by the **TMC** symbol in the status line:

TMC symbol	Meaning
Displayed	TMC stations are available and dynamic navigation is switched **On** ⇨ *page 173*.
Is grayed out	TMC stations are *not* available and dynamic navigation is switched **On**.
Not displayed	Auto rerouting is switched **Off**.

– **Opening a detailed view of traffic information**: select and confirm the traffic information from the list.
– **Opening the next traffic information**: select and confirm **Display next report**.
– **Showing the selected traffic information on the map**: select and confirm **Show on map**. The shaded line shows the street and the length of the traffic jam.
– **Displaying the next traffic information on the map**: press the control knob again.
– **Having traffic information read out**: press the **Read** control button.

Traffic information display

① **Colored warning symbols**: traffic incidents on your route are shown in the upper section of the list and are sorted according to distance.

Warning symbols with ⮌: avoided traffic incidents.

② **Grayed out warning symbols**: traffic incidents that are not on your route. They are sorted according to road type (expressway, highway, other road), country and name.

Tips

– Critical traffic information, such as warnings about wrong-way drivers, is automatically displayed. To hide the traffic information, press the BACK button or the control knob.
– TMC traffic reports are not available in Canada. For more information, please contact Sirius Canada. ▶

– Traffic reports are shown in the driver information system display and can be selected by turning the left thumbwheel.

Entertainment volume

Turn the On/Off knob to the right or left to the adjust the volume during traffic reports.

Other settings

▸ Select: INFO button > **Settings** control button.

Traffic report

Traffic information that refers to an active destination is given as a spoken announcement when the function is switched **On**.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Problem	Solution
Favorites that were already stored are no longer displayed.	The favorites in the public MMI directory are visible for all users in the vehicle. If a cell phone is connected, both the favorites from the private directory and the favorites stored as public are displayed. If you want to make a favorite available for all users, it must be stored in the public MMI directory. A favorite in the private directory must be marked as a **Public contact** if you want it to be available for all users.

Radio

Accessing the radio

The radio supports the FM, AM and Sirius (satellite radio) bands. By means of an HD Radio receiver, you also receive radio stations on the FM and AM band in digital format.*



Fig. 190 FM station list (HD radio)



Fig. 191 Sirius station list

▸ Select: the RADIO button.

After selecting the radio, the last menu that was open is displayed.

– **Showing the station list**: press the RADIO button again. The receivable stations are shown on a radio station list ⇨ *fig. 190* and can be selected directly.
– **Selecting a station**: select and confirm a station from the station list. FM/AM stations that can be received by digital radio are marked with the HD symbol ① ⇨ *fig. 190*. If reception quality declines, the radio automatically switches to the analog FM/AM station. Digital FM HD radio stations may contain multiple additional stations*. The available additional stations* are listed under the radio station. When you leave the reception area, additional stations* that cannot be received are marked with a symbol Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 190*.
– **Quick storing from the station list**: select and confirm a station from the station list. Press and hold the control knob until **Store** *station name* **here** appears in the presets list. Select and confirm the desired presets location.
– **Selecting a stored station**: press the **Presets** control button. Select and confirm a station from the presets list.
– **Selecting the frequency band**: press the **Band** control button. Select and confirm the desired band. **Or**: press the RADIO button repeatedly until the desired frequency band appears in the title line ⇨ *fig. 190*.
– **Updating the station list**: select and confirm **Update station list**. The station lists in the FM and Sirius* bands are updated automatically. If the last station that was playing is no longer available after the station list is updated, station 184 is played automatically.

If there is a loss of radio signal (Sirius*), the following system information may display in the station list:

LINKING: the tuner is currently not receiving a satellite signal ② ⇨ *fig. 191*

ANTENNA: the antenna is not ready. For additional information, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

The system information turns off when the radio stations are received again.

Tips

– HD Radio reception is not available in Canada.
– Contact the Sirius* provider if you would like to receive satellite programming.
– That stations in the AM station list are still displayed after you leave the reception area. There is no longer any reception.
– Buildings, tunnels, bridges, open areas, other vehicles or objects on the vehicle roof can affect reception.
– Satellite radio is not available in Alaska and Hawaii.

4H0012721BD

Radio functions

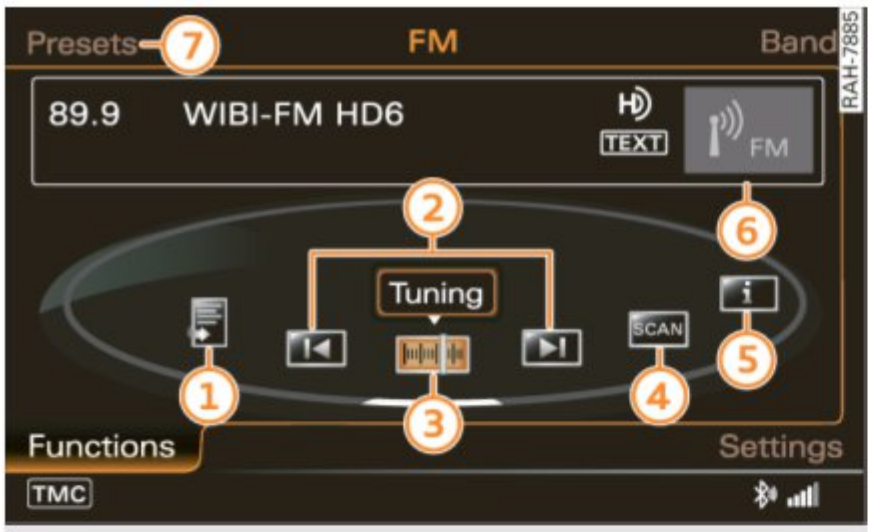


Fig. 192 Radio main functions

▸ Select: the RADIO button > **Functions** control button.

The following functions can be selected, depending on the band that is selected:

① Store station/Store channel

The selected station is stored in the next empty position in the presets list ⇨ *page 178*. Select and confirm the desired presets location.

② Seek down/Seek up (FM, AM)

The previous |◀ or next ▶| receivable station is selected. **Or**: press the arrow keys on the MMI control panel |◁◁ / ▷▷|.

Previous channel/Next channel (Sirius*)

The previous |◀ or next ▶| channel is selected. **Or**: press the arrow keys on the MMI control panel |◁◁ / ▷▷|.

③ Tuning

The frequency bars are displayed. Select and confirm the desired frequency.

Tuning (Sirius*)

Select and confirm the desired channel from the Sirius frequency band*.

④ Scan

All stations are played for several seconds each.

⑤ Information (FM)/Info (Sirius*)

The radio text (such as station name, artist or title) is shown in the Infotainment display, depending on availability.

⑥ Information window

Various information about the selected station (such as the station name, ensemble or program type) is displayed, depending on availability.

⑦ Presets

The presets list can contain up to 50 stations from all frequency bands.

– **Storing stations**: select the **Presets** control button > **Store** *station name*. The selected station is stored in the next empty position in the presets list. Select and confirm the desired presets location.
– **Selecting a stored station**: press the **Presets** control button. Select and confirm a station from the presets list. **Or**: press the arrow keys on the MMI control panel (|◁◁ / ▷▷|).
– **Moving stored stations**: press the **Presets** control button. Select and confirm the station from the station list and then **Move** *station name*. Select and confirm the desired presets location.

Other settings

▸ Select: the RADIO button > **Settings** control button.

The following settings can be selected depending on the band that is selected (FM, AM, Sirius*):

HD Radio* (FM/AM)

You can switch HD Radio reception on or off.

HD station information* (FM/AM)

Requirement: HD radio reception must be switched on.

When the function is switched on, various information about the title that is currently playing (such as artist or album) is displayed, depending on availability.

Station names (FM)

– **Scrolling**: scrolling text transmitted by the FM stations is shown in the Infotainment system display.
– **Fixed**: scrolling text transmitted by the FM stations is not shown in the Infotainment system ▶

display. Only the current section of the scrolling text displayed.
– **Off**: scrolling text transmitted by the FM stations is not shown in the Infotainment display. Scrolling text from HD stations is shown in the Infotainment display.

Channel info (Sirius*)

If track information is available for the current title (such as artist or album), it will be displayed in a pop-up window if this function is activated.

Station sorting (Sirius*)

– **Channel number**: the stations are sorted in ascending order according to their station number.
– **Channel name**: the stations are listed in alphabetical order.
– **Category and channel number**: the stations are sorted according to their category and then according to their channel number.
– **Category and channel name**: the stations are sorted according to their category and then according to their station name.

Category filter (Sirius*)

The stations shown in the station list can be filtered by your personal preferences and by program type. The program categories that you can select depend on what is offered by your provider. Select the **Deactivate category filter** option to deactivate all filter options and display all available stations in the satellite station list.

Receiver serial number (Sirius*)

The electronic serial number (ESN) is displayed. The number is required when logging in to Sirius*.

Deleting presets

Requirement: a station must be stored in the presets list ⇨ *page 178*.

Stored stations can be deleted **Individually** or **All** at once.

Troubleshooting

Problem	Solution
A station with poor reception is no longer displayed in the station list once you switch to a different station.	Store the station ahead of time and then select it from the presets list later (7) ⇨ *page 178, fig. 192*.

Media drives and connections

Introduction

There are various media drives and connections available in the MMI. For example, you can play audio/video* files through the Jukebox, or you can connect a portable device to the Audi music interface* and operate it through the MMI.

Notes

General information

Media and format restrictions: the MMI (including the SD card reader and the USB storage device connection*) was tested with a variety of products and media on the market. However, there may be cases where individual devices or media and audio/video* files may not be recognized, may play only with restrictions or may not play at all.

The MMI media drives do not support Windows Media Audio 9 Voice, Windows Media Audio 9 Lossless and Windows Media 9 Professional formats.

Digital Rights Management: please note that the audio/video* files are subject to copyright protection.

The media drives do not play files that are protected by DRM and that are identified with the symbol.

Data security: Never store important data on the memory cards, the Jukebox, CDs/DVDs or portable audio devices. Audi is not responsible for damaged or lost files and media.

Loading times: the more files/folders/playlists that are on a storage medium, the longer it will take to load the audio/video* files. Audi recommends using storage media that only contain audio/video files*. To decrease the time it takes to load audio/video files*, create subfolders (for example, for the artist or album). The loading time will also increase when importing files.

Additional information: when playing, audio files are automatically displayed with any additional information that is stored (such as the artist, track and album cover). If this information is not available on the storage medium, the MMI will check Gracenote. However, in some cases, the additional information may not be displayed.

Restricted functionality: if functionality is restricted, reset the **Media settings** to the factory default settings ⇨ *page 206*.

Reset the Jukebox to the factory default settings if functionality is restricted ⇨ *page 206*.

For information about the properties of supported media and file formats, see ⇨ *page 186*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 160*.

CD/DVD operation

CD/DVD and format restrictions: the functionality of individual storage media may be limited due to the variety of blank CDs/DVDs available and the various capacities. Audio CDs or video DVDs with copy protection, CDs/DVDs that do not conform to the standard and multisession CDs may have limited playback or may not play at all. Audi recommends finalizing the recording process when creating multisession CDs. Multisession is not supported for DVDs.

Handling CDs/DVDs and the DVD drive: To ensure good, high-quality sound reproduction and to prevent damage to the drive or disc reading errors, always store CDs/DVDs in a protective sleeve and do not expose them to direct sunlight. Do *not* use:

– Damaged, dirty or scratched CDs/DVDs
– Single CDs/DVDs (3 inch/8 cm diameter)
– CD/DVDs that are not round
– CDs/DVDs with labels
– Protective rings
– Cleaning CDs

Thermal protection switch: CD/DVD playback may be temporarily unavailable if outside temperatures are extremely hot or cold. A thermal ▶

protection switch is installed to protect the CD/DVD and the laser.

Laser devices: laser devices are divided into safety classes 1 to 4 in accordance with DIN IEC 76 (CO) 6/VDE 0837. The various types of audio equipment installed conform to safety class 1. The laser uses so little power or is shielded so there is no danger when it is used correctly.

Device cover: do not remove the cover from the device. The device does not contain any parts that the owner can repair.

SD card reader

The SD card readers are located behind the cover in the center console.

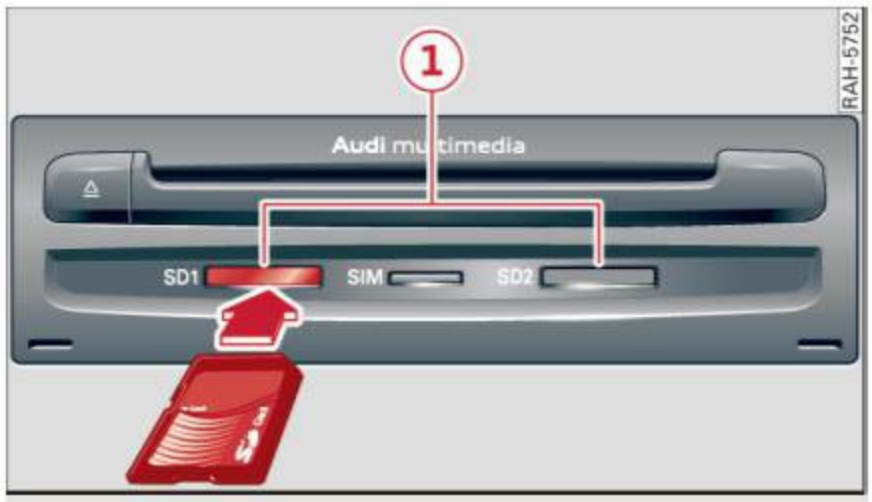


Fig. 193 Inserting the SD card

– **Inserting the SD card**: slide the SD card into the card reader slot (1) with the label facing up (contact surfaces facing down) ⇨ *fig. 193*. The angled corner of the SD card must point toward the right front. Then push the SD card into the slot until it clicks into place.
– **Removing the SD card**: press briefly on the SD card. The card is released.

The SD card reader is started and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 189*.

WARNING

The card reader must always be closed while driving for safety reasons.

Note

Only use one-piece SD cards. If adapter cards (SD cards with more than one piece) are used, the card could fall out of the adapter when driving because of vibrations. Individual pieces could then become stuck in the drive and impair the functionality.

Tips

Always keep the SD card in a suitable case to protect it from dirt, dust particles and other damage.

DVD drive

The DVD drive is located behind the cover inside the center console.

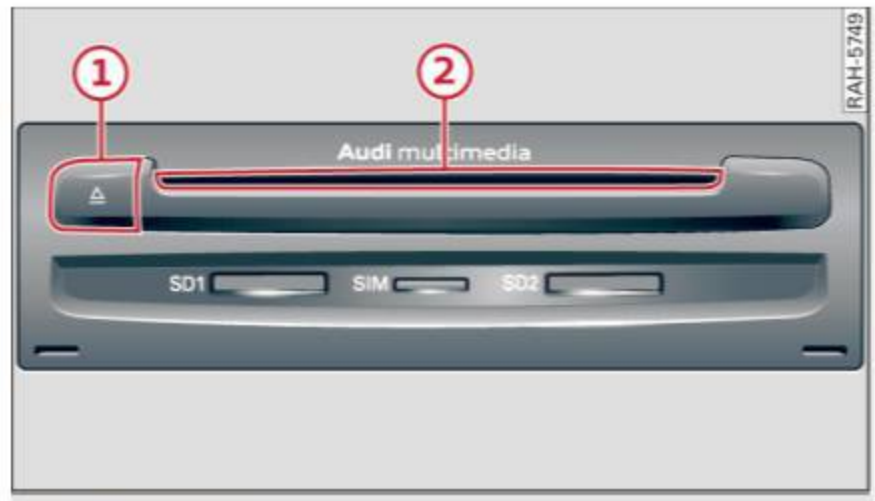


Fig. 194 DVD drive

– **Loading a CD/DVD**: slide the CD/DVD straight into the DVD slot (2) with the label facing up ⇨ *fig. 194*.
– **Ejecting a CD/DVD**: press the button (1).

The CD/DVD is pulled in again automatically if it is not removed from the DVD slot within approximately ten seconds after ejecting it.

The DVD drive is started and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 189*.

Note

– Never force a CD/DVD into the drive. The CD/DVD is pulled in automatically.
– Do not insert CDs/DVDs with labels into the drive. Labels can come loose from the CD/DVD and damage the drive.

Tips

The CD/DVD playback is not ensured with audio files that have a high data rate.

DVD changer

Applies to: vehicles with DVD changer

The DVD changer is located in the glove compartment.

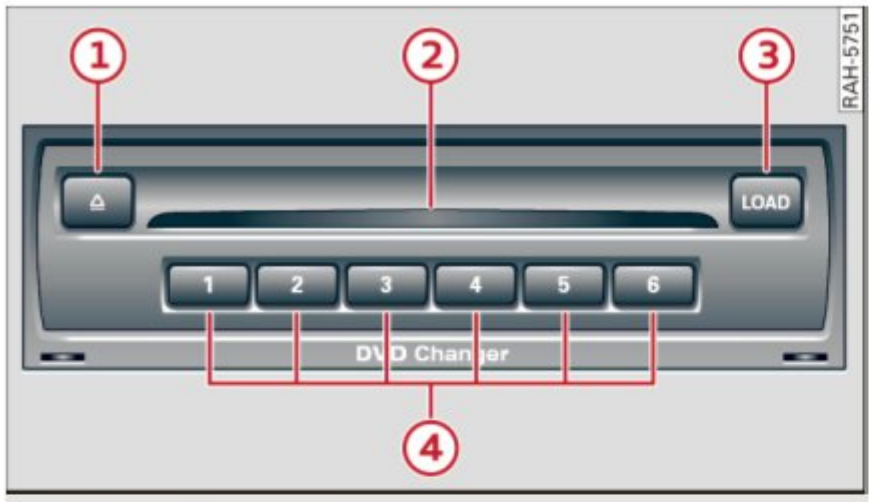


Fig. 195 DVD changer

– **Loading a CD/DVD**: press the LOAD button ③ ⇨ *fig. 195*. The DVD changer is not ready to load if the LED in the DVD slot is red. The LEDs in the DVD slot ② blink green when the DVD changer is ready to load. Slide the CD/DVD straight into the DVD slot ② with the label facing up. The CD/DVD is automatically loaded in the next empty position in the DVD changer. The corresponding button ④ lights up.
– **Loading multiple CDs/DVDs at the same time**: press and hold the LOAD button ③ longer than two seconds. Wait until the green LEDs in the DVD slot ② start to blink. Slide the CDs/DVDs one after the other straight into the slot ② with the label facing up. The CDs/DVDs are automatically loaded in the next empty positions in the DVD changer.
– **Loading a CD/DVD to a specific position**: press the LOAD button ③. The next empty position ④ blinks. The occupied positions light up and do not blink. Press the button for the desired position and remove the CD/DVD if necessary. Slide the CD/DVD you would like to load straight into the DVD slot ② with the label facing up.
– **Ejecting the current CD/DVD**: press the button ① briefly two times. The CD/DVD is pulled back into the DVD changer automatically if it is not removed from the DVD slot within 30 seconds of ejecting it.
– **Ejecting any CD/DVD**: press the button ① and then press a blinking button ④.
– **Ejecting all CDs**: press and hold the button ① longer.
– **Canceling the loading process**: press the LOAD button ③ again during the loading process.

Six CDs/DVDs can be loaded into the DVD changer. For information on the properties of supported file formats, refer to ⇨ *page 187*.

The DVD changer is started and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 189*.

Tips

– Follow the instructions for handling CDs/DVDs.
– When playing MP3 files with a variable bitrate, there may be a discrepancy between the play time displayed and real time.

Jukebox

Audio/video files from a CD/DVD-ROM, a USB storage device or an SD card can be copied to the Jukebox.

▸ Select the MEDIA button > **Source** control button > **Jukebox**.

Adding files to the Jukebox

– **Selecting files/folders**: select the **Import** control button > *desired source* > *individual files or folders*. Press the **All** control button to select **All** files or folders. **Or**: select and confirm a folder and press and hold the control knob.
– **Starting the importing process**: press the **Start import** control button. The status of the import process is shown in the Infotainment display and in the status line with the symbol ⑩ ⇨ *page 138, fig. 159*.
– **Hiding the importing process**: select and confirm **Continue importing in the background**. The importing process is hidden.
– **Canceling the importing process**: select and confirm **Cancel import**. **Or**: remove the source that is being imported. Files already copied remain. ▸

Clearing the Jukebox

Requirement: the Jukebox must contain audio/video files.

– **Selecting files/folders**: select the **Settings** control button > **Delete jukebox** > *individual files or folders*. Press the **All** control button to select all files or folders. **Or**: select and confirm a folder and press and hold the control knob. All files in the folder are selected for deleting.
– **Deleting files and folders**: select the **Start deleting** control button > **Yes**. The status of the deleting process is shown in the Infotainment display. Jukebox playback stops during the deleting process and starts again automatically once the deletion is complete.

Showing memory capacity

Select: **Settings** control button > **Jukebox memory**. The used/free Jukebox memory as well as the number of stored tracks appear in the Infotainment display.

The Jukebox is started and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 189*.

Note

Do not import audio/video files when the engine is turned off because this will drain the vehicle battery.

Tips

– Tracks from audio CDs cannot be imported to the Jukebox for legal reasons.
– Files already imported are recognized and will be grayed out when setting up a new import.
– It is not possible to play audio/video files in the DVD drive while importing them.
– The Jukebox does not provide an export function due to legal reasons.
– Files or tracks without stored information are listed as **Unknown**. Audi recommends adding additional information (such as ID3 tags) to audio files.
– Reset the Jukebox to the factory default settings when selling your vehicle ⇨ *page 206*.

Bluetooth audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Bluetooth interface

You can play music wirelessly from your cell phone through the MMI using the Bluetooth audio player.

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary. The Bluetooth function on the portable audio player and the MMI **Audio player** must be switched on ⇨ *page 155*.

▸ Select the MEDIA button > **Source** control button > *Bluetooth audio player* > **Find new Bluetooth audio player**. The available Bluetooth audio players are displayed.
▸ Select and confirm the desired Bluetooth audio player from the list.
▸ Select and confirm **Audio player**. The MMI generates a PIN for the connection.
▸ Select and confirm **Yes**.
▸ Enter the PIN for connecting on your cell phone. **Or**: if the PIN is already displayed on your cell phone, confirm it in the cell phone and in the MMI. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.

The media are started and operated through the portable device or the MMI, depending on the device being used ⇨ *page 189*.

Tips

– Be sure to pay attention to any possible connection prompts on your Bluetooth audio player.
– You only have to pair your device one time. Bluetooth devices that are already paired are automatically connected to the MMI as soon as they are in range.
– Several Bluetooth audio players can be connected to the MMI, but only one portable device can be active.
– Bluetooth A2DP and AVRCP (1.0/1.3) are supported.
– The supported media functions depend on the Bluetooth audio player being used.
– For more information on the supported devices, visit **www.audi.com/bluetooth** or contact your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Wi-Fi audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi audio player

Wireless media players (such as smartphones) can be connected via Wi-Fi hotspots and controlled with the MMI. You can access the media center on your media player using an UPnP server app or an UPnP/DLNA server integrated in the media player.

Requirements: the Wi-Fi function for the media player and the MMI must be activated. A network connection must be established ⇨ *page 161*. An UPnP server must be installed on your Wi-Fi media player.

– **Connecting theWi-Fi audio player**: select the MEDIA button > **Source** control button > **Wi-Fi audio player**(7) ⇨ *page 189, fig. 198*. A message will appear in the Infotainment display saying there is no Wi-Fi audio player connected to the system. The access data for the Wi-Fi hotspot is displayed.
– Select the same settings on the wireless media player that are used for the Wi-Fi hotspot.
– **Starting the Wi-Fi audio player**: start an UPnP server app or allow media sharing on your device. The first song in the media center on your Wi-Fi audio player begins playing.
– **Operating the Wi-Fi audio player**: the media player is operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 189*.

WARNING

– As the driver, do not allow usage of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.
– It is only safe to use laptops and similar mobile devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
– Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 207*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ (!) *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 160*.

Tips

– Read and follow the notes about Audi connect before starting it ⇨ *page 162*.
– The Wi-Fi connection is reconfigured when inserting or removing the Audi SIM card in the SIM card reader. There may be a temporary interruption in audio playback, depending on the media player.
– In vehicles without Audi connect*, the use of the Wi-Fi hotspot is only possible for the Wi-Fi audio player*. A data connection to the Internet cannot be established.
– Depending on the wireless media player, network or media access may need to be approved on the device or a program may need to be started.
– Check for any connection requests on your wireless media player.
– To avoid interruptions during playback, deactivate the power saving function on the wireless media player or connect it to a charger.
– The loading times for the audio data depend on the media player used and the number of files that it contains.
– A maximum of 2,000 entries per directory are displayed in the Infotainment display.
– For more information on Wi-Fi audio players and supported devices, visit **www.audiusa.com** or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Audi music interface

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi music interface

You can connect a portable device (such as an MP3 player) to the Audi music interface using a special adapter cable and operate the device through the MMI.*

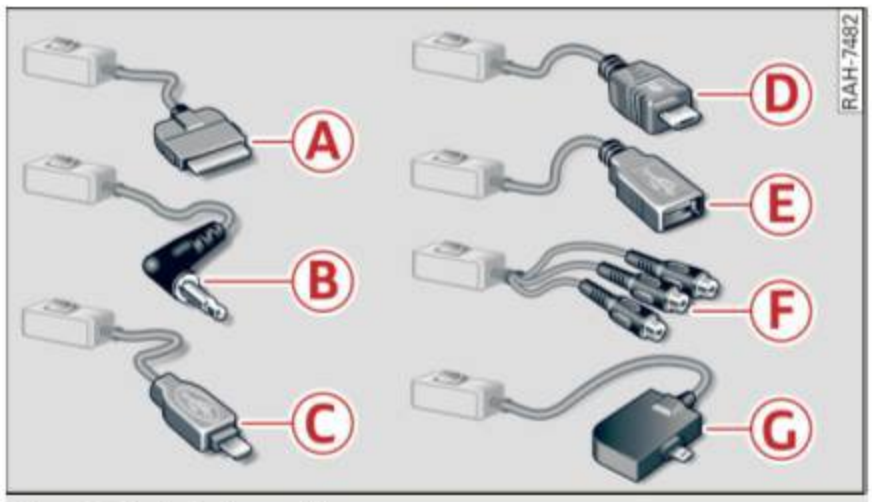


Fig. 196 Adapter cables

Ⓐ iPod adapter cable*/iPod adapter cable plus*

Ⓑ 3.5-mm stereo jack adapter cable*

Ⓒ Mini USB adapter cable*

Ⓓ Micro USB adapter cable*

Ⓔ USB adapter cable*

Ⓕ AV adapter cable*

Ⓖ Adapter cable for Apple devices with Lightning connector*

You can purchase the adapter cable from an authorized Audi or at specialty stores.

Note

– Handle the adapter cable carefully. Do not allow it to be pinched.
– Extremely high or low temperatures that can occur inside vehicles can damage portable devices or affect their performance. Never leave a portable audio device in the vehicle in extremely high or low temperatures.

Tips

Be sure to pay attention to any messages on your cell phone when connecting it with the USB /Mini USB /Micro USB adapter cable. In some cases, it may not be possible to access the audio files on your cell phone.

Setup

Applies to: vehicles with Audi music interface

The Audi music interface is located inside the center armrest.

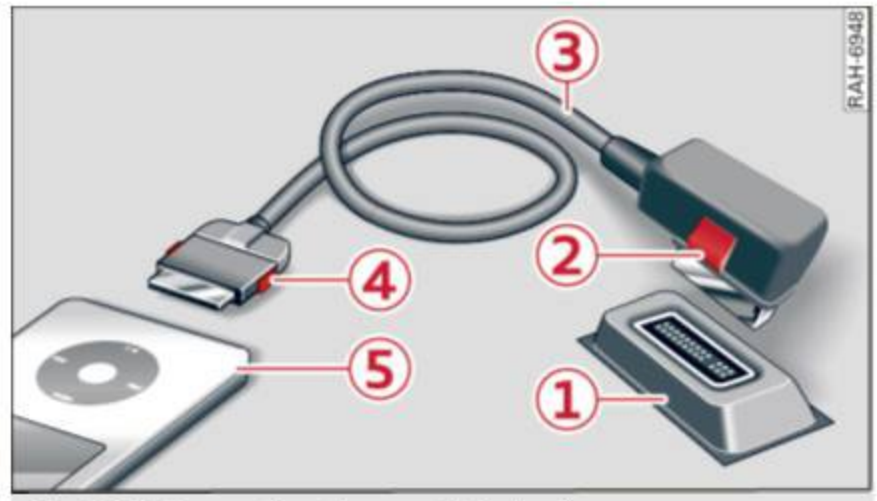


Fig. 197 Connecting the portable device

Requirement: The center armrest is folded open.

– **Connecting the adapter cable**: connect the adapter cable * ③ ⇨ *fig. 197* to the port on the Audi music interface ① and then connect it to the portable audio device ⑤ (such as an iPod).
– **Disconnecting the adapter cable from the Audi music interface**: disconnect the connector from the Audi music interface while pressing the release tab ②.
– **Disconnecting the iPod adapter cable (plus)* from the iPod**: disconnect the iPod connector from the iPod while pressing the release tabs ④.

The media are started and operated through the portable device or the MMI, depending on the device being used ⇨ *page 189*.

Note

Remove the connector from the Audi music interface carefully so it is not damaged.

Tips

– Do not use USB extension cables or adapters. They may impair the functionality.
– Functionality is not guaranteed for portable devices that do not meet the USB 2.0 specification.
– USB hubs are not supported. ▶

- Other iPod versions such as the iPod shuffle cannot be connected to the iPod adapter cable (plus)*. Connect these devices using the optional 3.5 mm stereo jack adapter cable*.
- For video playback, you can also connect your iPod using the AV adapter cable*. You also need an Apple AV cable to do this. For more information on the Apple AV cable, refer to your iPod user guide.
- The Apple Lightning connector does not support video playback.
- iPod/iPhone malfunctions also affect the operation of the MMI. Reset your iPod/iPhone if this happens.
- For important information on operating your iPod/iPhone, refer to the user guide for the device. Audi recommends updating the iPod/iPhone software to the latest version.
- For more information about the Audi music interface and supported devices, visit **www.audi.com/bluetooth** or contact an authorized Audi dealer.

Supported media and file formats

Overview

The **DVD drive**, the **Jukebox**, the **SD card reader** and the **USB storage device*** connection support the following audio/video file properties:

	Audio files			Video files			
Supported media	**SD cards**: with a capacity up to 32 GB **DVD drive**: audio CDs (up to 80 minutes); CD-ROMs with a capacity up to 700 MB; DVD±R/RW; standard video DVDs and audio DVDs that are compatible with DVD video **Audi music interface**: portable devices (such as iPods, USB storage devices*)						
File system	**SD/SDHC/ MMC memory cards** **USB storage device***: FAT or FAT32 file system, maximum 4 partitions **DVD drive**: Joliet (single session and multisession CDs; single session DVDs only); UDF						
Metadata	Album, track, artist, year, genre and commentaries for MP3-/WMA-/M4A files Embedded album covers up to 800x800 px. (GIF, JPEG, PNG)						
Format	MPEG-1/-2 Layer-3	Windows Media Audio 8 and 9	MPEG 2/4	MPEG 1/2	ISO-MPEG4; DivX 3, 4 and 5; Xvid	ISO-MPEG4 H. 264 (MPEG4 AVC)	Windows Media Video 9
File extension	.mp3	.wma; .asf	.m4a; .m4b; .aac	.mpg; .mpeg	.avi	.mp4; .m4v; .mov	.wmv; .asf
Play lists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL						

	Audio files	Video files			
Characteristics	up to maximum 320 kbit/s and 48 kHz sampling frequencies	up to maximum 2,000 kbit/s and 720 x 576 px. at maximum 25fps			
Number of files	**DVD drive**: max. 5,000 files per directory and max. 1,000 files per playlist **Jukebox**: max. 3,000 files can be imported **USB storage device* and SD cards**: max. 5,000 files per directory and max.1,000 files per playlist				

DVD changer

The **DVD changer** supports the following file formats:

	Audio files			Video files	
Supported media	Audio CDs (up to 80 minutes); CD ROMs with a capacity up to 700 MB; DVD±R/RW; Standard video DVDs and audio DVDs that are compatible with DVD video				
File system	Joliet (single session and multisession CDs; single session DVDs only); UDF				
Metadata	Album, track, artist, year, genre and commentaries for MP3-/WMA-/M4A files			WMA tags up to 30 characters	
Bitrates	32 to 320 kbits/s and variable bitrate and variable bits in sampling frequencies from 8 to 48 kHz				
Standard	ISO 9660 Level 1 and 2				
Format	MPEG-1/-2 Layer-3	Windows Media Audio 8 and 9	MPEG 2/4	ISO-MPEG4	DivX 3, 4 and 5
File extension	.mp3	.wma; .asf	.mp4; .m4a	.asf	.avi; .divx
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS				
Characteristics	up to maximum 320 kbit/s and 48 kHz sampling frequencies				up to maximum 2,000 kbit/s and 720 x 576 px.
Number of files	maximum 4,000 files per medium and maximum 1,000 files per directory				

Troubleshooting

Problem	Solution
Audi music interface/Bluetooth audio player: the portable audio device/Bluetooth audio player is not supported.	Refer to the information on the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 185*/ Bluetooth audio player* ⇨ *page 183*. You can learn about supported devices in the Audi database for mobile devices at **www.audi.com/bluetooth**.
Audi music interface: When starting the playback through the 3.5 mm stereo jack adapter cable*/AV adapter cable*, the volume is too high.	Adjust the volume of the portable device to approximately 70 percent of the maximum output (**Input level**) ⇨ *page 190*.
Audi music interface: the portable device is not recognized as a source.	For many cell phones or media players, playback is not possible when the battery level is too low (less than 5% of its capacity). The portable device will only be recognized as a source in the MMI after connecting if the battery charge is sufficient.
Audi music interface: malfunctions during audio playback through an iPod/iPhone.	The **Audio player** function is switched **On**. Switch this function **Off** when you are not using the Bluetooth audio player*.
Audi music interface: there is static when connecting or disconnecting the 3.5 mm stereo jack*/ AV adapter cable* or when connecting or disconnecting the portable device to the 3.5 mm stereo jack*/AV adapter cable*.	The Audi music interface source is already selected when connecting or disconnecting. Either mute the portable device or switch to another audio source (such as the radio ⇨ *page 177*) before connecting or disconnecting the portable device.
Bluetooth audio player: audio playback interference.	Only *one* interface should be actively used at a time to ensure problem-free playback.
Jukebox: songs on the imported playlist are grayed out.	When importing playlists, all of the files themselves must be imported.
Wi-Fi audio player*: the audio/ video playback is interrupted.	To avoid interruptions during audio/video playback, deactivate the power saving function on the Wi-Fi media player* or connect it to a charger.
Wi-Fi hotspot*: your Wi-Fi device is disconnected from the Wi-Fi hotspot.	Make sure the network optimization functions are switched off in the Wi-Fi settings or in the network settings for your Wi-Fi device. For additional information refer to the user guide for your Wi-Fi device.

Playing media

Accessing media

You can start and operate various media drives through the MMI control panel.



Fig. 198 Possible audio/video sources



Fig. 199 Possible audio/video sources

Requirement: a media drive must contain audio/video files.

▸ Select: MEDIA button.

The source overview or the last file that was playing is displayed after selecting Media.

– **Selecting a source**: press the **Source** control button. Select and confirm a source from the list.
– **Playing audio/video files**: select and confirm a folder, song or chapter. The content of the folder is displayed or a track or chapter is played.
– **Moving one level up in the folder structure**: press the BACK button. **Or**: select and confirm **Folder up**.
– **Moving to the highest level in the folder structure**: press the MEDIA button.

Possible sources are:

① Jukebox ⇨ *page 182*
② SD card reader ⇨ *page 181*
③ DVD drive ⇨ *page 181*
④ DVD changer* ⇨ *page 182*
⑤ Audi music interface* (for example, an iPod, USB or an external audio/video input*) ⇨ *page 185*
⑥ Bluetooth audio player* ⇨ *page 183*
⑦ Wi-Fi audio player* ⇨ *page 184*

Tips

– For safety reasons, the video image is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary. Only the sound from the video plays while driving.
– Video playback through an iPod/iPhone does not continue after stopping and starting the vehicle.
– You can scroll through long lists of folders or tracks quickly by turning the control knob quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of folders or tracks.
– When synchronizing a portable device with "Cloud“ services, playlists may display incorrectly in the MMI. Use the media center in the device.
– Some DVDs do not allow selections to be made during playback, for example selecting an audio track, subtitles or a track or chapter.

4H0012721BD

Media functions

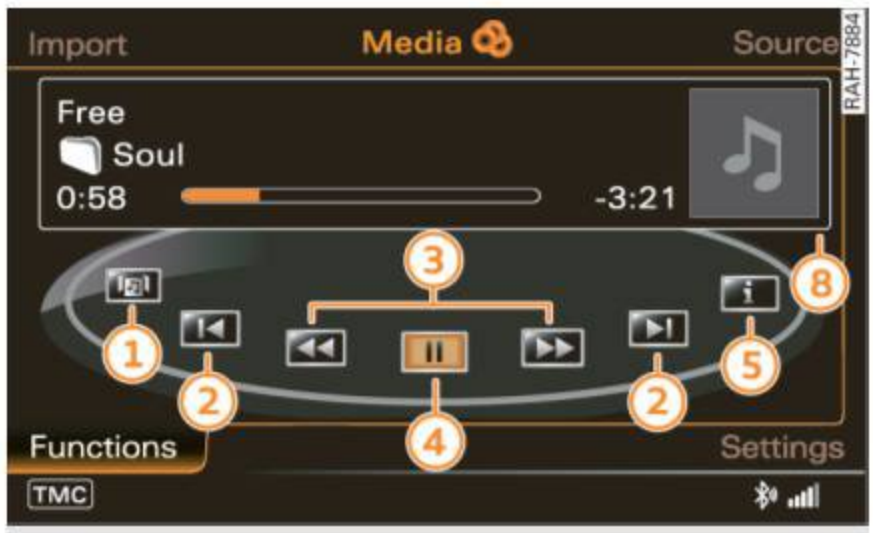


Fig. 200 Jukebox main functions

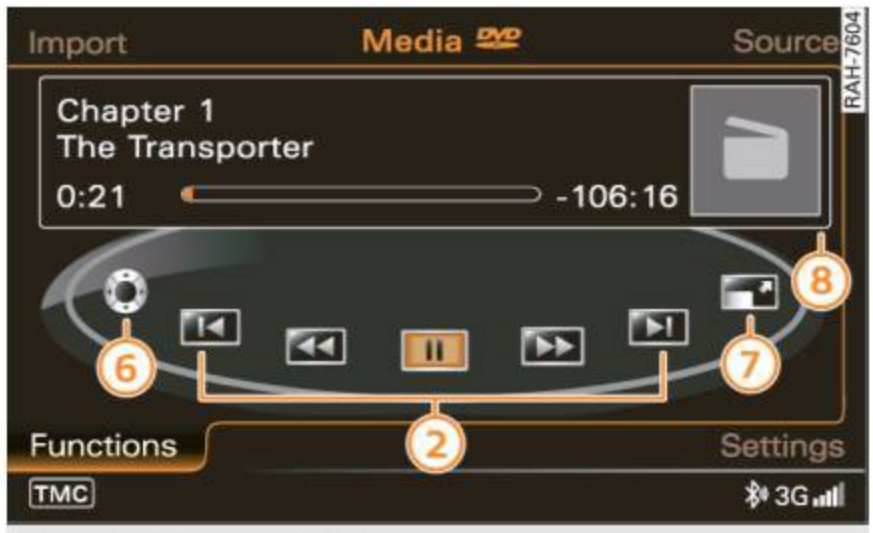


Fig. 201 DVD main functions

▸ Select: the MEDIA button > **Functions** control button.

The following functions can be selected in the display, depending on which source is selected:

① Album browser

All available album covers are displayed. Select and confirm an album cover from the overview. **Or**: select and confirm the **Album browser** in the upper level of the **Jukebox**. The first track in the selected album is played.

② Previous/next track or chapter

The previous |◀ or next ▶| track or chapter plays. If you select |◀ and confirm within the first ten seconds of playback, the previous track will play. If you press it after approximately ten seconds, the current track will begin playing again from the beginning. **Or**: press the arrow keys on the MMI control panel (|◁◁ / ▷▷|).

③ Fast forward/rewind

Press and hold the control knob to rewind ◀◀ or fast forward ▶▶ an audio/video file. **Or**: press and hold the arrow keys on the MMI control panel (|◁◁ / ▷▷|).

④ Pause

The mute symbol ⑨ ⇨ *page 138, fig. 159* appears in the status line in the Infotainment display. To resume playback, select and confirm **|| (pause)** again. **Or**: press the On/Off knob briefly.

⑤ Track info

Stored information (such as artist, album, track or genre) is displayed with the current track.

⑥ DVD main menu

Requirement: A video DVD must be playing and the vehicle must be stopped.

Select and confirm a menu item. **Or**: use the DVD main menu with the MMI touch control panel*.

⑦ Full screen

Requirement: a video must be playing while the vehicle is stationary.

The video image enlarges to fill the entire Infotainment display. Press the BACK button or any control button to switch the full screen display off.

⑧ Information window

Various information about the current track (such as the embedded album cover*), the playing time and remaining playing time may be displayed, depending on availability.

Tips

For optimum use of the album browser, only import audio/video files with embedded album covers up to 800x800 px into the Jukebox.

Other settings

Requirement: a source must be selected.

▸ Select: the MEDIA button > **Settings** control button.

The following settings can be selected, depending on the active source and the storage medium: ▶

Sound settings

For additional information, see ⇨ *page 204*.

Repeat options

When the function is switched on ☑, the current track or folder repeats.

Random playback also depends on the repeat options settings.

Shuffle

Requirement: an audio/video file must be playing and repeat options must be set ⇨ *page 191*.

– Repeat options **Off**: all of the files in the active source play in random order. This function is only available for the Jukebox and the CD changer*.
– **Folder** repeat option: the tracks in the current folder are played in random order.
– **Track** repeat option: the song currently being played will be repeated.

Track display

Requirement: an audio file must be playing.

– **File name**: the name of the file is displayed without the file extension.
– **Track name**: the name of the current track or the track that was just played is displayed.

Display track info

Requirement: an audio file must be playing.

Various information for the current track (such as album, artist, song) is displayed depending on availability.

Audio track

Requirement: A DVD must be playing.

The audio track (language and audio format) can be adjusted manually. The language and audio format depend on the video DVD.

Subtitles

Requirement: A DVD must be playing.

Subtitles can be selected manually for playback. The languages available depend on the DVD.

Picture format

Requirement: A video file/DVD must be playing.

Picture format: the picture format can be adjusted automatically with **Auto**. The picture width varies depending on the film format. The formats **4:3**, **5:4** and **16:9** can also be selected.

Zoom: the image is enlarged to fill the entire Infotainment display.

Original: the film is shown in the stored picture format.

Cinemascope: the image is displayed in the **2.35:1** format.

Screen settings

Requirement: a portable audio device must be connected using the iPod adapter cable plus*/AV adapter cable* ⇨ *page 185*.

Select MEDIA button > **Source** control button > **Audi music interface** (for example iPod) > **Settings** control button.

– **Brightness**: reduce or increase the brightness.
– **Contrast**: reduce or increase the contrast.
– **Color**: reduce or increase the color intensity.
– **Tint**: adjusting the color tones (with AV standard **NTSC**).
– **AV standard**: you can select the **PAL** or **NTSC** standards on the MMI for an externally connected audio device. The same standard must be selected on the device.

Input level

Requirement: a portable audio device must be connected with a 3.5 mm stereo jack adapter cable*/AV adapter cable*/iPod adapter cable (plus)* ⇨ *page 185*.

The volume of the portable device is adapted to the MMI. Audi recommends adjusting the volume of the portable device to 70 percent of the maximum output.

Wi-Fi active

See ⇨ *page 160*.

Wi-Fi settings

See ⇨ *page 160*. ▶

Parental control

Requirement: a video DVD must be playing and the password must be entered (the password set at the factory is "1234").

Playback of video DVDs can be restricted using parental control. Select and confirm the content rating (such as **Level 5**). Eight different **Content ratings** can be set for parental control. For example, if you select Level 5* for the parental control level, all DVDs from level 1-5 can be played. Video DVDs with a higher level will not play. All restrictions are canceled when the function is switched **Off**.

You can change the current password using the **Change password** function.

Tips

- Not all video DVDs have parental control.
- The **Repeat options** and **Random playback** functions switch off automatically when the source changes in the **Media** menu.
- Password entry will be locked for approximately one minute if you enter the incorrect password three times in a row. Only your authorized Audi dealer can reset the parental control password.
- The **Track display** function is not available for the Jukebox or a connected iPod ⇨ *page 191*.
- The DVD drive only supports the DTS (Digital Theater Systems) audio format.

Rear Seat Entertainment

RSE components overview

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment

The Rear Seat Entertainment, abbreviated RSE, combines different entertainment systems. The RSE control panel is located in the rear center console.

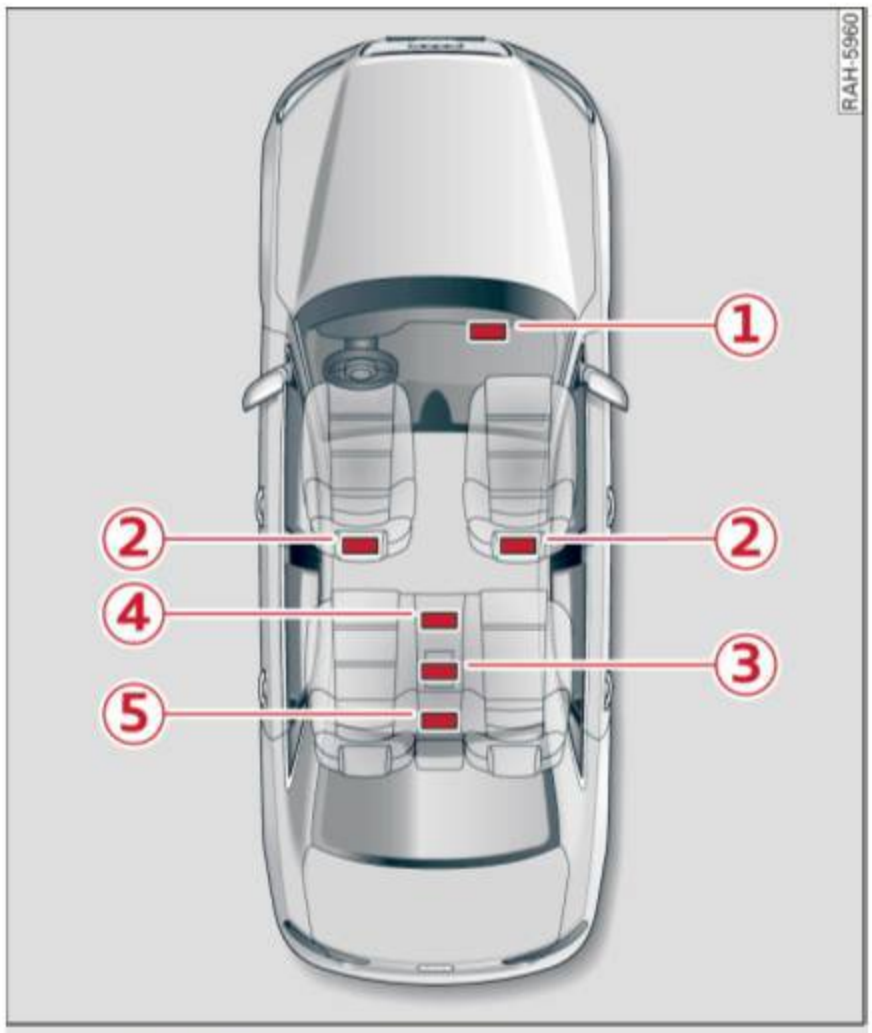


Fig. 202 RSE components

The RSE components are located centrally in the rear of the vehicle ⇨ *fig. 202*. You can also access the MMI DVD changer*.

① DVD changer*
② Left/right RSE display
③ Audi music interface
④ RSE control unit
⑤ RSE media drives

The standard RSE system is equipped with two displays, two sets of wireless headphones, a DVD drive, two SD card readers as well as an Audi music interface that can be used to connect portable audio/video devices. The RSE also has a Jukebox (20 GB memory capacity) available.

WARNING

- Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the Rear Seat Entertainment system when traffic conditions permit and always in a way that allows you to maintain complete control over your vehicle. For example, do not reach behind you when driving to operate the Rear Seat Entertainment system.
- Adjust the volume of the audio system so that signals from outside the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times.

Tips

Note that this chapter only describes RSE components. For detailed information about operating individual RSE functions, refer to the descriptions in the corresponding chapter (for example the Radio functions ⇨ *page 177*).

Switching the RSE on and off

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment

Operating the RSE corresponds to the operational concept for the MMI control panel. You use the RSE control unit for both RSE displays.

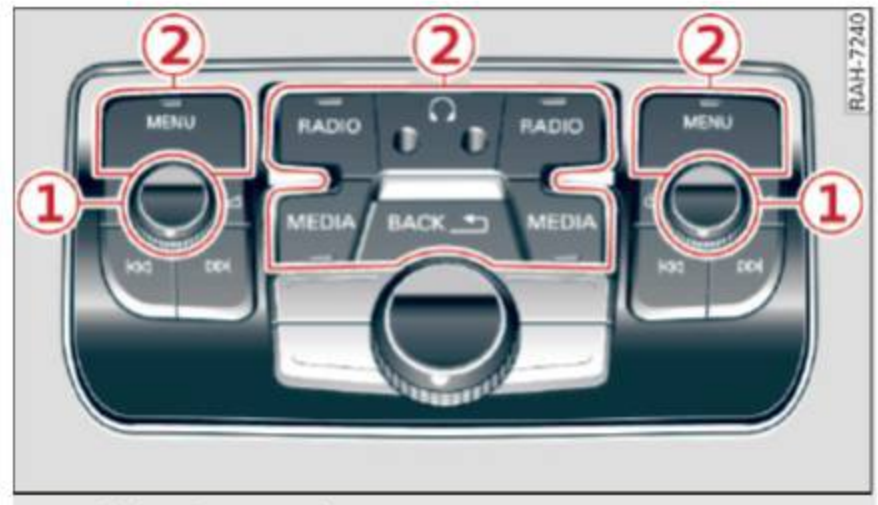


Fig. 203 RSE control unit

- **Switching the RSE on**: press the left/right On/Off knob ① ⇨ *fig. 203* briefly. **Or**: press one of the buttons to open a menu directly ② .
- **Switching the RSE off**: press and hold the left/right On/Off knob until the RSE turns off. ▶

The last selected menu is displayed when it is switched on.

When the ignition is switched off, a message indicating that the RSE is in standby mode appears in the left or right RSE display. The RSE switches off automatically if you do not press the left or right On/Off knob while the system is in standby mode.

Tips

– The RSE switches off automatically if the engine is not running and the vehicle battery is low.

– If you cannot switch the RSE on again, check the parental control settings in the MMI ⇨ *page 196*.

Adjusting the volume

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment

- **Increasing or decreasing the volume:** turn the On/Off knob to the right or left.
- **Muting**: press the On/Off knob briefly.
- **Unmuting:** press the On/Off knob briefly or turn the On/Off knob to the right.

Tips

Volume that is too high or too low is automatically adjusted to a preset level when the RSE is switched on.

Symbols

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment

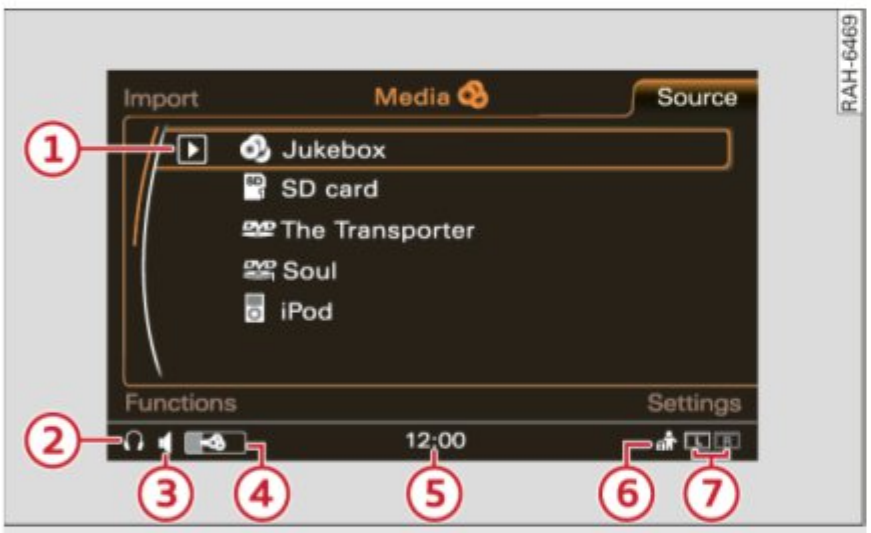


Fig. 204 RSE display symbols

	Symbol/Description	Explanation
①	▶	Active media source
②	Headphones	Audio output through headphones that are wireless or connected by a cable
③	Speaker	Audio output through the vehicle's audio system
④	Importing process	Importing audio/video files to the Jukebox ⇨ *page 182*
⑤	Time	Set time
⑥	Parental control	Parental control is switched on ⇨ *page 196*
⑦	L/R	Display for RSE when RSE control panel is active

Tips

A headphone or speaker symbol that is crossed out ②/③ ⇨ *fig. 204* indicates that the active audio/video source is muted.

Audio output

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment

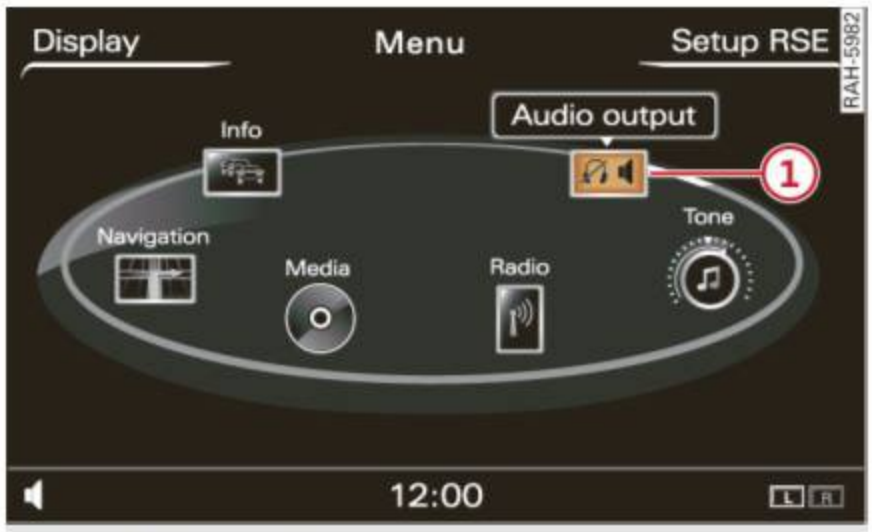


Fig. 205 Adjusting the audio output

▸ Select: the MENU button > **Audio output** (1) ⇨ *fig. 205*.

The **Audio output** for the vehicle sound system can be switched on for either the left or right RSE display. The **Audio output** for the other RSE display then plays through the wireless or wired headphones.

The active audio source is indicated by a corresponding symbol in the display (2)/(3) ⇨ *page 194, fig. 204*.

– **Switching off Audio output in the rear**: press the RADIO/MEDIA button on the MMI control panel. **Or**: deactivate the **Audio output** function ⇨ *page 196*.

If you change the station or track on the MMI control panel, the audio output in the rear will also be switched off.

Adjusting the sound

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment



Fig. 206 Sound settings (headphones connected by cable)

▸ Select: the MENU button > **Tone**.

Different sound settings can be adjusted depending on the selected **Audio output** source (headphones or vehicle sound system).

DSP [BOSE]* / DSP [Bang & Olufsen]*

See ⇨ *page 204*.

Bass / Treble / Balance/Fader (sound focus)[1)]

You can adjust the **Bass**, **Treble** and **Balance/Fader** settings by turning the control knob. The **Bass** and **Treble** settings only apply to the respective active audio source. This allows you to adjust the sound settings for each audio source separately.

Tips

Sound settings cannot be adjusted for wireless headphones that are connected to the system.

1) The sound settings can only be adjusted for audio output through the vehicle sound system.

Restarting the RSE (reset)

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment

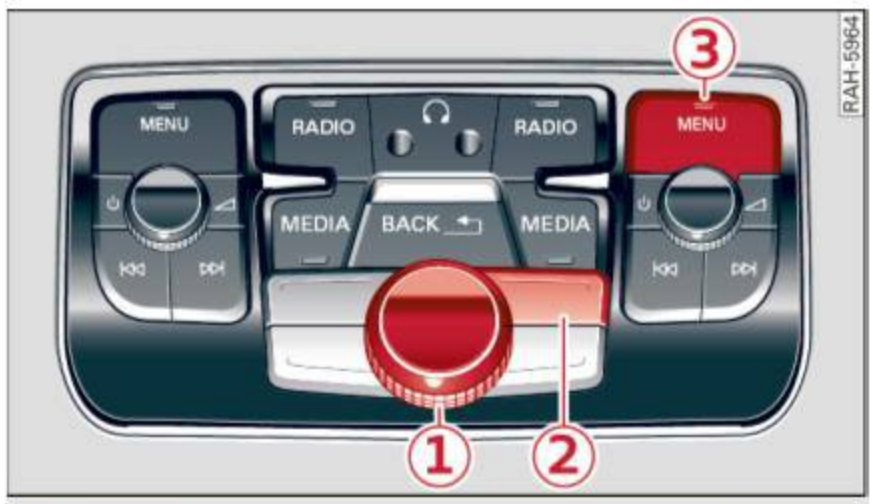


Fig. 207 Button combination to restart the system

▸ Press and hold the control knob ①, the upper right control button ② and the *right* MENU button ③ ⇨ *fig. 207 at the same time* for a brief moment and then release the buttons.

Tips

The MMI and RSE use some components at the same time. Because of this, Audi recommends restarting both systems.

Display settings

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment

▸ Select: MENU button > **Display** control button.

Turning off the display

The display switches off.

The active audio/video source does not pause when you switch the RSE display off. You can still change the station or track for the selected audio/video source using the arrow buttons.

Switching display on

Press any button on the MMI control panel.

Display brightness

You can adjust the display brightness by turning the control knob.

Parental control

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment

Selected RSE functions can be restricted or deactivated in the MMI.

▸ Select: MENU function button > **Setup MMI** control button > **Rear Seat Entertainment**.

System

When the function is switched **On**, the RSE is enabled for use. When the function is switched **Off**, the RSE is switched off and the RSE control panel is locked.

Vehicle speakers

Audio output through the vehicle speakers in the rear can be set to **Vehicle speakers** or **Headphones only**.

Operation

You can set whether all of the RSE functions (**All**) or the **Volume only** can be adjusted through the RSE.

Navigation destinations*

You can **Apply** the navigation destination automatically for active route guidance in the MMI or **Confirm** the navigation destination before transferring to the MMI.

Other settings

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment

▸ Select: the MENU button > **Setup RSE** control button.

Factory default settings

You can reset the following functions to the factory default settings:

– **Sound settings**
– **Radio**
– **Media settings**
– **Jukebox**
– **Navigation settings***

You can select the desired functions individually or all at once with the option **Select all entries**. Select and confirm **Yes**. ▸

If you reset the **Jukebox** to factory settings, all of the music/video files are deleted and the **Media settings** are reset.

Resetting the functions to the factory default settings does not affect the MMI.

System update

The RSE software can be updated by DVD, USB or SD card using the system update feature.

Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for additional information about the **System update**.

Data encryption

You can protect the list of destinations with a personal password. If the unit is replaced, you can only transfer your personal data to the new RSE unit using your password. If you do not assign a personal password, "MMI3G" is stored in the RSE automatically as the password.

Version information

Information on the software version of the RSE and the navigation database is displayed.

Headphones

Wireless headphones

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment

The wireless headphones must be paired with the RSE one time and labeled.

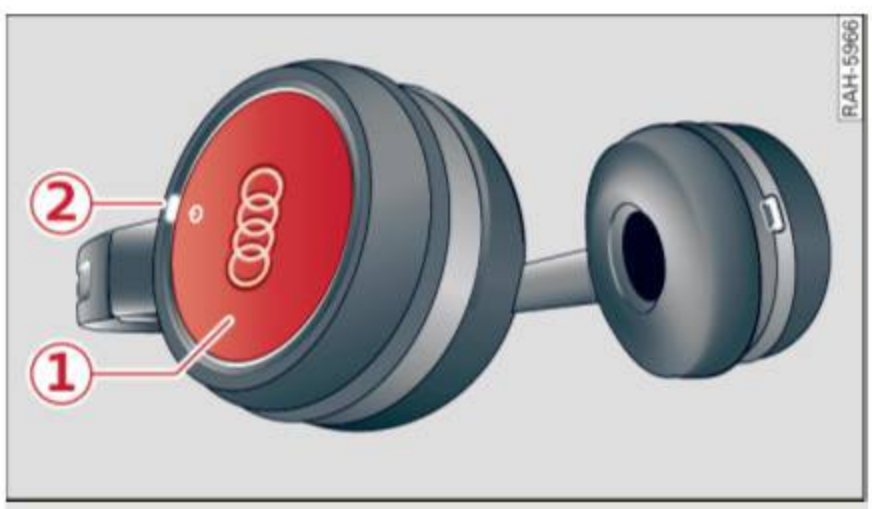


Fig. 208 Switching wireless headphones on/off



Fig. 209 Labeling the wireless headphones

Pairing wireless headphones

Requirement: the protective film on the battery compartment must be removed ⇨ *page 198, fig. 210* and the wireless headphones must be switched off.

– **Preparing the headphones for the pairing process**: press and hold the On/Off button ⏻ ① ⇨ *fig. 208* on the right earpiece (R) for at least **5 seconds** until the LED ② starts blinking and then blinks **quickly**.
– **Pairing the headphones**: select the MENU button > **Setup RSE** > **Headphones** > **Find wireless headphones** > **OK** > *desired headphones from the list*

Repeat this procedure on the second set of wireless headphones.

You can determine the connection status of the wireless headphones based on the rate at which the light is blinking:

Blinking speed	Connection status
Blinking quickly	The wireless headphones are ready for the pairing process (they can be paired)
Blinking	Establishing a connection with the RSE (when the wireless headphones are switched on)
Blinking slowly	The connection to the RSE has been established (the wireless headphones are already paired)

Labeling the wireless headphones

– Attach the supplied label ① or ② ⇨ *fig. 209* on the inside of the left/right wireless headphones.

Labeling the wireless headphones:

① Wireless headphones label (paired with the left RSE display)

② Wireless headphones label (paired with the right RSE display)

Switching wireless headphones on/off

– **Switching on**: to switch the wireless headphones on, press the On/Off button ⏻ ① ⇨ *fig. 208* on the right earpiece (R) for approximately **3 seconds** and release it once the LED ② starts blinking. The light ② will blink slowly once the connection to the wireless headphones has been established.
– **Switching off**: to switch the wireless headphones off, press and hold the On/Off button ⏻ ① until the LED ② turns off.

The wireless headphones switch off automatically about five minutes after the RSE switches off.

Disconnect wireless headphones

You can delete the pairing between the wireless headphones and the RSE if you need to switch out the headphones or change the pairing.

– Select: MENU button > **Setup RSE** control button > **Headphones** > **Delete wireless headphones**.

WARNING

– For safety reasons, as the driver, only use the headphones when the vehicle is stationary to reduce the risk of a crash.
– When driving, store the headphones securely so that they do not move around in the vehicle interior when braking or in a crash.
– Maintain a moderate volume level when listening to audio playback through the headphones. Continuous exposure to extreme volume levels may result in loss of hearing.

Tips

– If the wireless headphones were already paired, the connection to the headphones will be reestablished after switching the RSE on if the headphones are switched on.
– The RSE only supports wireless headphones from your authorized Audi dealer.
– Audio/video output through the wireless headphones stops during the pairing process.
– The pairing process must be done separately for the left and right wireless headphones. The wireless headphones are assigned to the left or right RSE display depending on the side of the RSE control unit where you started the pairing process. The pairing between the wireless headphones and the left/right RSE display is identified with a label.
– Volume that is too high or too low is automatically adjusted to a preset level when the wireless headphones are connected.

Charging and changing the battery

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment

If the light on the wireless headphones turns red, the batteries are low and need to be charged or replaced.

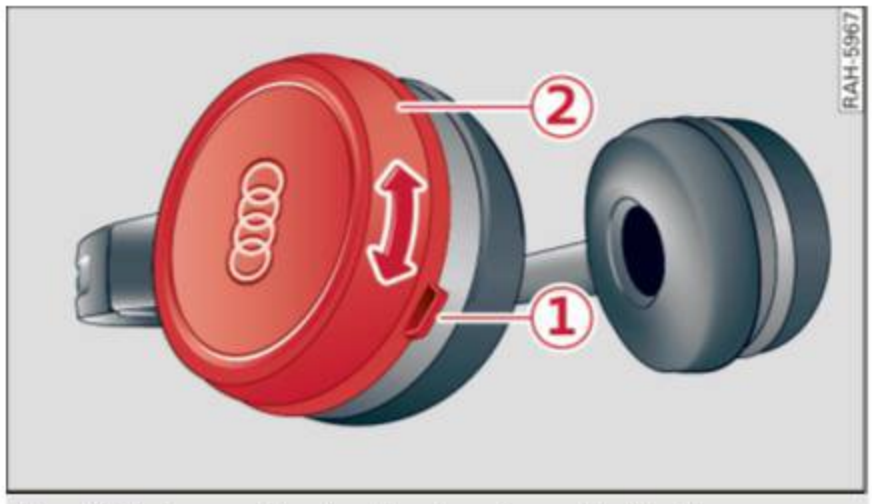


Fig. 210 Connection for the charging cable/battery compartment

– **Charging the battery**: connect the charging cable to the connection ① ⇨ *fig. 210* on the bottom side of the left earpiece (L). Then connect the charging cable to the cigarette lighter*/12 Volt socket* in the rear center console. **Or**: charge the battery for the wireless headphones ▶

with the mini USB adapter cable through the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 185*.

– **Changing the batteries**: turn the cover ② ⇨ *fig. 210* on the left earpiece (L) to the left/right and change the batteries as labeled in the battery compartment. Then attach the cover back on to the left earpiece (L).

You can identify the charge status of the battery ⇨ *table on page 199* based on the blinking speed of the LED in the charging cable connection ① ⇨ *fig. 210*.

Blinking frequency	Charge status
Blinking	The batteries are charging.
Remains on	The batteries are charged.
Blinking quickly	An error occurred while charging.

WARNING

– Do not use damaged rechargeable batteries. This increases the risk of an explosion.
– The headphones can become warm when the batteries are charging and increase the risk of injury.
– Do not charge standard batteries with the charging cable. This increases the risk of an explosion.
– Be careful when using the cigarette lighter. Inattentive or unsupervised use of the cigarette lighter can cause burns.
– The cigarette lighter/sockets and any electrical accessories connected to them function only when the ignition is switched on. Using the cigarette lighter/sockets or electrical accessories incorrectly can lead to serious injuries or cause a fire. To reduce the risk of injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle with the vehicle key.

Note

– Do not charge the batteries in the wireless headphones when the engine is not running. This will drain the vehicle battery.
– For wireless headphones, only use batteries that are approved for that type of device, for example NiMH batteries with a minimum capacity of 550 mAh in AAA size that are suitable for quick charging.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries contain polluting substances. They must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash.

Tips

The charging time for the included rechargeable batteries is approximately three to four hours and may increase by approximately 25 percent if the batteries are in use while charging.

Headphones connected by cable

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment

The headphone connections are located on the RSE control unit.



Fig. 211 Connecting wired headphones

▸ Insert the headphone connector into the left or right jack ① ⇨ *fig. 211* on the RSE control panel.

The unit is equipped with 3.5 mm stereo jacks.

The wireless headphones switch off automatically about five minutes after the cable headphones are connected.

Tips

Volume that is too high or too low is automatically adjusted to a preset level when the wired headphones are connected.

Media drives/ connections

Overview

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment

The RSE media drives are located above the pass-through behind a blind. Slide the blind upward to open the RSE media drives.

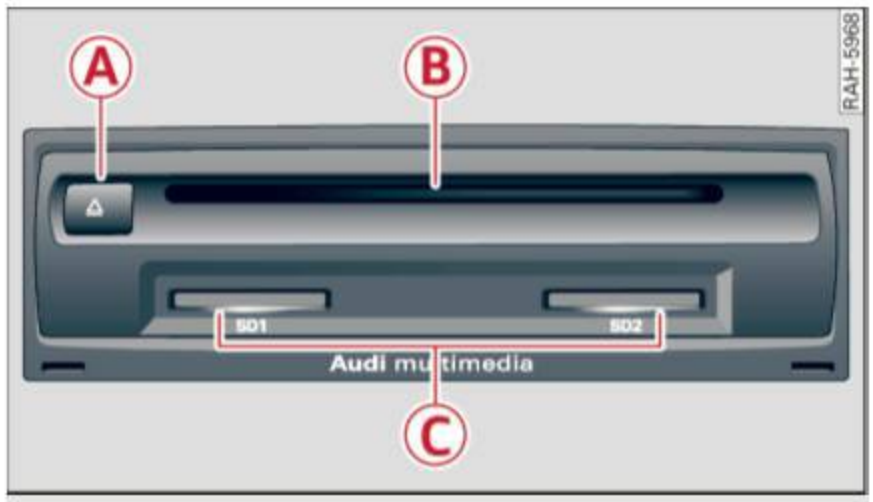


Fig. 212 RSE media drives

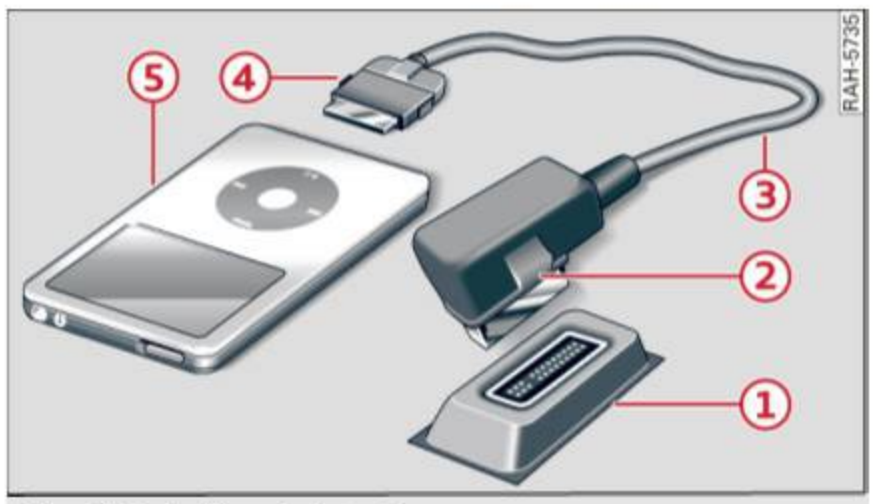


Fig. 213 Audi music interface

RSE media drive overview ⇨ *fig. 212*:

Ⓐ Eject button

Ⓑ DVD slot

Ⓒ SD card reader

The RSE Audi music interface ⇨ *fig. 213* is located in the storage compartment under the center armrest ③ ⇨ *page 193, fig. 202*. You can connect a portable audio device (such as an iPod or USB storage device) to the Audi music interface using a special adapter cable*.

① Interface on Audi music interface

② Jack for connecting to the Audi music interface

③ Adapter cable* (such as iPod adapter cable*)

④ iPod jack on the iPod adapter cable*

⑤ iPod

The RSE media drives and the Audi music interface are started and operated through the RSE. The design and properties of the RSE media drives are the same as the MMI drives. You can find detailed information on ⇨ *page 180*.

Tips

– The DVD changer* is located in the vehicle glove compartment. For more information on the DVD changer*, refer to ⇨ *page 181*.

– You can only access the DVD changer* in the MMI through the RSE. The other MMI media drives are not available from the rear of the vehicle.

Navigation

Opening navigation

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment and navigation system

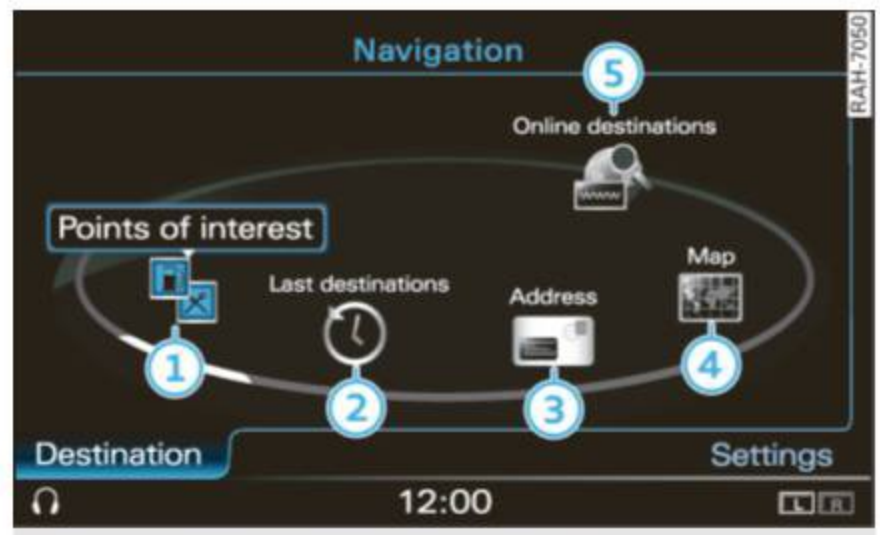


Fig. 214 Navigation main functions (RSE)

▸ Select: the MENU button > **Navigation**.

After selecting Navigation, the last menu that was open is displayed.

– **Displaying navigation functions**: press the **Route guidance** control button.

The following functions are available for planning a destination:

① Enter point of interest

② Load last destination

③ Enter a destination using an address

④ Open the map/use a destination from the map ▶

⑤ Searching for a destination online [1)]

The route is calculated based on various route criteria. To set the criteria, you must first plan a destination and then display the route in the RSE display using the **Display route** function. When you transfer a planned destination to the MMI using the **Send destination to the driver** function, the criteria are transferred automatically.

A planned destination is shown in the RSE display in white and active route guidance is marked in blue.

Displaying a route

The planned destination and the distance to the destination/arrival time are displayed on the map. The route is calculated based on the current vehicle location and can be updated.

To display active route guidance on the map, select the **Destination** control button > **Exit route display**.

Send destination to the driver

To start route guidance for a planned route, the destination must be transferred to the MMI. If the **Destinations** are set to **Confirm** in the **Setup MMI** menu ⇨ *page 196*, the destination must be confirmed before transferring to the MMI.

Tips

- The display of navigation functions is synchronized to both RSE displays.
- Refer to the notes in the chapter **About Audi connect** ⇨ *page 162*.
- The content, scope and providers of offered Audi connect services may vary.
- The navigation functions match those in the MMI to a large extent. For more information, refer to ⇨ *page 165*.
- The functions for the online Street View ⇨ *page 159* can also be used in the RSE while driving.
- If **On request** is selected for the data connection in the **Data connection** menu ⇨ *page 161*, receiving data packets, such as weather information, must be confirmed in the MMI.

Accessing traffic information

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment and navigation system

▸ Select: the MENU button > **Info**.

– **Opening a detailed view of traffic information**: select and confirm the traffic information from the list.
– **Opening the next traffic report**: select and confirm **Show next report**.

Tips

For more information on accessing traffic information, refer to ⇨ *page 175*.

Accessing Audi connect services

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment, navigation system and Audi connect

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect services must be met ⇨ *page 157*.

▸ Select: the MENU button > **Audi connect** > *the desired Audi connect service*.

– **For example, display weather information**: select and confirm **Weather**. Select and confirm the desired search area: **In immediate vicinity**/ **In vicinity of destination or stopover** or **In new city**. Enter a location and confirm the input with **OK**.

Tips

- Refer to the notes in the chapter **About Audi connect** ⇨ *page 162*.
- Additional information about accessing Audi connect services can be found under ⇨ *page 157*.

Entertainment systems

Listening to the radio

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment

▸ Select: the RADIO button. ▶

1) Applies to vehicles with Audi connect

The radio functions match those in the MMI. For more information on the **Radio** menu, refer to ⇨ *page 177*.

You can store a separate presets list in the RSE that may contain up to 50 stations from all frequency bands. You can also display the station name for the selected radio station or change the station sorting separately in both RSE displays.

Playing media

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment

▸ Select: MEDIA button.

The media functions match those in the MMI to a large extent. For more information on the **Media** menu, refer to ⇨ *page 189*.

Possible sources are:

① Jukebox
② SD card reader
③ DVD drive
④ DVD changer*
⑤ Audi music interface (such as iPod, USB or external audio/video input)

Different functions are available depending on the active source and the medium inserted.

Tips

– The **Album browser** function is not available in the RSE.
– The copy and delete process cannot be started simultaneously when accessing the Jukebox from both systems at the same time.

Video playback information

Playback combinations

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment

When selecting the same video source, both sound and picture will play through both RSE displays.

If different video sources are started on both RSE displays, only certain picture/sound playback combinations are possible and they depend on the selected video sources.

Complete output format (sound and video image) on both RSE displays

Select a video DVD as the first video source in the DVD drive and then the following source:

– DVD changer*
– Audi music interface with AV adapter cable*/ iPod adapter cable plus*

Playing only sound on the second RSE display

There is only sound output for the second video source if you:

– Start a video DVD in the DVD drive as the first source and select a video file from the Jukebox or the SD card as the second source.
– Start a video file from the Jukebox as the first source, and select a video file from the SD card or from the Audi music interface using an AV adapter cable*/USB adapter cable*/iPod adapter cable plus* as the second source and vice-versa.
– Start a video DVD/video file in the DVD changer* as the first source, and select a video file from the Jukebox, SD card or from the Audi music interface using an AV adapter cable*/USB adapter cable*/iPod adapter cable plus* as the second source.

No picture/sound playback on the second RSE display

If a video file from the Jukebox, from an SD card or from the Audi music interface with the USB adapter cable* is already playing on one RSE display, playback of a video DVD in the DVD drive on the other RSE display is not possible.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Entertainment

Problem	Solution
RSE control panel: the RSE will not turn on.	Check the parental control settings ⇨ *page 196* in the MMI.
Wireless headphones: the connection status for the wireless headphones is incorrect ⇨ *table on page 197*.	Switch the wireless headphones off and back on. When switching them on, make sure to press and hold the On/Off button ⏻ ① ⇨ *page 197, fig. 208* on the right earpiece (R) for approximately **3 seconds** and then release the button as soon as the light ② begins blinking ⇨ *page 197, fig. 208*.
Wireless headphones: the left/right wireless headphones were switched.	You can determine the pairing between the wireless headphones and the left/right RSE display using the label on the inside of the left/right wireless headphones ⇨ *page 197, fig. 209*. Make sure you are only connecting the wireless headphones that are allocated to that RSE display.
Wireless headphones: no function.	Check if the wireless headphones were paired initially to the RSE ⇨ *page 197*. **Or**: the batteries must be charged or replaced ⇨ *page 198*.
Wireless headphones: a connection could not be made.	Switch the wireless headphones off and back on.

4H0012721BD

System settings

Setting the time and date

You can set the clock time manually or using the GPS.



Fig. 215 Setting a time zone

▸ Select: the MENU button > the upper left **Time** control button (1) ⇨ *fig. 215*.

Time source

GPS: the **Time** and **Date** are set by GPS based on the **Time zone** that was selected manually. Always remember to set the new **Time zone** in the MMI when the vehicle enters a different time zone.

Manual: you can set the **Time** and **Date** manually using the respective function. Press the control knob. Set the **Time** or the **Date** manually by turning and pressing the control knob.

Automatic daylight saving time*

When daylight saving time is switched **On**, the time is moved forward or back automatically by one hour when daylight saving time begins or ends.

Man. daylight sav. time

When this function is switched **On**, an hour is added to the set **Time**.

Time zone

When selecting the appropriate time zone, a sampling of countries in this zone will be listed.

Time format

If you select **24h**, the clock will display, for example, **13:00**. If you select **AM/PM**, the clock will display, for example, **1:00 PM**.

Date format

If you select **DD.MM**, the date will display, for example, **31.12**. If you select **MM/DD**, the date will display, for example, **12/31**.

Adjusting the sound

The sound distribution and volume of the MMI can be adjusted individually. The settings depend on vehicle equipment.

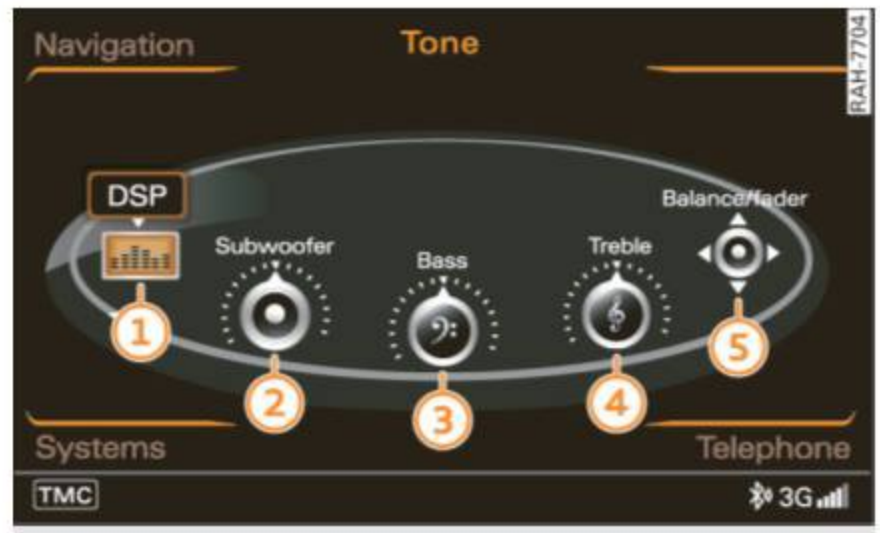


Fig. 216 Sound settings



Fig. 217 Adjusting the balance/fader

▸ Select: TONE button.

(1) GALA* / DSP* / DSP [BOSE]* / DSP [Bang & Olufsen]*

– **GALA (Speed-dependent volume increase)***: select and confirm **Active/Inactive** for the adjustment of playback volume to the level of noise inside the vehicle.

– **Sound focus (adjusting the sound distribution)***: select and confirm **All** (symmetrical ▶

sound distribution)/**Driver** (sound distribution aimed toward the driver) or **All**/**Front**/**Rear**.

– **Surround level***: you can adjust the volume of the surround effect by turning the control knob.
– **AudioPilot (dynamic road noise compensation)***: select and confirm **Active**/**Inactive**. When the function is active, the volume is automatically adjusted depending on the level of noise inside the vehicle.
– **Sound focus* (adjusting the sound distribution)**: select and confirm **All** (symmetrical sound distribution)/**Movie** (optimal sound distribution for playing a movie)/**Front**/**Rear**.
– **Volume balancing***: the dynamic road noise compensation can be adjusted by turning the control knob.

② Subwoofer* / ③ Bass / ④ Treble

You can adjust the **Subwoofer***, **Bass** and **Treble** settings by turning the control knob. The changed settings only apply for the audio source that is active at the time. This allows you to adjust the sound settings for each audio source separately.

⑤ Balance/Fader (sound focus)

– **Adjusting the sound distribution using the MMI touch**: move your finger on the MMI touch control panel in the desired direction.

Adjusting the system volume

▸ Select: the MENU button > **Tone**.

Navigation* control button

Voice guidance volume/Entertainment volume: volume of navigation prompts during active route guidance. Music volume during navigation prompts means that the volume of audio playback is temporarily lowered when the parking system or voice guidance is active.

Voice guidance: refer to ⇨ *page 174*.

Voice guidance on during call: see ⇨ *page 174*.

Telephone* control button

Ring tone volume/Call volume: you can adjust the selected ring tone volume or call volume by turning the control knob. The **Call volume** can only be adjusted during a call.

Systems control button

Voice recognition volume.: you can adjust the volume of the announcements by turning the control knob.

MMI touch volume*: the volume of the MMI touch prompts can be adjusted by turning the control knob.

Other settings

▸ Select: the MENU button > **Setup MMI** control button.

Language

The language can be changed for the Infotainment display, the driver information system display, voice guidance* and the voice recognition system*.

English, French and Spanish are available.

Measurement units

The following measurement units can be set in the Infotainment display and driver information system.

– **Speed** (mph or km/h)
– **Distance** (miles or kilometers)
– **Temperature** (°F or °C)
– **Fuel consumption** (l/100km, mpg (US), mpg (UK) or km/l)
– **Volume** (liters, gallons (UK) or gallons (US))

Voice recognition

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Command display: the display of possible commands during voice input can be switched **On** or **Off**.

Short dialogue: prompts in a shorter format can be switched **On** or **Off**.

Input signal: the **beep** input signal during a dialog can be switched **On** or **Off**. ▶

Voice recognition volume: you can adjust the volume of the announcements by turning the control knob.

Individual speech training (only when the vehicle is stationary): you can adapt the voice recognition system to your voice or pronunciation in order to improve the system's ability to recognize your speech. Individual training is comprised of 40 speech entries that consist of commands and sequences of numbers. You can delete the programmed voice training using **Reset speech training**.

Delete all name tags: all of the name tags that you have stored (spoken names) are deleted.

Display brightness

You can adjust the Infotainment display brightness by turning the control knob.

Factory settings

You can reset the following functions to the factory default settings:

– **Sound settings**
– **Radio**
– **Media settings**
– **Jukebox**
– **Directory***
– **Telephone***
– **Bluetooth***
– **Navigation settings***
– **Navigation and online memory***
– **Voice recognition system**

You can select the desired functions individually or all at once with the **Select all entries** option. Select and confirm **Restore factory default settings**.

If you reset the **Jukebox** to factory settings, all of the music/video files are deleted and the **Media settings** are reset.

System update

The MMI software, such as the navigation data*, can be updated by DVD, USB or SD card using the system update feature.

For more information about the **System update**, visit **www.audiusa.com/bluetooth** or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Data encryption

You can protect your personal data, such as contacts in the directory, destinations in navigation* and name tags with a personal password. If the unit is replaced, you can only transfer your personal data to the new MMI unit using your password. The default password “MMI3G” is valid until you assign a personal password.

Version information

Information on the software version of the MMI and the navigation database* is displayed.

Driving safety

Basics

Safe driving habits

Please remember - safety first!

This chapter contains important information, tips, instructions and warnings that you need to read and observe for your own safety, the safety of your passengers and others. We have summarized here what you need to know about safety belts, airbags, child restraints as well as child safety. Your safety is for us *priority number 1*. Always observe the information and warnings in this section - for your own safety as well as that of your passengers.

The information in this section applies to all model versions of your vehicle. Some of the features described in this sections may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

- Always make sure that you follow the instructions and heed the WARNINGS in this Manual. It is in your interest and in the interest of your passengers.
- Always keep the complete Owner's Literature in your Audi when you lend or sell your vehicle so that this important information will always be available to the driver and passengers.
- Always keep the Owner's literature handy so that you can find it easily if you have questions.

Safety equipment

The safety features are part of the occupant restraint system and work together to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide variety of accident situations.

Your safety and the safety of your passengers should not be left to chance. Advances in technology have made a variety of features available to help reduce the risk of injury in an accident.

The following is a list of just a few of the safety features in your Audi:

- sophisticated safety belts for driver and all passenger seating positions,
- safety belt pretensioners,
- safety belt force limiters for the front seats,
- safety belt height adjustment systems for the front seats,
- front airbags,
- knee airbags for the front seats
- side airbags in the front seats and outer rear seats,
- side curtain airbags,
- special LATCH anchorages for child restraints,
- head restraints for each seating position,
- adjustable steering column.

These individual safety features, can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of accidents. These features cannot work as a system if they are not always correctly adjusted and correctly used.

Safety is everybody's responsibility!

Important things to do before driving

Safety is everybody's job! Vehicle and occupant safety always depends on the informed and careful driver.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, **before driving always:**

- ▸ Make sure that all lights and signals are operating correctly.
- ▸ Make sure that the tire pressure is correct.
- ▸ Make sure that all windows are clean and afford good visibility to the outside.
- ▸ Secure all luggage and other items carefully ⇨ *page 65*, ⇨ *page 63*.
- ▸ Make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
- ▸ Adjust front seat, head restraint and mirrors correctly for your height.
- ▸ Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height.
- ▸ Make sure to use the right child restraint correctly to protect children ⇨ *page 248, Child safety*.

- ▸ Sit properly in your seat and make sure that your passengers do the same ⇨ *page 54, Seats and storage*.
- ▸ Fasten your safety belt and wear it properly. Also instruct your passengers to fasten their safety belts properly ⇨ *page 218*.

What impairs driving safety?

Safe driving is directly related to the condition of the vehicle, the driver as well as the driver's ability to concentrate on the road without being distracted.

The driver is responsible for the safety of the vehicle and all of its occupants. If your ability to drive is impaired, safety risks for everybody in the vehicle increase and you also become a hazard to everyone else on the road ⇨ ⚠. Therefore:

- ▸ Do not let yourself be distracted by passengers or by using a cellular telephone.
- ▸ NEVER drive when your driving ability is impaired (by medications, alcohol, drugs, etc.).
- ▸ Observe all traffic laws, rules of the road and speed limits and plain common sense.
- ▸ ALWAYS adjust your speed to road, traffic and weather conditions.
- ▸ Take frequent breaks on long trips. Do not drive for more than two hours at a stretch.
- ▸ Do NOT drive when you are tired, under pressure or when you are stressed.

⚠ WARNING

Impaired driving safety increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

Correct passenger seating positions

Proper seating position for the driver

The proper driver seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

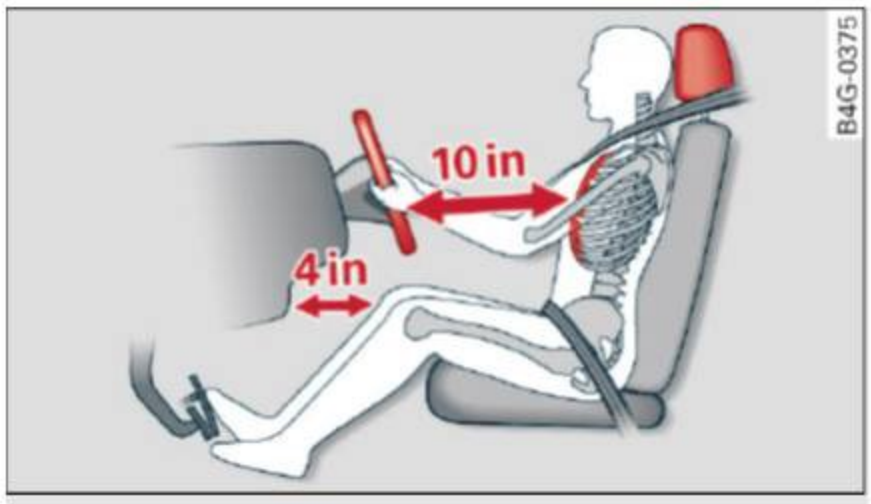


Fig. 218 Correct seating position

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the driver's seat to the following position:

- ▸ Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position so that your back comes in full contact with it when you drive.
- ▸ Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the steering wheel and your breast bone ⇨ *fig. 218*. If not possible, see your authorized Audi dealership about adaptive equipment.
- ▸ Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel and airbag cover points at your chest and not at your face.
- ▸ Grasp the top of the steering wheel with your elbow(s) slightly bent.
- ▸ Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible.
- ▸ Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 221*.
- ▸ Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in control of the vehicle at all times. ▶

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇨ *page 54*.

WARNING

Drivers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.
- Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
- Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in a collision.
- Always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
- Before driving, always adjust the front seats and head restraints properly and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.
- Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.
- Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
- Children must always ride in child seats ⇨ *page 248*. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 226*.

Proper seating position for the front passenger

The proper front passenger seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the seat for the front passenger to the following position:

- ▸ Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position and your back comes in full contact with it whenever the vehicle is moving.
- ▸ Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 210*.
- ▸ Keep both feet flat on the floor in front of the front passenger seat.
- ▸ Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 221*.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger's seat, see ⇨ *page 54*.

WARNING

Front seat passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by the airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Passengers must always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
- Passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye.

▶

– Always make sure that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel.
– Always make sure that there are at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the front passenger's knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Before driving, always adjust the front passenger seat and head restraint properly.
– Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child seats ⇨ *page 248*. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 226*.

Proper seating positions for passengers in rear seats

Rear seat passengers must sit upright with both feet on the floor consistent with their physical size and be properly restrained whenever the vehicle is in use.

To reduce the risk of injury caused by an incorrect seating position in the event of a sudden braking maneuver or an accident, your passengers on the rear bench seat must always observe the following:

- ▸ For adjustable head restraints: Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 210*.
- ▸ Keep both feet flat in the footwell in front of the rear seat.
- ▸ Fasten and wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 221*.
- ▸ Make sure that children are always properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their size and age ⇨ *page 248*.

WARNING

Passengers who are improperly seated on the rear seat can be seriously injured in a crash.
– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Safety belts only offer maximum protection when the safety belts are properly positioned on the body and securely latched. By not sitting upright, a rear seat passenger increases the risk of personal injury from improperly positioned safety belts!
– Always adjust the head restraint properly so that it can give maximum protection.

Proper adjustment of head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraints are an important part of your vehicle's occupant restraint system and can help to reduce the risk of injuries in accident situations.

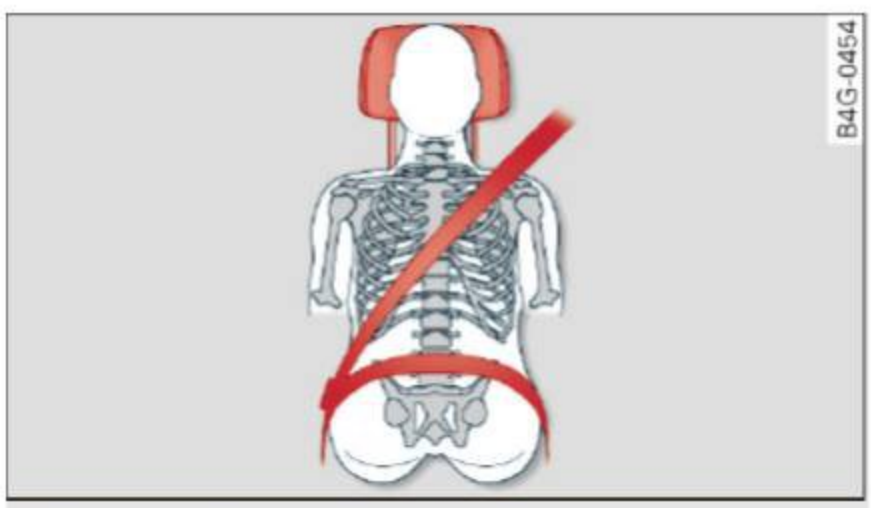


Fig. 219 Head restraint: viewed from the front

The head restraints must be correctly adjusted to achieve the best protection.

- ▸ For adjustable head restraints: adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it ▶

is as close to this position as possible. ⇨ *fig. 219*.

Adjusting head restraints ⇨ *page 58*.

Crash - active head restraints

In the event of a rear-end collision, it is possible that the crash-active head restraints on the driver's seat and front passenger's seat[1)] are triggered. On head restraints that have been triggered, the padding protrudes forwards by several centimeters. Drive the vehicle to your authorized Audi dealer without delay and have the function of the active head restraints restored.

WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically. To help reduce the risk of injury:

- Always drive with the head restraints in place and properly adjusted.
- Every person in the vehicle must have a properly adjusted head restraint.
- Always make sure each person in the vehicle properly adjusts their head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible.
- Never attempt to adjust head restraint while driving. If you have driven off and must adjust the driver headrest for any reason, first stop the vehicle safely before attempting to adjust the head restraint.
- Children must always be properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their age and size ⇨ *page 248*.

Examples of improper seating positions

The occupant restraint system can only reduce the risk of injury if vehicle occupants are properly seated.

Improper seating positions can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are properly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the proper seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

▸ Never allow anyone to assume an incorrect seating position when the vehicle is being used ⇨ ⚠.

The following bulletins list only some sample positions that will increase the risk of serious injury and death. Our hope is that these examples will make you more aware of seating positions that are dangerous.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

- never stand up in the vehicle
- never stand on the seats
- never kneel on the seats
- never ride with the seatback reclined
- never lie down on the rear seat
- never lean up against the instrument panel
- never sit on the edge of the seat
- never sit sideways
- never lean out the window
- never put your feet out the window
- never put your feet on the instrument panel
- never rest your feet on the seat cushion or back of the seat
- never ride in the footwell
- never ride in the cargo area ▶

1) Vehicles with reclining rear seat: This function is not available for the front passenger's seat.

WARNING

Improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

– Always make sure that all vehicle occupants stay in a proper seating position and are properly restrained whenever the vehicle is being used.

Driver's and front passenger's footwell

Important safety instructions

WARNING

Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between yourself and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.

– No persons (children) or animals should ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.
– No objects of any kind should be carried in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can hamper or prevent proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.

Pedal area

Pedals

The pedals must always be free to move and must never be interfered with by a floor mat or any other object.

Make sure that all pedals move freely without interference and that nothing prevents them from returning to their original positions.

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be secured with floor mat fasteners.

If a brake circuit fails, increased brake pedal travel is required to bring the vehicle to a full stop.

WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious injury.

– Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate!
– Always make sure that nothing can fall or move into the driver's footwell.

Floor mats on the driver side

Always use floor mats that can be securely attached to the floor mat fasteners and do not interfere with the free movement of the pedals.

▸ Make sure that the floor mats are properly secured and cannot move and interfere with the pedals ⇨ ⚠.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and that are firmly secured so that they cannot slip out of position. You can obtain suitable floor mats from your authorized Audi Dealer.

Floor mat fasteners are installed in your Audi.

Floor mats used in your vehicle must be attached to these fasteners. Properly securing the floor mats will prevent them from sliding into positions that could interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can result in a loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

– Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.
– Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings in the vehicle that cannot be properly secured in place to prevent them from slipping and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.

▶

– Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats. Additional floor mats and other coverings will reduce the size of the pedal area and interfere with the pedals.
– Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been taken out for cleaning.
– Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under the brake pedal and accelerator pedal causing a loss of vehicle control.

Storing cargo correctly

Loading the luggage compartment

All luggage and other objects must be properly stowed and secured in the luggage compartment.

Loose items in the luggage compartment can shift suddenly, changing vehicle handling characteristics. Loose items can also increase the risk of serious personal injury in a sudden vehicle maneuver or in a collision.

▸ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
▸ Always place and properly secure heavy items in the luggage compartment as far forward as possible.
▸ Secure luggage items using the tie-downs provided ⇨ *page 65*.

WARNING

Improperly stored luggage or other items can fly through the vehicle causing serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:
– Always put objects, for example, luggage or other heavy items in the luggage compartment.
– Always secure objects in the luggage compartment using the tie-down hooks and suitable straps.

WARNING

Heavy loads will influence the way your vehicle handles. To help reduce the risk of a loss of control leading to serious personal injury:
– Always keep in mind when transporting heavy objects, that a change in the center of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling:
  – Always distribute the load as evenly as possible.
  – Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
– Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating specified on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight standards can cause the vehicle to slide and handle differently.
– Please observe information on safe driving ⇨ *page 207*.

WARNING

To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving.
– Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.
– If you absolutely must drive with the rear lid open, observe the following notes to reduce the risk of poisoning:
  – Close all windows,
  – Close the power roof,
  – Open all air outlets in the instrument panel,
  – Switch off the air recirculation,
  – Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.

WARNING

Always make sure that the doors, all windows, the power roof and the rear lid are securely closed and locked to reduce the risk of injury when the vehicle is not being used.
– After closing the rear lid, always make sure that it is properly closed and locked. ▶

– Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and close the rear lid becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury.
– Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
– Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. Vehicle occupants must always be properly restrained in one of the vehicle's seating positions.

Tips

– Air circulation helps to reduce window fogging. Stale air escapes to the outside through vents in the trim panel, on the left side of the luggage compartment. Be sure to keep these slots free and open.
– The tire pressure must correspond to the load. The tire pressure is shown on the tire pressure label. The tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. The tire pressure label lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and the tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For recommended tire pressures for normal load conditions, please see chapter ⇨ *page 294*.

Tie-downs

The luggage compartment is equipped with four tie-downs to secure luggage and other items.

Use the tie-downs to secure your cargo properly ⇨ *page 213, Loading the luggage compartment*.

In a collision, the laws of physics mean that even smaller items that are loose in the vehicle will become heavy missiles that can cause serious injury. Items in the vehicle possess energy which vary with vehicle speed and the weight of the item. Vehicle speed is the most significant factor.

For example, in a frontal collision at a speed of 30 mph (48 km/h), the forces acting on a 10-lb (4.5 kg) object are about 20 times the normal weight of the item. This means that the weight of the item would suddenly be about 200 lbs. (90 kg). You can imagine the injuries that a 200 lbs. (90 kg) item flying freely through the passenger compartment could cause in a collision like this.

WARNING

Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to tie-downs can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.
– Always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward as dangerous missiles.
– Never attach a child safety seat tether strap to a tie-down.

Reporting Safety Defects Applicable to U.S.A.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Audi of America, Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defects exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, ▶

your dealer, or Audi of America, Inc.

To contact the NHTSA, you may either call:

Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153) or 1-800-424-9393

or you may write to:

NHTSA
U.S. Department of Transportation
1200 New Jersey Ave., S.E.
West Building
Washington, DC 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from:

http://www.safercar.gov

Applicable to Canada

If you live in Canada and you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls. You should also notify Audi Canada.

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may either call Transport Canada toll-free at:

Tel.: 1-800-333-0510 or
Tel.: 1-819-994-3328 (Ottawa region and from other countries)
TTY for hearing impaired: Tel.: 1-888-675-6863

or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Transport Canada
Motor Vehicle Safety Investigations Laboratory
80 Noel Street
Gatineau, QC
J8Z 0A1

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm

4H0012721BD

Audi pre sense

Preventative passenger protection

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

Pre sense can initiate steps to protect vehicle occupants in certain dangerous situations. The functions described are available depending on vehicle equipment:

Audi pre sense basic

The following functions can be triggered in certain driving situations:

– Tightening of the safety belts (for example, during heavy braking): the front safety belts have reversible belt tensioners. If a collision does not occur, the safety belts loosen slightly and are ready to trigger again.
– Closing the windows and the sunroof*

The function of the pre sense basic is activated at a speed of 20 mph (30 km/h) or higher. The deployment time is adapted in the drive select dynamic mode.

Audi pre sense front (vehicles with adaptive cruise control*)

Pre sense front contains the functions of pre sense basic. In addition, the likelihood of a rear-end collision with the vehicle ahead is also calculated, within the limits of the system. If the risk of a collision is detected, the following functions can trigger:

– Audi braking guard ⇨ *page 99*
– Tensioning of the safety belts
– Closing the windows and the sunroof*

Audi pre sense rear (vehicles with side assist*)

Pre sense rear contains the functions of pre sense basic. In addition, the likelihood of a rear-end collision from the vehicle behind is also calculated, within the limits of the system. If the risk of a collision is detected, the following functions can trigger:

– Tensioning of the safety belts
– Closing the windows and the sunroof*
– Adjusting the seats: the settings for the power head restrains, the upper sections of the backrests and the pneumatic side bolsters* change on the front seats and the outer rear seats*. If a collision does not occur, the seat settings that were previously used are restored.

Audi pre sense plus

Pre sense plus contains the functions of pre sense front and pre sense rear.

Error message

Audi pre sense: Unavailable

Preventative passenger protection is not available. Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Pre sense cannot overcome natural physical laws. It is a system designed to assist and it cannot prevent a collision. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.

– The system can deploy incorrectly.
– Please note that the sensors do not always detect all objects. This increases the risk of a collision.
– Pre sense does not react to people or animals or objects that are crossing the vehicle's path or are difficult to detect ⇨ *page 94*.
– Reflective objects such as guard rails or the entrance to a tunnel, heavy rain and ice can affect the function of the radar sensors and the system's ability to detect a collision risk.

Note

The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. Pre sense can be impaired by this. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function. ▶

Tips

- Certain pre sense front functions switch off when sport mode is switched off or when driving in reverse.
- The pre sense functions may not be available if there is a malfunction in the ESC system or the airbag control module.
- The pre sense front/plus functions are not available if there is a malfunction in the adaptive cruise control* system ⇨ *page 101*.
- The pre sense rear/plus functions are not available if there is a malfunction in the side assist* system ⇨ *page 101*.

4H0012721BD

Safety belts

General information

Always wear safety belts!

Wearing safety belts correctly saves lives!

This chapter explains why safety belts are necessary, how they work and how to adjust and wear them correctly.

▸ Read all the information that follows and heed all of the instructions and WARNINGS.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.
– Pregnant women, injured, or physically impaired persons must also use safety belts. Like all vehicle occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts. The best way to protect a fetus is to protect the mother - throughout the entire pregnancy.
– Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are safety belts available.
– Be sure everyone riding in the vehicle is properly restrained with a separate safety belt or child restraint.

Number of seats

Your Audi has a total of five seating positions: two in the front and three in the rear. In some vehicles, there are four seating positions: two in the front and two in the rear. Each seating position has a safety belt.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt. It is especially dangerous to place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.

Safety belt warning light

Your vehicle has a warning system for the driver and front seat passenger to remind you about the importance of buckling-up.



Fig. 220 Safety belt warning light in the instrument cluster - enlarged

Before driving off, always:

▸ Fasten your safety belt and make sure you are wearing it properly.
▸ Make sure that your passengers also buckle up and properly wear their safety belts.
▸ Protect children with a child restraint system appropriate for the size and age.

The warning light in the instrument cluster lights up when the ignition is on as a reminder to fasten the safety belts. In addition, you will hear a warning tone for a certain period of time.

Fasten your safety belt and make sure that your passengers also properly put on their safety belts.

WARNING

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.

▸

– Failure to pay attention to the warning light that come on, could lead to personal injury.

Why use safety belts?

Frontal collisions and the law of physics

Frontal crashes create very strong forces for people riding in vehicles.

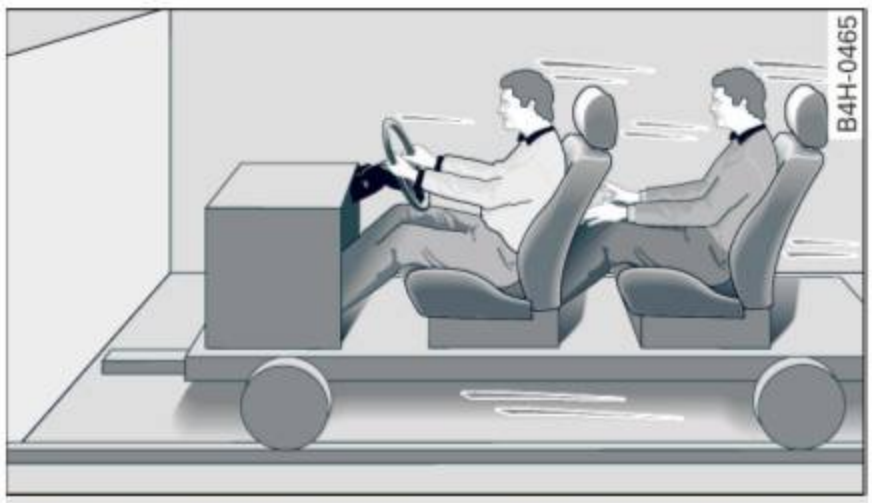


Fig. 221 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a wall



Fig. 222 The vehicle crashes into the wall

The physical principles are simple. Both the vehicle and the passengers possess energy which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy “kinetic energy.”

The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the vehicle's weight, the more energy that has to be “absorbed” in the crash.

Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If the speed doubles from 15 to 30 mph (25 to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times!

Because the passengers of this vehicle are not using safety belts ⇨ *fig. 221*, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them - here, the wall ⇨ *fig. 222*.

The same principles apply to people sitting in a vehicle that is involved in a frontal collision. Even at city speeds of 20 to 30 mph (30 to 50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2,000 lbs, or 1,000 kg) or more. At greater speeds, these forces are even higher.

People who do not use safety belts are also not attached to their vehicle. In a frontal collision they will also keep moving forward at the speed their vehicle was travelling just before the crash. Of course, the laws of physics don't just apply to frontal collisions, they determine what happens in all kinds of accidents and collisions.

What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?

In crashes unbelted occupants cannot stop themselves from flying forward and being injured or killed. Always wear your safety belts!



Fig. 223 A driver not wearing a safety belt is violently thrown forward



Fig. 224 A rear passenger not wearing a safety belt will fly forward and strike the driver

Unbelted occupants are not able to resist the tremendous forces of impact by holding tight or bracing themselves. Without the benefit of safety restraint systems, the unrestrained occupant will slam violently into the steering wheel, ▶

instrument panel, windshield, or whatever else is in the way ⇨ *fig. 223*. This impact with the vehicle interior has all the energy they had just before the crash.

Never rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only additional protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must wear safety belts correctly in order to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in a crash.

Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and that your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the vehicle where even more severe or fatal injuries can occur.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear safety belts correctly. Unbelted passengers in the rear seats endanger not only themselves but also the driver and other passengers ⇨ *fig. 224*. In a frontal collision they will be thrown forward violently, where they can hit and injure the driver and/or front seat passenger.

Safety belts protect

People think it's possible to use the hands to brace the body in a minor collision. It's simply not true!



Fig. 225 Driver is correctly restrained in a sudden braking maneuver

Safety belts used properly can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in an accident, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle.

Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or “softly” through the “give” in the safety belts, crush zones and other safety features engineered into today's vehicles. By “absorbing” the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the safety belts make the forces on the body more “tolerable” and less likely to cause injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other kinds of crashes. So, whether you're on a long trip or just going to the corner store, always buckle up and make sure others do, too. Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving an accident. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in a collision. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is legally required in most countries including much of the United States and Canada.

Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, you still have to wear the safety belts provided. Front airbags, for example, are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated in all frontal collisions, in side and rear collisions, in roll overs or in cases where there is not enough deceleration through impact to the front of the vehicle. The same goes for the other airbag systems in your Audi. So, always wear your safety belt and make sure everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained!

Important safety instructions about safety belts

Safety belts must always be correctly positioned across the strongest bones of your body.

- ▸ Always wear safety belts as illustrated and described in this chapter.
- ▸ Make sure that your safety belts are always ready for use and are not damaged. ▶

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death. Safety belts can work only when used correctly.

- Always fasten your safety belts correctly before driving off and make sure all passengers are correctly restrained.
- For maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned properly on the body.
- Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt.
- Never place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
- Always keep feet in the footwell in front of the seat while the vehicle is being driven.
- Never let any person ride with their feet on the instrument panel or sticking out the window or on the seat.
- Never remove a safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.
- Never wear belts twisted.
- Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.
- Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.
- Do not wear the shoulder part of the belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.
- Several layers of heavy clothing may interfere with correct positioning of belts and reduce the overall effectiveness of the system.
- Always keep belt buckles free of anything that may prevent the buckle from latching securely.
- Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt. However, special clips may be required for the proper use of some child restraint systems.
- Torn or frayed safety belts can tear, and damaged belt hardware can break in an accident. Inspect belts regularly. If webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors are damaged, have belts replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Safety belts that have been worn and loaded in an accident must be replaced with the correct replacement safety belt by an authorized Audi dealer. Replacement may be necessary even if damage cannot be clearly seen. Anchorages that were loaded must also be inspected.
- Never remove, modify, disassemble, or try to repair the safety belts yourself.
- Always keep the belts clean. Dirty belts may not work properly and can impair the function of the inertia reel ⇨ *table Interior cleaning on page 308*.

Safety belts

Fastening safety belts

Safety first - everbody buckle up!



Fig. 226 Belt buckle and tongue on the driver's seat

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat and head restraint properly ⇨ *page 54, Seats and storage*.
- ▸ Pull the safety belt evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇨ *fig. 226*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

Automatic safety belt retractors

Every safety belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder belt. This feature locks the belt when the belt is pulled out fast, ▶

during hard braking and in an accident. The belt may also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or through a sharp curve. During normal driving the belt lets you move freely.

Safety belt pretensioners

The safety belts are equipped with a belt pretensioner that helps to tighten the safety belt and remove slack when the pretensioner is activated ⇨ *page 224*. The function of the pretensioner is monitored by a warning light ⇨ *page 23*.

Convertible locking retractor

Every safety belt except the one on the driver seat is equipped with a convertible locking retractor that **must** be used when the safety belt is used to attach a child seat. Be sure to read the important information about this feature ⇨ *page 258*.

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious injury in an accident ⇨ *page 222, Safety belt position*.

- Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seatback is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body.
- Never attach the safety belt to the buckle for another seat. Attaching the belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.
- A passenger who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself when it moves from the stronger parts of the body into critical areas like the abdomen.
- Always lock the convertible locking retractor when you are securing a child seat in the vehicle ⇨ *page 260*.

Tips

For information on safety belt pretensioners, refer to ⇨ *page 224*.

Safety belt position

Correct belt position is the key to getting maximum protection from safety belts.

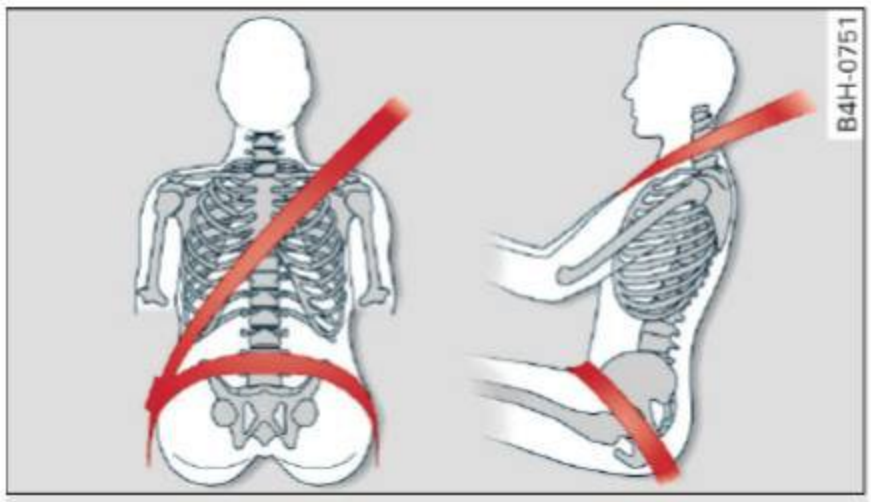


Fig. 227 Safety belt position

Use the height adjustment to change the position of the shoulder belt of the front safety belts.

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- The shoulder belt should lie as close to the center of the collar bone as possible and should fit well on the body. Hold the belt above the latch tongue and pull it evenly across the chest so that it sits as low as possible on the pelvis and there is no pressure on the abdomen. The belt should always fit snugly ⇨ *fig. 227*. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- A loose-fitting safety belt can cause serious injuries by shifting its position on your body from the strong bones to more vulnerable, soft tissue and cause serious injury.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 220*.

Pregnant women must also be correctly restrained

The best way to protect the fetus is to make sure that expectant mothers always wear safety belts correctly - throughout the pregnancy.



Fig. 228 Safety belt position during pregnancy

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body ⇨ *page 222*.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly ⇨ *page 54, Seats and storage*.
- ▸ Pull the safety belt evenly across the chest so that it sits as low as possible on the pelvis and there is no pressure on the abdomen ⇨ *fig. 228*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇨ *page 221, fig. 226*.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– Expectant mothers must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ ⚠ *in Fastening safety belts on page 222*.

Unfastening safety belts

Unbuckle the safety belt with the red release button only after the vehicle has stopped.

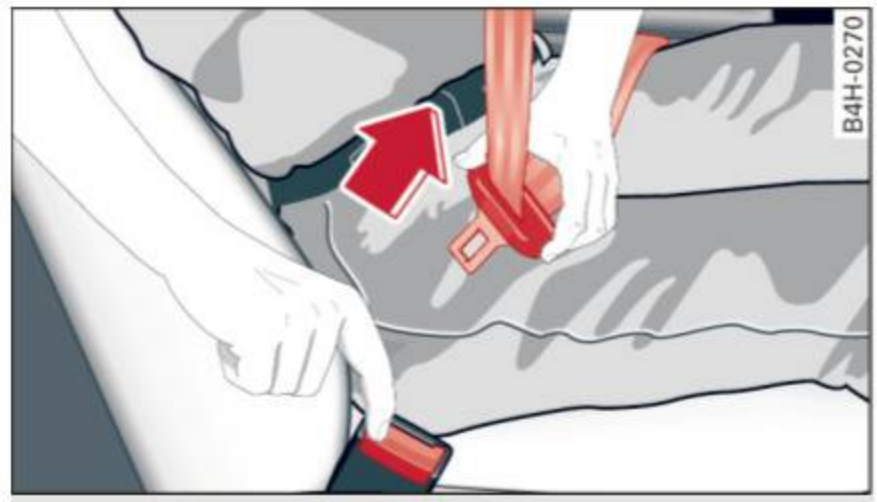


Fig. 229 Releasing the tongue from the buckle

- ▸ Push the red release button on the buckle ⇨ *fig. 229*. The belt tongue will spring out of the buckle ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Let the belt wind up on the retractor as you guide the belt tongue to its stowed position.

⚠ WARNING

Never unfasten safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.

Adjusting safety belt height

You can adjust the height of the driver's and front passenger's safety belts.

The safety belt height adjustors for the front seats can be used to adjust the height of the shoulder portion of the safety belt so that it is positioned correctly.

The shoulder belt should lie as close to the center of the collar bone as possible and should fit well on the body ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety belt position on page 222*.

Power safety belt height adjustment*

You can adjust the height of the safety belts using the multifunction button on the driver or front passenger seat ⇨ *page 54*. ▸

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 220*.

Tips

You can also adjust the height of the front seats to change the position of the safety belts.

Improperly worn safety belts

Incorrectly positioned safety belts can cause severe injuries.

Wearing safety belts improperly can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are correctly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the correct seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

- ▸ Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while traveling ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Improperly worn safety belts increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- – Always make sure that all vehicle occupants are correctly restrained and stay in a correct seating position whenever the vehicle is being used.
- – Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 220*.

Belt tensioners

How safety belt pretensioners work

In front, side and rear-end collisions above a particular severity and in a rollover, safety belts are tensioned automatically.

Reversible safety belt tensioners

The safety belts on the front seats are equipped with power reversible tensioners. The following functions are available when the driver's/front passenger's safety belts are fastened:

- – Automatic tensioners: at the start of a drive, the safety belts automatically adjust to the passenger after a certain time period or vehicle speed. To switch the automatic tensioners off, select the following in the MMI: CAR function button > **Car systems** > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Driver's seat** or **Passenger's seat** > **Automatic belt tensioner** > **Off**.
- – In certain driving situations, the safety belts may tighten with a reversible tensioning function ⇨ *page 216*.
- – The safety belts may also tighten with this reversible tensioning function in minor collisions.

Pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners

The safety belts are equipped with safety belt pretensioners. The system is activated by sensors in front, side and rear-end collisions of great severity and in a rollover. This tightens the belt and takes up belt slack ⇨ ⚠ *in Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner on page 225*. Taking up the slack helps to reduce forward occupant movement during a collision.

WARNING

- – It is possible for the pretensioners to deploy incorrectly.
- – The pyrotechnic system can only provide protection for one collision. If the pyrotechnic pretensioners deploy, the pretensioning system must be replaced.

Tips

The pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners can only deploy once. ▸

– The safety belt pretensioners do not deploy in minor frontal, side and rear-end collisions.
– A fine dust is released when the pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners deploy. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.
– The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. A qualified dealership is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.
– Be sure to observe all safety, environmental and other regulations if the vehicle or individual parts of the system, particularly the safety belt or airbag, are to be disposed. We recommend you have your authorized Audi dealer perform this service for you.

Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner

The safety belt pretensioners are parts of the safety belts on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing of belt pretensioners can damage the safety belt system and prevent it from working correctly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing a safety belt pretensioner from activating when needed or activating it unexpectedly:
– The belt pretensioner system can be activated only once. If belt pretensioners have been activated, the system must be replaced.
– Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the safety belt system.
– Safety belt systems including safety belt pretensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required for removal, installation and disposal of this system.
– For any work on the safety belt system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified technician who has an Audi approved repair manual, training and special equipment necessary.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Airbag system

Important information

Importance of wearing safety belts and sitting properly

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. For airbags to do their job, occupants must always properly wear their safety belts and be in a proper seating position.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, before driving off, always:

- Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel properly ⇨ *page 208*,
- Adjust the front passenger's seat properly ⇨ *page 54*,
- Wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 220*,
- Always properly use the proper child restraint to protect children ⇨ *page 248*.

In a collision, airbags must inflate within the blink of an eye and with considerable force. The supplemental airbags can cause injuries if the driver or the front seat passenger is not seated properly. Therefore in order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, both as a driver and as a passenger to sit properly at all times.

By keeping room between your body and the steering wheel and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions ⇨ *page 208, Correct passenger seating positions*. For details on the operation of the seat adjustment controls ⇨ *page 54*.

It's especially important that children are properly restrained ⇨ *page 248*.

There is a lot that the driver and the passengers can and must do to help the individual safety features installed in your Audi work together as a system.

Proper seating position is important so that the front airbag on the driver side can do its job. If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, or if you have concerns with regard to the function or operation of the Advanced Airbag System, please contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop, or call Audi Customer Relations at 1-800-822-2834 for possible modifications to your vehicle.

When the airbag system deploys, a gas generator will fill the airbags, break open the padded covers, and inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger. The airbags will deflate immediately after deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again without interruption.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and nothing should be in their way when they deploy. Front airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement. Together they help to prevent the driver and front seat passenger from hitting parts of the inside of the vehicle while reducing the forces acting on the occupant during the crash. In this way they help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper body in the crash. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body.

Both front airbags will not inflate in all frontal collisions. The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not.

Since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another, it is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds that will cover every possible kind and angle of impact that will always trigger the airbags. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. The front airbags will ▶

also not inflate in side or rear collisions, or in roll-overs.

Always remember: Airbags will deploy only once, and only in certain kinds of collisions. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those situations in which airbags are not supposed to deploy, or when they have already deployed; for example, when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another vehicle after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is a supplementary restraint and is not a substitute for a safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always properly wear your safety belts ⇨ *page 218*.

WARNING

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

– Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel or instrument panel.
– If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.
– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag.
– To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 221, Safety belts*.
– Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates.
– Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle. Adjust the front seats properly.
– Never ride with the backrest reclined.
– Always sit as far as possible from the steering wheel or the instrument panel ⇨ *page 208*.
– Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.
– Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the legs and hips if the airbag inflates.
– Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury when an airbag inflates.

WARNING

Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

– Use only original equipment airbags approved by Audi and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
– Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know

▸ Be sure to read the important information and heed the WARNINGS for important details about children and Advanced Airbags ⇨ *page 248*.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially those 12 years and younger, always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child ▶

seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a child in a rearward-facing seat.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the requirements of United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. According to requirements, the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been certified for "suppression" for infants of about 12 month old and younger and for "low risk deployment" for children aged 3 to 6 years old (as defined in the standard).

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the instrument panel tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

Each time you switch on the ignition, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on for a few seconds and:

– will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– will stay on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat,
– will go off if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the weight-sensing mat ⇨ *page 236, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the control unit detects a total weight on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off.

If the total weight on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old child but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side can deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on). If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the electronic control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child seats listed ⇨ *page 250*), or
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on in the instrument cluster and stays on.

The front airbag on the passenger side may *not* deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not illuminate and stay lit) even if a small adult or teenager, or a passenger who is not sitting upright with their back against a non-reclined backrest with their feet on the vehicle floor in front of the seat is on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 208, Proper seating position for the driver*.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the "low risk" deployment criteria to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 237, PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light*.

Always remember, a child seat or infant carrier installed on the front seat may be struck and knocked out of position by the rapidly inflating passenger's airbag in a frontal collision. The airbag could greatly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure the child during inflation.

For this reason, and because the back seat is the safest place for children - when properly restrained according to their age and size - we strongly recommend that children always sit in the back seat ⇨ *page 248, Child safety*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System. ▶

– The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child seats on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
– Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:
– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
– Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will be displayed whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 236, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer immediately.
– Always carefully follow instructions from child restraint manufacturers when installing child restraints.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:
– Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
– An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.
– Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.

Front airbags

Description of front airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.



Fig. 230 Location of driver airbag: in steering wheel



Fig. 231 Location of front passenger's airbag: in the instrument panel

Your vehicle is equipped with an “Advanced Airbag System” in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. he safety belts for the seats have “pretensioners” that help to take slack out of the belt system. The pretensioners are also activated by the electronic control unit for the airbag system.

The front safety belts also have load limiters to help reduce the forces applied to the body in a crash.

The airbag for the driver is in the steering wheel hub ⇨ *fig. 230* and the airbag for the front passenger is in the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 231*. The general location of the airbags is marked “AIRBAG”.

There is a lot you need to know about the airbags in your vehicle. We urge you to read the detailed information about airbags, safety belts and child safety in this and the other chapters that make up the owner's literature. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.
- Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.
- Airbag work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts.
- Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.

WARNING

A person on the front passenger seat, especially infants and small children, will receive serious injuries and can even be killed by being too close to the airbag when it inflates.
- Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front passenger airbag if an infant or a small child is on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment under these special conditions is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
- The Advanced Airbag System can deploy in accordance with the “low risk” option under the U.S. Federal Standard if a child that is heavier than the typical one-year old child is on the front passenger seat and the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.
- Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position.
- For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back properly restrained for their age and size.

Advanced front airbag system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front Advanced Airbag System in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The front Advanced Airbag System supplements the safety belts to provide additional protection for the driver's and front passenger's heads and upper bodies in frontal crashes. The airbags inflate only in frontal impacts when the vehicle deceleration is high enough.

The front Advanced Airbag System for the front seat occupants is not a substitute for your safety belts. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you, if you are sitting upright, wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you and your passengers must always be properly restrained, not just because the law requires you to be.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to meet the “low risk” requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children on the passenger side and very small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the front airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates.

In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the “suppression” requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants 12 months old and younger who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard ⇨ *page 250, Child restraints and Advanced Airbags*.

“Suppression” requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off if:

– a child up to about one year of age is restrained on the front passenger seat in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇨ *page 250*,
– weight less than a threshold level stored in the control unit is detected on the front passenger seat.

When a person is detected on the front passenger seat, weighing more than the total weight of a child that is about 1 year old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints (listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified), the front airbag on the passenger side may or may not deploy.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the electronic control unit detects a total weight on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

If the total weight on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old, but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side may deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child seats listed ⇨ *page 250*),
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the center of the instrument panel will come on and stay on.

The front airbag on the passenger side may *not* deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not illuminate and stay lit) if: ▶

4H0012721BD

– a small adult or teenager is on the front passenger seat
– a passenger who is not sitting upright with their back against a non-reclined backrest with their feet on the vehicle floor in front of the seat is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the "low risk" deployment criteria to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 236*.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with Advanced Airbags, the safest place for children is properly restrained on the back seat. Please be sure to read the important information in the sections that follow and be sure to heed all of the WARNINGS.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.
– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 226*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
– Always install rearward-facing child restraints on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:
– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
– Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

Advanced Airbag System components

The front passenger seat in your vehicle has a lot of very important parts of the Advanced Airbag System in it. These parts include the weight-sensing mat, sensors, wiring, brackets, and more. The function of the system in the front passenger seat is checked by the electronic ▶

control unit when the ignition is on. The control unit monitors the Advanced Airbag System and turns the airbag indicator light on when a malfunction in the system components is detected. The function of the airbag indicator light is described in greater detail below. Because the front passenger seat contains important parts of the Advanced Airbag System, you must take care to prevent it from being damaged. Damage to the seat may prevent the Advanced Airbag for the front passenger seat from doing its job in a crash.

The front Advanced Airbag System consists of the following:

– Crash sensors in the front of the vehicle that measure vehicle acceleration/deceleration to provide information to the Advanced Airbag System about the severity of the crash.
– An electronic control unit, with integrated crash sensors for front and side impacts. The control unit "decides" whether to fire the front airbags based on the information received from the crash sensors. The control unit also "decides" whether the safety belt pretensioners should be activated.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator and control valve for the driver inside the steering wheel hub.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator and control valve inside the instrument panel for the front passenger.
– A weight-sensing mat under the upholstery padding of the front passenger seat cushion that measures the total weight on the seat. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side.
– An airbag monitoring system and indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇨ *page 236*.
– A sensor in each front seat registers the distance between the respective seat and the steering wheel or instrument panel. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbags.
– The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on in the center of the instrument panel ⇨ *page 237, fig. 233* and tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off.
– A sensor below the safety belt latch for the front seat passenger to measure the tension on the safety belt. The tension on the safety belt and the weight registered by the weight-sensing mat help the control unit "decide" whether the front airbag for the front passenger seat should be turned off or not ⇨ *page 227, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.
– A sensor in the safety belt latch for the driver and for the front seat passenger that senses whether that safety belt is latched or not and transmits this information to the electronic control unit.

WARNING

Damage to the front passenger seat can prevent the front airbag from working properly.
– Improper repair or disassembly of the front passenger and driver seat will prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.
– Repairs to the front passenger seat must be performed by qualified and properly trained workshop personnel.
– Never remove the front passenger or driver seat from the vehicle.
– Never remove the upholstery from the front passenger seat.
– Never disassemble or remove parts from the seat or disconnect wires from it.
– Never carry sharp objects in your pockets or place them on the seat. If the weight-sensing mat in the passenger seat is punctured it cannot work properly.
– Never carry things on your lap or carry objects on the passenger seat. Such items can increase the weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and send the wrong information to the airbag control unit.
– Never store items under the front passenger seat. Parts of the Advanced Airbag System under the passenger seat could be ▶

damaged, preventing them and the airbag system from working properly.
- Never place seat covers or replacement upholstery that have not been specifically approved by Audi on the front seats.
- Seat covers can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from recognizing child restraints or occupants on the front passenger seat and prevent the side airbag in the seat backrest from deploying properly.
- Never use cushions, pillows, blankets or similar items on the front passenger seat. The additional padding will prevent the weight-sensing mat in the seat from accurately registering the child restraint or person on the seat and prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.
- If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something else to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install child restraint in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

How the Advanced Airbag System components work together

The front Advanced Airbag System and the side airbags supplement the protection offered by the front three-point safety belts with pretensioners and load limiters and the adjustable head restraints to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide range of accident and crash situations. Be sure to read the important information about safety and heed the WARNINGS in this chapter.

Deployment of the Advanced Airbag System and the activation of the safety belt pretensioners depend on the deceleration measured by the crash sensors and registered by the electronic control unit. Crash severity depends on speed and deceleration as well as the mass and stiffness of the vehicle or object involved in the crash.

On the passenger side, regardless of safety belt use, the airbag will be turned off if the weight on the passenger seat is less than the amount programmed in the electronic control unit. The front airbag on the passenger side will also be turned off if one of the child seats that has been certified under Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 has been recognized on the seat. The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off ⇨ *page 227, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know.*

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.
- If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
- You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 226.*

More important things to know about front airbags



Fig. 232 Inflated front airbags

Safety belts are important to help keep front seat occupants in the proper seated position so that airbags can unfold properly and provide supplemental protection in a frontal collision. ▶

The front airbags are designed to provide additional protection for the chest and face of the driver and the front seat passenger when:

– safety belts are worn properly,
– the seats have been positioned so that the occupant is properly seated as far as possible from the airbag,
– and the head restraints have been properly adjusted.

Because airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with great force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles, and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates.

When an airbag deploys, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. It could irritate skin.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example swelling, bruising and minor abrasions, can also happen when airbags inflate. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body. Front airbags supplement the three-point safety belts only in some frontal collisions in which the vehicle deceleration is high enough to deploy the airbags.

Front airbags will not deploy:

– if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,
– in side collisions,
– in rear-end collisions,
– in rollovers,
– when the crash deceleration measured by the airbag system is less than the minimum threshold needed for airbag deployment as registered by the electronic control unit.

The front passenger airbag also will not deploy:

– when the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– when the weight on the front passenger seat as sensed by the Advanced Airbag System indicates that the front airbag on the passenger side has to be turned off by the electronic control unit (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on).

WARNING

Sitting in the wrong position can increase the risk of serious injury in crashes.
– To reduce the risk of injury when the airbags inflate, the driver and passengers must always sit in an upright position, must not lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Occupants who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye ⇨ *page 227*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child seats on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.
– Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use. ▶

– Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuvers and become dangerous projectiles that can cause serious personal injury if the airbags inflate.
– Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat backrests or between those areas and yourself. These objects could cause injury in a crash, especially when the airbags inflate.
– Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined.

WARNING

The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing conditions.
– To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
– If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
– Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts or scratches.
– If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

AIR BAG (USA models)/ (Canada models) Airbag monitoring indicator light

Two separate indicators monitor the function of the Advanced Airbag System: the airbag monitoring indicator light and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** *light.*

The Advanced Airbag System (including the electronic control unit, sensor circuits and system wiring) is monitored continuously to make sure that it is functioning properly whenever the ignition is on. Each time you switch on the ignition, the airbag monitoring indicator light AIR BAG (USA models)/ (Canada models) will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The system must be inspected when the indicator light AIR BAG (USA models)/ (Canada models):

– does not come on when the ignition is switched on,
– does not go out a few seconds after you have switched on the ignition, or
– comes on while driving.

If an airbag system malfunction is detected, the indicator light will come on to serve as a constant reminder to have the system inspected immediately.

If a malfunction occurs that turns the front airbag on the passenger side off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on.

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 23* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light

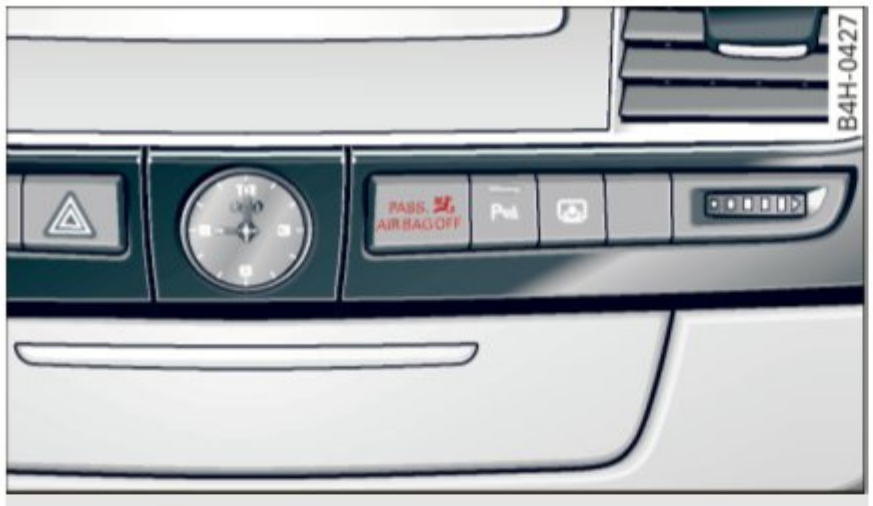


Fig. 233 Section from the instrument panel: PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is located in the center of the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 233*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit. Each time you switch on the ignition, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will flash for a few seconds and:

– will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– will stay on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat,
– will go out if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the weight-sensing mat.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light must come on and stay on** if the ignition is on and

– a car bed has been installed on the front seat, or
– a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– a forward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– the weight registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined weight of a typical 1 year-old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the front airbag will not deploy, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on. Never install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, the safest place for a child in any kind of child restraint is at one of the seating positions on the rear seat ⇨ *page 227, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know* and ⇨ *page 248, Child safety*.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on when one of the conditions listed above is met, be sure to check the light regularly to make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stays on continuously whenever the ignition is on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear on and does not stay on all the time, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and

– reactivate the system by switching the ignition off and then switching it on again;
– remove and reinstall the child restraint. Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed and that the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been correctly routed through the child restraint as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions;
– make sure that the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been activated and that the safety belt has been pulled tight. The belt must not be loose or have loops of slack so that the sensor below the safety belt latch on the seat can do its job ⇨ *page 258*.
– make sure that things that may increase the weight of the child and child seat are not being transported on the front passenger seat;
– make sure that the safety belt tension sensor is not blocked. Shake the safety belt latch on the front passenger seatback and forth;
– If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light still does not come on and does not stay on continuously (when the ignition is switched on),

– take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear ▶

seat positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer immediately.
– move the child to a rear seat position and make sure that the child is properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for its size and age.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light should NOT come on when the ignition is on and an adult is sitting in a proper seating position on the front passenger seat. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on or flashes for about 5 seconds while driving, under these circumstances, make sure that:

– the adult on the front passenger seat is properly seated on the center of the seat cushion with his or her back up against the backrest and the backrest is not reclined ⇨ *page 208, Correct passenger seating positions*,
– the adult is not taking weight off the seat by holding on to the passenger assist handle above the front passenger door or supporting their weight on the armrest,
– the safety belt is being properly worn and that there is not a lot of slack in the safety belt webbing,
– accessory seat covers or cushions or other things that may cause an incorrect reading or impression on the weight-sensing mat under the upholstery of the seat have been removed from the front passenger seat,
– a safety belt extender has not been left in the safety belt latch for the front passenger seat.

In addition to the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the center of the instrument panel, the message **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** or **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON** will briefly appear in the instrument cluster display. This is to inform the driver of the current front passenger airbag status.

Important safety instructions on monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 23* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

WARNING

If the front airbag inflates, a child without a child restraint, or in a rearward-facing child safety seat, or in a forward-facing child restraint that has not been properly installed will be seriously injured and can be killed.
– Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
– Always install forward or rear-facing child seats on the rear seat – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– If you must install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
– A tight tether or other strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-sensing mat in the seat and register more weight than is actually on the seat. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.
– If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, always move the seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position. Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG** ▶

OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not go out when an adult is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions.
- Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.

Tips

If the weight-sensing mat in the front passenger seat detects an empty seat, the front airbag on the passenger side will be turned off, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on.

Repair, care and disposal of the airbags

Parts of the airbag system are installed at many different places on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing a part in an area of the vehicle can damage a part of an airbag system and prevent that system from working properly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly:

- Never cover, obstruct, or change the steering wheel horn pad or airbag cover or the instrument panel or modify them in any way.
- Never attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.
- For cleaning the horn pad or instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or one moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.
- Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the airbag system.
- All work on the steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (including the installation of audio equipment, cellular telephones and CB radios, etc.) must be performed by a qualified technician who has the training and special equipment necessary.
- For any work on the airbag system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Never modify the front bumper or parts of the vehicle body.
- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
  - Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags inflate.
  - Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
- The airbag system can be activated only once. After an airbag has inflated, it must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified technician who has the technical information, training and special equipment necessary.
- The airbag system can be deployed only once. After an airbag has been deployed, it must be replaced with new replacement parts designed and approved especially for your Audi model version. Replacement of complete airbag systems or airbag components must be performed by qualified workshops only. Make sure that any airbag ▶

service action is entered in your Audi Warranty & Maintenance booklet under *AIRBAG REPLACEMENT RECORD*.

– For safety reasons in severe accidents, the alternator and starter are separated from the vehicle battery with a pyrotechnic circuit interrupter.
  – Work on the pyrotechnic circuit interrupter must only be performed by a qualified dealer - risk of an accident!
  – If the vehicle or the circuit interrupter is scrapped, all applicable safety precautions must be followed.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Other things that can affect Advanced Airbag performance

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the Advanced Airbag System performs in a crash. For example, using tire-rim combinations not approved by Audi, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers etc. can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the sensors and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

WARNING

Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change Advanced Airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.

– Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle.
– Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by Audi.

WARNING

Items stored between the safety belt buckle and the center console can cause the sensors in the buckle to send the wrong information to the electronic control module and prevent the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.

– Always make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed.

Knee airbags

Description of knee airbags

The knee airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.

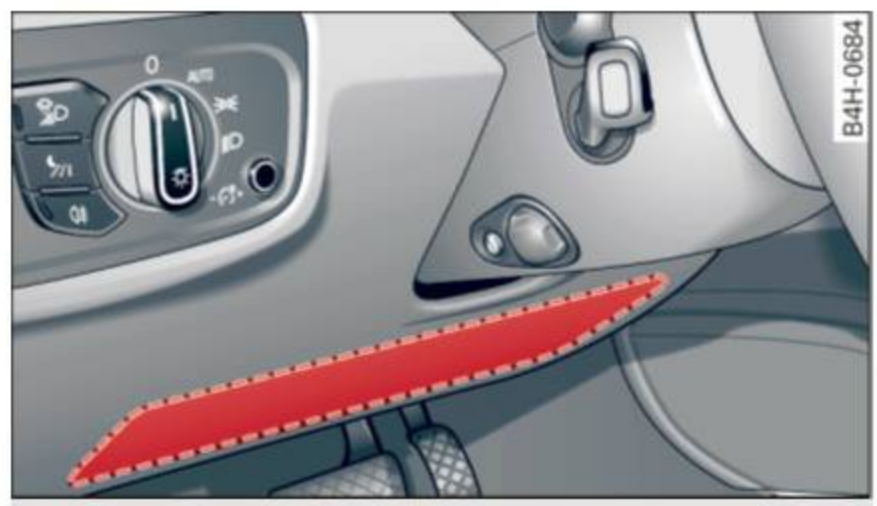


Fig. 234 Driver's knee airbag

The driver knee airbag is in the instrument panel underneath the steering wheel ⇨ *fig. 234*, the airbag for the passenger is at about the same height in the instrument panel underneath the glove compartment. ▶

The knee airbag offers additional protection to the driver's and passenger's knees and upper and lower thigh areas and supplements the protection provided by the safety belts.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions when the deployment threshold stored in the control unit is met ⇨ *page 234, More important things to know about front airbags*.

In addition to their normal safety function, safety belts help keep the driver or front passenger in position in a frontal collision so that the airbags can provide supplemental protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you should always wear your safety belt, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 218, General information*.

Remember too, airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed, for example when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is not a substitute for the safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always wear your safety belts correctly.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental knee airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising and minor abrasions and friction burns can also occur when an airbag inflates.

The knee airbag system basically consists of:

– The electronic control module
– Two inflatable airbags (airbag and gas generator), one for the driver and one for the front passenger
– The airbag indicator light in the instrument panel

The knee airbag system will not deploy:

– when the ignition is switched off
– in frontal collisions when the deceleration measured by the control unit is too low
– in side collisions
– in rear-end collisions
– in rollovers
– in the event of a system malfunction (warning/indicator light is on) ⇨ *page 23*.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system can only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 234*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 23* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How knee airbags work

The risk of injury to the leg area can be reduced by fully inflated knee airbags.

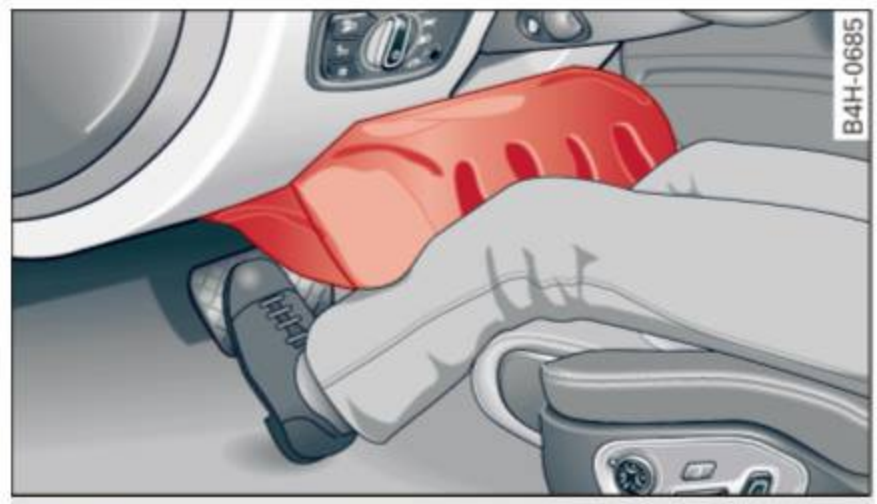


Fig. 235 Inflated airbags protecting in a frontal collision

The knee airbag system has been designed so that the airbags for the driver and front passenger deploy in certain but not all frontal collisions.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions when the deployment threshold stored in the control unit is met.

When the system deploys, the airbags fill with a propellant gas, and inflate between the lower ▶

part of the instrument panel and the driver and the lower part of the instrument panel and the front passenger ⇨ *page 234, fig. 232*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the lower extremities.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and it is important for occupant safety that nothing should be in their way when they deploy.

Fully inflated airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement and help to reduce the risk of injury.

Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always wear safety belts correctly and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

An inflating knee airbag can cause serious injury. Wearing safety belts incorrectly and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- The knee airbag system cannot protect you properly if you are seated too close to any of the airbag locations. When adjusting their seat positions, it is important that both the driver and the front passenger keep their upper bodies and knees at the following minimum safe distances:
  - at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the chest and the steering wheel/instrument panel.
  - at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
- The risk of personal injury increases if you lean forward or to the side, or if the seat is improperly positioned and you are not wearing your safety belt. The risk increases even more should the airbag deploy.
- Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.
  - Never let anybody, especially children or animals ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.
  - Never carry objects of any kind in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can interfere with or prevent proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.
- Make sure there are no cracks, deep scratches or other damage in the area of the instrument panel where the knee airbags are located.
- If children are incorrectly seated, their risk of injury increases in a collision ⇨ *page 248, Child safety*.

Side airbags

Description of side airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.



Fig. 236 Side airbag location in the driver's seat

The side airbags are located in the sides of the front seat backrests ⇨ *fig. 236* and the rear backrest facing the doors. They are identified by the word “AIRBAG”.

The side airbag system basically consists of:

– the electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– the two side airbags located in the sides of the front backrests
– two rear side airbags
– the airbag warning light in the instrument cluster.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain that it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you switch on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury to the driver's, front and rear passenger's upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The airbag deploys only in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side curtain airbag will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 244, Important safety instructions on the side airbag system*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a side collision so that the side airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is *not* a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the side airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 218, General information*.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental side airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, and minor abrasions can also be associated with deployed side airbags. Remember too, side airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage are not necessarily an indication of over-sensitive or failed airbag activation. In some collisions, both front and side airbags may inflate. Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of collisions – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

The side airbag system will not deploy:

– when the ignition is switched off
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low
– in front-end collisions
– in rear-end collisions
– in rollovers. ▶

In some types of accidents the front airbags, side curtain airbags and side airbags may be triggered together.

WARNING

- Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 244*.
- If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 23* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How supplemental side airbags work

Side airbags deploy instantly and can help reduce the risk of upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.

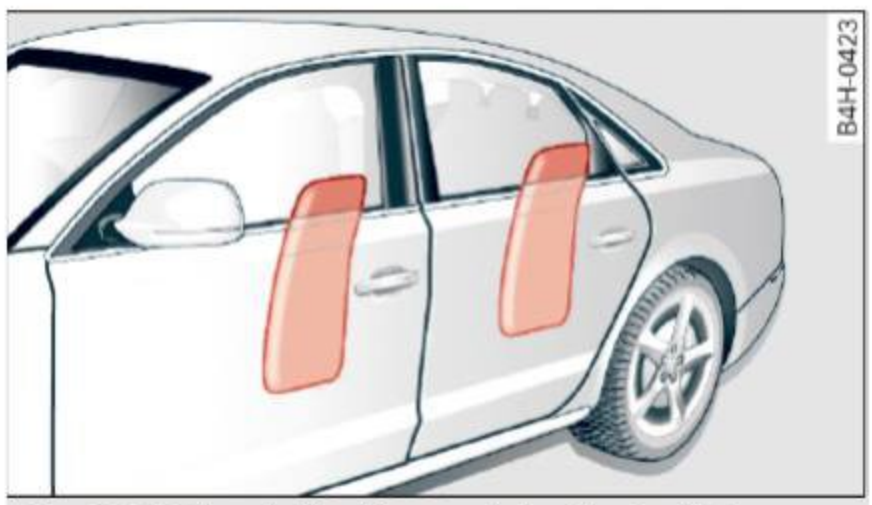


Fig. 237 Inflated side airbags on left side of vehicle, rear side airbag

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam in the seat surface area marked "AIRBAG". It expands between the side trim panel and the passenger. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within a fraction of a second at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side airbag expands. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 248, Child safety*. Supplemental side airbags inflate between the occupant and the door panel on the side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collision ⇨ *fig. 237*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and act accordingly to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

An inflating side airbag can cause serious or fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- In order to reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates:
  - Always sit in an upright position and never lean against the area where the supplemental side airbag is located.
  - Never let a child or anyone else rest their head against the side trim panel in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates.
  - Always make sure that safety belts are worn correctly,
  - Do not let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand or any other parts of their body out of the window.
- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference.
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi. ▶

- Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags deploy.
- Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.

– Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.
- Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked “AIRBAG” on the seat backrests.
- Such objects and accessories can become dangerous projectiles and cause injury when the supplemental side airbag deploys.
- Never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.

– Always use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with side airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident.
– Always prevent the side airbags from being damaged by heavy objects knocking against or hitting the sides of the seatbacks.
– The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealership.
– Damage (cracks, deep scratches etc.) to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
– If children are seated improperly, their risk of injury increases in the case of an accident ⇨ *page 248, Child safety*.
– Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.
– In a side collision, side airbags will not function properly if sensors cannot correctly measure increasing air pressure inside the doors when air escapes through larger, unclosed openings in the door panel.
- Never drive with interior door trim panels removed.
- Never drive when parts have been removed from the inside door panel and the openings they leave have not been properly closed.
- Never drive when loudspeakers in the doors have been removed unless the speaker holes have been properly closed.
- Always make certain that openings are covered or filled if additional speakers or other equipment is installed in the inside door panels.
- Always have work on the doors done by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Side curtain airbags

Description of side curtain airbags

The side curtain airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.

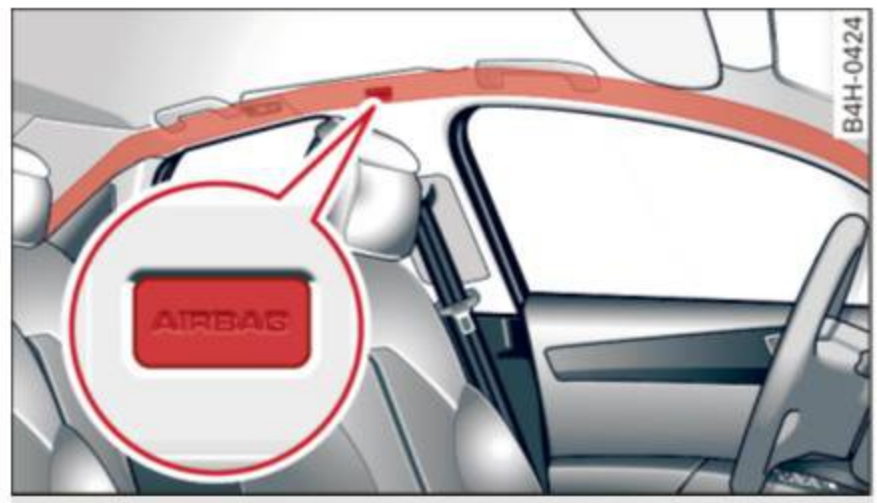


Fig. 238 Side curtain airbags, driver's side: side curtain airbag location

The side curtain airbags are located on both sides of the interior above the front and rear side windows ⇨ *fig. 238*. They are identified by the word “AIRBAG” on the windshield frame and the center roof pillar. ▶

The side curtain airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury for occupants' heads and upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The side curtain airbag inflates in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 246, How side curtain airbags work*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a collision so that the side curtain airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 218, General information*.

It is important to remember that while the side curtain airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, and minor abrasions can also be associated with these airbags upon deployment. Remember too, these airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

The side curtain airbag system basically consists of:

– The electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– The side curtain airbags above the front and rear side windows
– The airbag indicator light in the instrument panel

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you switch on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side curtain airbag is not activated:

– if the ignition is switched off,
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low,
– in rear-end collisions.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 54, Seats and storage*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 23* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How side curtain airbags work

Side curtain airbags can work together with side airbags to help reduce the risk of head and upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.

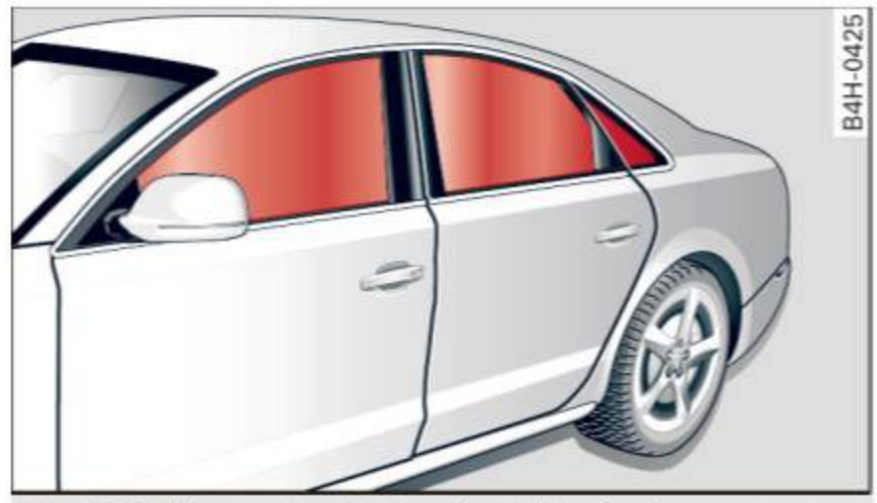


Fig. 239 Illustration of principle: Inflated side curtain airbags on the left side

The side curtain airbags inflate between the occupant and the windows in a side collision ⇨ *fig. 239*.

When the system is triggered, the side curtain airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam above the front and rear side windows identified by the AIRBAG label. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side curtain airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The side curtain airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side curtain airbag inflates. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 248*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, side curtain airbags can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side curtain airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- Never let occupants place any parts of their bodies in the area from which the side curtain airbags inflate.
- Always make sure that the side curtain airbags can inflate without interference. Unsuitable accessories fitted inside the expansion range of a side curtain airbag can dangerously interfere with its function. A deploying head airbag develops enough force to catapult any piece of add-on component out of its path of inflation and into the passenger compartment. An occupant hit by such a projectile can suffer serious injury or death ⇨ *page 338, Technical Modifications*.
- Do not swivel the sun visors to the side if you have any objects clipped onto them (for example pens). If the airbag should deploy, you could be injured by these objects.
- Use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident.
- Never use hangers to hang clothing from the hooks.
- Only use factory-installed sun shades or, in the case of shades installed after the vehicle leaves the factory, only Audi roll-up sunscreens may be used ⇨ *page 338, Additional accessories and parts replacement*.
- Always sit in proper seating position and wear safety belts while traveling so that the side curtain airbags can help provide protection.
- The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Always have work involving the side curtain airbag system, removal and installation of the airbag components, or other repairs performed by a qualified dealership. Otherwise the airbag system may not work correctly.
- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.

Child safety

Important information

Introduction

The rear seat is generally the safest place in a collision.

The physical principles of what happens when your vehicle is in a crash apply also to children ⇨ *page 219, What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?*. But unlike adults and teenagers, their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in crashes than adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they require restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

In a frontal crash at a speed of 20-35 mph (30-56 km/h) the forces acting on a 13-pound (6 kg) infant will be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the weight of the child would suddenly be more than 260 pounds (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury. Child restraints, like adult safety belts, must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in an accident.

All children, especially those 12 years and younger must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. If you must install a child restraint on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances, be sure to read and heed the important information and warnings ⇨ *page 227*. Infants and other children who are properly restrained in an appropriate child restraint that is for their size and age can benefit from the protection that supplemental side airbags provide in some kinds of crashes.

For more information please see information provided by the:

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), currently at : http://www.safercar.gov (for the USA)
- Transport Canada Information Centre, currently at: http://www.tc.gc.ca (for Canada)

Consult the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions in order to be sure the seat is right for your child's size ⇨ *page 251, Important safety instructions for using child safety seats*. Please be sure to read and heed all of the important information and WARNINGS about child safety, Advanced Airbags, and the installation of child restraints in this chapter.

There is a lot you need to know about the Advanced Airbags in your vehicle and how they work when infants and children in child restraints are on the front passenger seat. Because of the large amount of important information, we cannot repeat it all here. We urge you to read the detailed information in this owner's manual about airbags and the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle and the very important information about transporting children on the front passenger seat. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

- Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position. Always restrain any child age 12 and under in the rear.
- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.

WARNING

Children on the front seat of any car even with Advanced Airbags can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
- Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
- Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
- Always make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

Tips

Always replace child restraints that were installed in a vehicle during a crash. Damage to a child restraint that is not visible could cause it to fail in another collision situation.

Advanced front airbag system and children

Your vehicle is equipped with a front “Advanced Airbag System” in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Advanced Airbag system in your vehicle has been certified to meet the “low-risk” requirements for 3- and 6-year old children on the passenger side and small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates. In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the “suppression” requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants up to 12 months who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

4H0012721BD

Advanced Airbags and the weight-sensing mat in the front seat

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle detects the presence of an infant or child in a child restraint on the front passenger seat using the weight-sensing mat in the seat cushion and the sensor below the safety belt latch on the front passenger seat that measures the tension on the safety belt.

The weight-sensing mat measures total weight of the child and the child safety seat and a child blanket on the front passenger seat. The weight on the front passenger seat is related to the design of the child restraint and its “footprint”, the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint as it sits on the seat. The weight of a child restraint and its “footprint” vary for different kinds of child restraints and for the different models of the same kind of child restraint offered by child restraint manufacturers.

The weight ranges for the individual types, makes and models of child restraints that the NHTSA has specified in the Safety Standard together with the weight ranges of typical infants and typical 1 year-old child have been stored in the control unit of the Advanced Airbag System. When a child restraint is being used on the front passenger seat with a typical 1 year-old child, the Advanced Airbag System compares the weight measured by the weight sensing mat with the information stored in the electronic control unit.

The electronic control unit also registers the tension on the front passenger safety belt. The tension on the safety belt for the front passenger seat will be different for an adult who is properly using the safety belt as compared to the tension on the belt when it is used to attach a child restraint to the seat. The sensor below the latch for the safety belt for the front seat passenger measures the tension on the belt. The input from this sensor is then used with the weight to “decide”, whether there is a child restraint with a typical 1 year-old child on the front passenger seat and whether or not the airbag must be turned off.

Child restraints and Advanced Airbags

Regardless of the child restraint that you use, make sure that it has been certified to meet Safety Standards and has been certified by its manufacturer for use with an airbag. Always be sure that the child restraint is properly installed at one of the rear seating positions. If in exceptional circumstances you must use it on the front passenger seat, carefully read all of the information on child safety and Advanced Airbags and heed all of the applicable WARNINGS. Make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the weight-sensing mat inside the front passenger seat, that the front passenger airbag is turned off and that the airbag status is always correctly signaled by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light.

Many types and models of child restraints have been available over the years, new models are introduced regularly incorporating new and improved designs and older models are taken out of production. Child restraints are not standardized. Child restraints of the same type typically have different weights and sizes and different 'footprints,' the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint that sits on the seat, when they are installed on a vehicle seat. These differences make it virtually impossible to certify compliance with the requirements for advanced airbags with each and every child restraint that has ever been sold in the past or will be sold over the course of the useful life of your vehicle.

For this reason, the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration has published a list of specific type, makes and models of child restraints that must be used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. These child restraints are:

Subpart A – Car bed child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Angel Guard Angel Ride AA2403FOF	September 25, 2007

Subpart B – Rear-facing child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Century SmartFit 4543	December 1, 1999
Cosco Arriva 22-013PAW and base 22-999WHO	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Discovery Adjust Right 212	December 1, 1999
Evenflo First Choice 204	December 1, 1999
Graco Infant 8457	December 1, 1999
Graco Snugride	September 25, 2007
Peg Perego Primo Viaggio SIP IMUN00US	September 25, 2007

Subpart C – Forward-facing and convertible child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Britax Roundabout E9L02xx	September 25, 2007
Cosco Touriva 02519	December 1, 1999
Cosco Summit Deluxe High Back Booster 22-262	September 25, 2007
Cosco High Back Booster 22-209	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Tribute V 379xxxx	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Medallion 254	December 1, 1999
Evenflo Generations 352xxxx	September 25, 2007
Graco ComfortSport	September 25, 2007
Graco Toddler Safety Seat Step 2	September 25, 2007
Graco Platinum Cargo	September 25, 2007

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

Tips

The child seats listed in categories A to C have been statically tested by Audi only for the Advanced Airbag function.

Important safety instructions for using child safety seats

Correct use of child safety seats substantially reduces the risk of injury in an accident!

As the driver, you are responsible for the safety of everybody in the vehicle, especially children:

- Always use the right child safety seat for each child and always use it properly ⇨ *page 254*.
- Always carefully follow the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions on how to route the safety belt properly through the child safety seat.
- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 258*.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).
- If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child safety seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 253*.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. ▶

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

- All vehicle occupants and especially children must always be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle.
  - An unrestrained or improperly restrained child can be injured or killed by being thrown against the inside of the vehicle or by being ejected from it during a sudden maneuver or impact.
  - An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is at much greater risk of injury or death by being struck by an inflating airbag.
- Commercially available child safety seats are required to comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 213 (in Canada CMVSS 213).
  - When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and the vehicle.
  - Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child restraint must not tip or lean to either side. Audi does not recommend using child safety seats that rest on legs or tube-like frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.
  - Always heed all legal requirements pertaining to the installation and use of child safety seats and carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the seat you are using.
- Never allow children under 57 inches (1.45 meters) to wear a normal safety belt. They must always be restrained by a proper child restraint system. Otherwise, they could sustain injuries to the abdomen and neck areas during sudden braking maneuvers or accidents.
- Never let more than one child occupy a child safety seat.
- Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.
  - Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system.
  - The strongest person could not hold the child with the forces that exist in an accident. The child will strike the interior of the vehicle and can also be struck by the passenger.
  - The child and the passenger can also injure each other in an accident.
- Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Make sure there is enough space in front of the child in the child seat. If necessary, adjust the angle and position of the seat in front of the child seat.
- Forward-facing child safety seats installed on the front passenger's seat can interfere with the airbag when it inflates and cause serious injury to the child. Always install forward-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:
  - Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
  - Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and ▶

aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
- Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
- Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
- Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.

– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 218, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 226, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 248, Child safety*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
- Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat

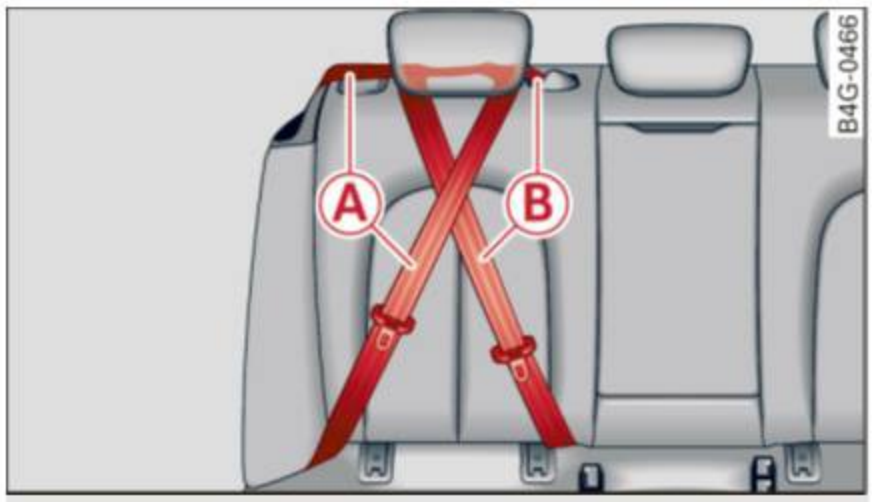


Fig. 240 Schematic overview: keep unused safety belts away from children in child safety seats. Ⓐ - outer rear safety belt, Ⓑ - center rear safety belt

If a child safety seat is used on the rear bench, especially with LATCH universal lower anchorages, the unused safety belts **must** be secured so that the child in the child restraint cannot reach them ⇨ ⚠.

– Guide the safety belt webbing behind the head restraint of the adjacent seat ⇨ *fig. 240*. When doing so, do not engage the convertible locking retractor! You should not hear a “clicking” sound when winding up the safety belt.
– Let the belt retractor wind up the safety belt webbing.

WARNING

A child in a child safety seat installed with the LATCH lower anchorages or with the standard safety belt or a child in a booster seat on the rear seat could play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled. This could cause the child serious personal injury and even death.
- Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of reach of children in child seats such as by properly routing them around the head restraint of the seat where the child restraint is installed.
- Never activate the convertible locking retractor when routing the safety belts around the head restraints.
- Never let anyone sit at the center rear seating position if the center rear safety belt has been routed around a rear head restraint.

Child seats

Infant seats

Babies and infants up to about one year old and 20 lbs. or 9 kg need special rearward-facing child restraints that support the back, neck and head in a crash.

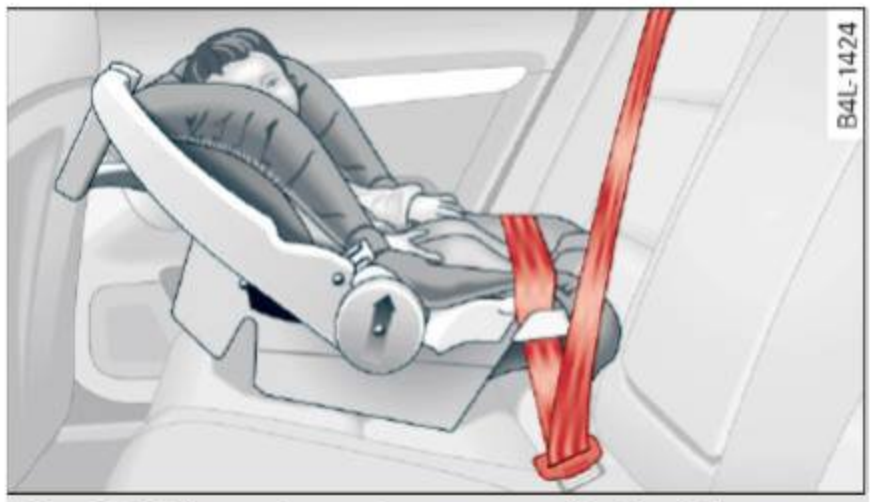


Fig. 241 Schematic overview: rearward-facing infant seat, properly installed on the rear seat

- ▸ When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 258* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.
- ▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).
- ▸ Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 253*.

Infants up to about one year (20 lbs. or 9 kg) are best protected in special infant carriers and child safety seats designed for their age group. Many experts believe that infants and small children should ride only in special restraints in which the child faces the back of the vehicle. These infant seats support the baby's back, neck and head in a crash ⇨ *fig. 241*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a crash.

- Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat - even with an Advanced Airbag System. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the inflating airbag hits the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and smashes the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof ⇨ *page 227, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. Such restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if the seat is forward-facing.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 218, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 226, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 248, Important information*.

Convertible child safety seats

Properly used convertible child safety seats can help protect toddlers and children over age one who weigh between 20 and 40 lbs. (9 and 18 kg) in a crash.

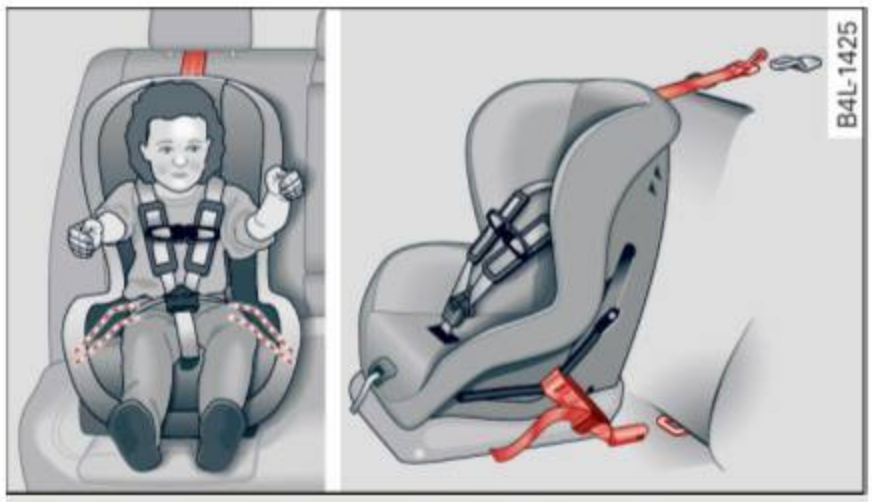


Fig. 242 Schematic overview: installation of the attachments applicable to a LATCH seat

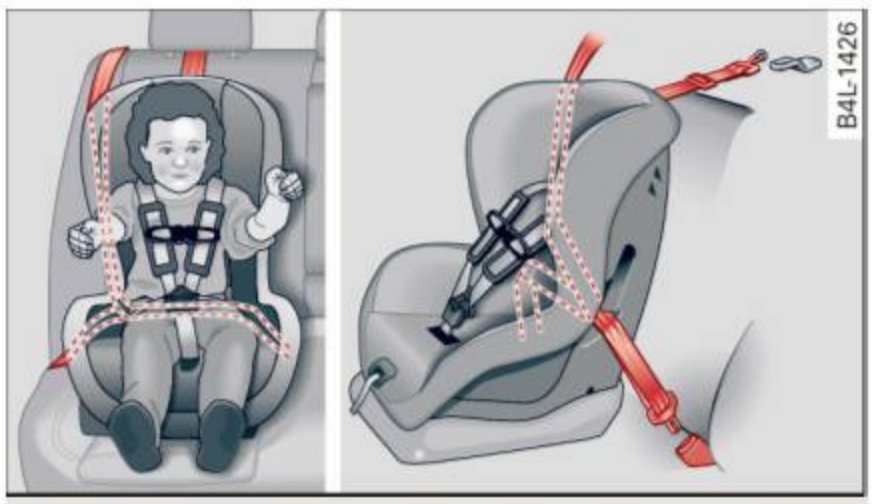


Fig. 243 Schematic overview: installation of the seat using the vehicle's safety belt system

- ▸ When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 258* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.
- ▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm) ⇨ *page 258*.
- ▸ If the child safety seat is equipped with a tether strap, attach it to the tether anchors ⇨ *page 264*.
- ▸ Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 253*.

A toddler or child is usually too large for an infant restraint if it is more than one year old and weighs more than 20 lbs. (9 kg).

Toddlers and children who are older than one year up to about 4 years old and weigh more than 20 lbs (9 kg) up to 40 lbs. (18 kg) must always be properly restrained in a child safety seat certified for their size and weight ⇨ *fig. 242* and ⇨ *fig. 243*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

- – Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- – The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.
- – Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- – If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- – The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat. Adjust the rear seat head restraint if it is difficult to install the child seat with the head restraint in ▸

place ⇨ *page 210*. Driving with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 218, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 226, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 248, Important information*.

WARNING

If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:
– Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or infant carrier.
– Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
– Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
– Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
– Always make sure the backrest is in an upright position.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the light does not stay on, perform the checks ⇨ *page 236, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.

Booster seats and safety belts

Properly used booster seats can help protect children weighing between about 40 lbs. and 80 lbs. (18 kg and 36 kg) who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall.



Fig. 244 Rear seat: child properly restrained in a booster seat

The vehicle's safety belts alone will not fit most children until they are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall and weigh about 80 lbs. (36 kg). Booster seats raise these children up so that the safety belt will pass properly over the stronger parts of their bodies and the safety belt can help protect them in a crash.

- Do not use the convertible locking retractor when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.
- The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- If you must transport an older child in a booster seat on the front passenger seat, you can use the safety belt height adjustment to help adjust the shoulder portion properly.
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 253*.

Children up to at least 8 years old (over 40 lbs or 18 kg) are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight. Experts say that the skeletal structure, particularly the pelvis, of these children is not fully developed, and they must not use the vehicle safety belts without a suitable child restraint.

It is usually best to put these children in appropriate booster seats. Be sure the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places. The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection, whether or not a booster seat is used. Children age 12 and under must always ride in the rear seat.

Children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/ 1.45 meters) tall can generally use the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. Never use the lap belt portion of the vehicle's safety belt alone to restrain any child, regardless of how big the child is. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belt portion of the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. The child's safety absolutely requires that a lap belt portion of the safety belt be fastened snugly and as low as possible around the pelvis. Never let the lap belt portion of the safety belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

In a crash, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

A vehicle occupant who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injury.

In order for the airbag to offer protection, it is important that all vehicle occupants, especially any children, who must be in the front seat because of exceptional circumstances, be properly restrained and as far away from the airbag as possible. By keeping room between the child's body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions.

WARNING

Not using a booster seat, using the booster seat improperly, incorrectly installing a booster seat or using the vehicle safety belt improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:

- The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child’s collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure that the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in an accident or other emergency situation ⇨ *page 218*.
- The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat. Adjust the rear seat head restraint if it is difficult to install the child seat with the head restraint in place ⇨ *page 210*. Driving with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let a child put the shoulder belt under the arm or behind the back, because it could cause severe injuries in a crash.
- Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat, for example the front seat.
- Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your vehicle.
- Always remember that a child leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in ▶

any way during an accident can be struck by a deploying airbag. This will result in serious personal injury or death.
– If you must install a booster seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on, whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 236, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 218, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 226, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 248, Important information*.

Securing child seats

Securing a child safety seat using a safety belt

Safety belts for the rear seats and the front passenger can be locked with the convertible locking retractor to properly secure child safety seats.

The safety belts emergency locking retractors for the rear seats safety belts and for the front passenger's seat safety belt have a convertible locking retractor for child restraints. The safety belt must be locked so that belt webbing cannot unreel. The retractor can be activated to lock the safety belt and prevent the safety belt webbing from loosening up during normal driving. A child safety seat can only be properly installed when the safety belt is locked so that the child and child safety seat will stay in place.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.
– Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
– Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used to secure a child restraint.
– If the backrest is not securely latched, the child and the child restraint will be thrown forward together with the backrest and will strike parts of the vehicle interior. The child can be seriously injured or killed.
– Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
– Forward-facing child safety seats or infant carriers installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child.
– It is safer to install a forward-facing child safety seat on the rear seat.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 248*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 227, Child* ▶

restraints on the front seat – some important things to know.

WARNING

Always take special precautions if you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat in exceptional situations:

– Whenever a forward or rearward-facing child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 236, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
– Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
– An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child.
– Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
– Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.

WARNING

Forward-facing child restraints:

– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up, against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
– Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Rearward-facing child restraints:

– A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always be especially careful if you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.
– A tight tether strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-mat in the seat and register a heavier weight in the Advanced Airbag System. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

4H0012721BD

Activating the convertible locking retractor

Use the convertible locking retractor to secure a child restraint.

Always heed the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle. To activate the convertible locking retractor:

- ▸ Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on the rear seat.
- ▸ Slowly pull the belt **all the way out**.
- ▸ Route it around or through the child restraint belt path ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight.
- ▸ Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.
- ▸ Guide the safety belt back into the retractor until the belt lies flat and snug on the child safety seat.
- ▸ You should hear a “clicking” noise as the belt winds back into the inertia reel. Test the convertible locking retractor by pulling on the belt. You should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor. The convertible locking retractor is now activated.
- ▸ Make sure that the red release button is facing away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure the safety belt is properly tight and fastened so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong child restraint or an improperly installed child restraint can cause serious personal injury or death in a crash.

– Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a crash.
– Always make sure the seat backrest to which the child restraint is installed is in an upright position and securely latched into place and cannot fold forward. Otherwise, the seatback with the child safety seat attached to it could fly forward in the event of an accident or other emergency situation.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 248*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 227, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

Deactivating the convertible locking retractor

The convertible locking retractor for child restraints will be deactivated automatically when the belt is wound all the way back into the retractor.

- ▸ Press the red button on the safety belt buckle. The belt tongue will pop out of the buckle.
- ▸ Guide the safety belt all the way back into its stowed position.

Always let the safety belt retract completely into its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary safety belt without the convertible locking retractor for child restraints.

If the convertible locking retractor should be activated inadvertently, the safety belt must be unfastened and guided completely back into its stowed position to deactivate this feature. If the convertible locking retractor is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

– Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the convertible locking retractor for child restraints while the vehicle is moving. You ▸

would not be restrained and could be seriously injured in an accident.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 248*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 227, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know.*

LATCH system (Lower anchorages and tethers for children)

Child Restraint System anchors and how are they related to child safety

To provide a simpler and more practicable way to attach the child restraint on the vehicle seat, Federal regulations require special lower anchorages in vehicles and devices on new child restraints to attach to the vehicle anchorages.

In the United States, the combination of the tether anchorages and the lower anchorages is now generally called the LATCH system for "**L**ower **A**nchorages and **T**ethers for **Ch**ildren". In Canada, the terms "top tether" with "lower universal anchorages" (or "lower universal anchorage bars") are used to describe the system.

In other countries the term "ISOFIX" is used to describe the lower anchorages.

Forward-facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child seats.

Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without one can seriously impair the performance of the child restraint and its ability to protect the child in a collision. Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without the top tether may be a violation of state law.

Child restraint manufacturers offer LATCH lower anchorages on their child seats with hook-on or push-on connectors attached to adjustable straps.

In addition to the LATCH lower anchorages, these child restraint systems usually require the use of tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.
– Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your vehicle.
– Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.
– Improper use of child restraint LATCH lower anchorage points can lead to injury in a collision. The LATCH lower anchorage points are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
– Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchorage point.
– Never secure or attach any luggage or other item to the LATCH lower anchorages.

Location

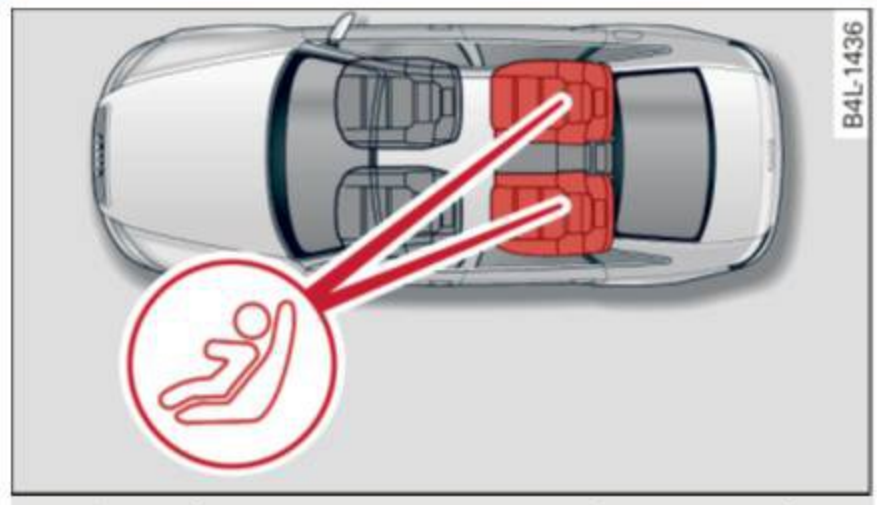


Fig. 245 Schematic overview: LATCH anchorage point locations

The illustration shows the seating locations in your vehicle which are equipped with the lower anchorages system.

Description

The lower anchorage positions are marked for quick locating.

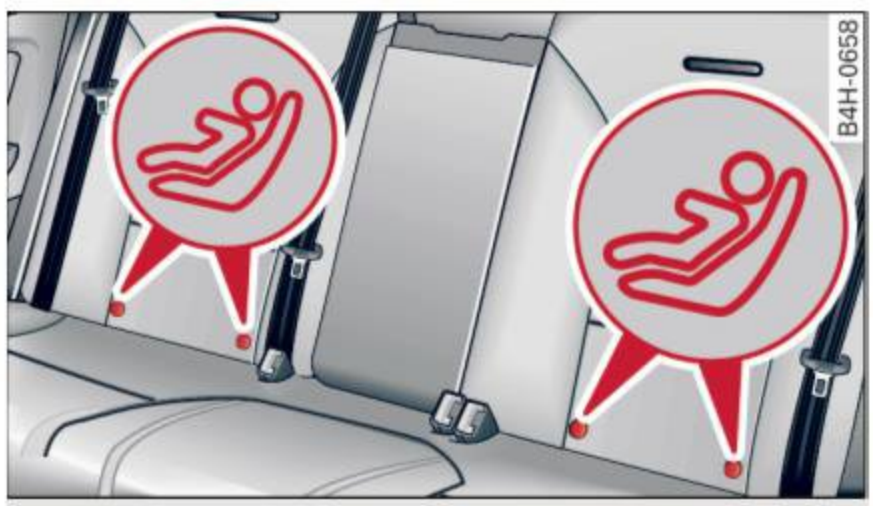


Fig. 246 Rear seatbacks: locator buttons for lower anchorages

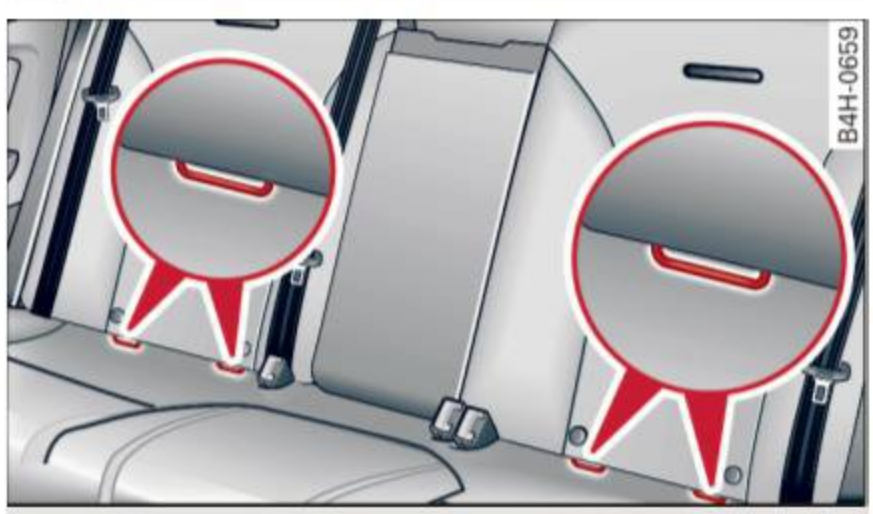


Fig. 247 Rear seats: lower anchorage bracket locations

Attachment locator markers for lower anchorages

Circular locator buttons on the rear seatback indicate the lower anchorage locations on the rear seating positions ⇨ *fig. 246*.

Lower anchorages

The lower anchorage attachment points are located between the rear seatback and rear seat cushion ⇨ *fig. 247*.

Lower anchorages secure the child restraint in the seat without using the vehicle's safety belts. Anchorages provide a secure and easy-to-use attachment and minimize the possibility of improper child restraint installation.

All child restraints manufactured after September 1, 2002, must have lower anchorage attachments for the *LATCH* system.

Remember that the lower anchorage points are only intended for installation and attachment of child restraints specifically certified for use with *LATCH* lower anchorages. Child restraints that are not equipped with the lower anchorage attachments can still be installed in compliance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions on using vehicle safety belts.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of LATCH lower anchorages can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- Always carefully follow the child restraints manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint and proper use of the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the *LATCH* lower anchorages.
- Always read and heed the important information about child restraints in this chapter and WARNINGS ⇨ *page 248, Child safety*.

Guidance fixtures for lower anchorages

Special guidance fixtures increase the convenience of the lower anchorages and are available from your authorized Audi dealer.



Fig. 248 Outer rear seats: installing the guidance fixtures

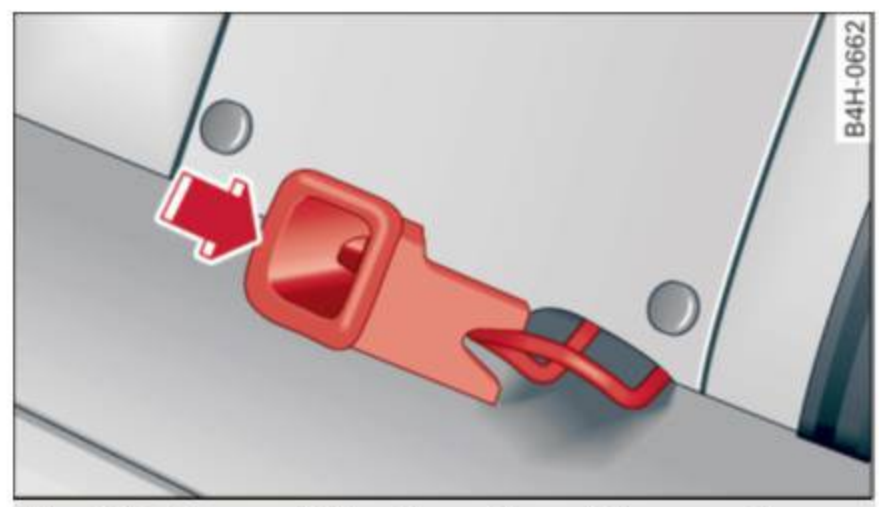


Fig. 249 Close-up: fitting the guidance fixture over the lower anchorage bracket

The lower anchorage attachment points are located on the rear seats between the seatback and the seat cushion. Special guidance fixtures increase the convenience of the lower anchorages and help protect the seat material from possible damage when installing child restraints.

Installing the guidance fixtures

- ▸ Push down on the seat cushion so that the lower anchorages are visible.
- ▸ Hold the guidance fixture with the part number facing downward and push it in the direction of the arrow onto the anchorage ⇨ *fig. 249*.
- ▸ Make sure that each of the two guidance fixtures per seat snaps into place.

Removing the guidance fixtures

- ▸ Remove the child restraint according the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Push down on the seat cushion so that the lower anchorages are visible.
- ▸ Pull off the guidance fixtures from the lower anchorages.
- ▸ Always remove the guidance fixtures and keep them in a safe place when not in use.

You may find it easier to install child restraints equipped with hooks attached to straps without the guidance fixtures in place. If this is the case, remove the guidance fixtures by pulling them off the anchorages. However, the guidance fixtures can help you to locate the *LATCH* anchorages.

WARNING

Improper use of tether anchorages or lower anchorages can cause serious personal injury in a crash.

- Always carefully follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for proper installation and use of child restraint systems.
- Never use the *LATCH* or tether anchorages to attach safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.
- Child restraint tether attachments and lower attachments are only designed to secure a child restraint that has been equipped to use these anchorages.
- Tether anchorages and lower anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances can they be used safely for adult or child safety belts or harnesses.
- Never mount more than one child restraint to a single tether or to a lower anchorage point. Attaching two child restraints to a single anchorage point can cause the anchorage to fail and cause serious personal injury in a crash.

Note

- Remove the guidance fixtures before folding the rear seatback to prevent damaging the seat cushion.
- To attach the child restraint securely, the seat must be moved to the farthest rear position, the seat height set to the lowest position and the head restraint must be adjusted to the vertical position.
- If you leave the guidance fixtures installed for several days, they could leave a mark on the upholstery on the seat cushion and backrest in the area that the guidance fixtures were installed. The upholstery would also be permanently stretched around the guidance fixtures. This applies especially to leather seats.

Installing a child restraint with LATCH lower anchorages

Whenever you install a child restraint always follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

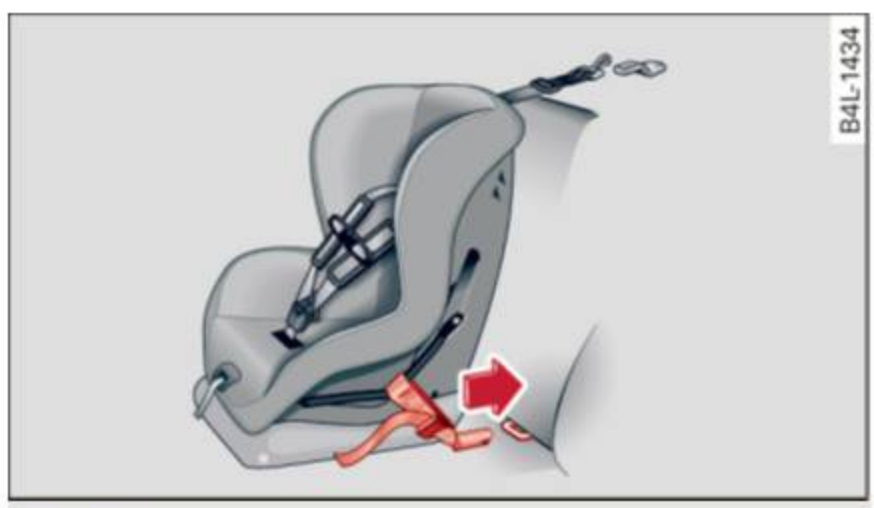


Fig. 250 Lower anchorages: proper mounting

4H0012721BD

Mounting

- Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.
- Attach both hook-on connectors with the spring catch release on the child safety seat onto the LATCH lower anchorage so that the connectors lock into place ⇨ *fig. 250*.
- Pull on the connector attachments to make sure they are properly attached to the LATCH lower anchorage.
- Pull straps tight following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Releasing

- Loosen the tension on the straps following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- Depress the spring catches to release the anchorage hooks from the lower anchorages.

Remember: Use tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

WARNING

Improper use of the LATCH system can increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in an accident.

– These anchors were developed only for child safety seats using the “LATCH” system.
– Never attach other child safety seats, belts or other objects to these anchors.
– Always make sure that you hear a click when latching the seat in place. If you do not hear a click the seat is not secure and could fly forward and hit the interior of the vehicle, or be ejected from the vehicle.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

– Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint system and proper use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
– Always read and heed the important information and WARNINGS about child safety and the installation of child restraint systems ⇨ *page 248, Child safety*.

Note

On vehicles with power adjustable rear seats* some criteria must be observed when attaching the child restraint using the **LATCH** system:

– To attach the child restraint securely, the seat must be moved to the farthest rear position, the seat height set to the lowest position and the head restraint must be adjusted to the vertical position.
– If a child safety seat is attached to one of the rear seats, this seat must not be adjusted using the power controls under any circumstances. The **Entry assistance** for this seat must also be deactivated in the MMI ⇨ *page 58*. The child safety seat as well as the rear seat can be damaged by the adjustment process.

Tether anchors and tether straps

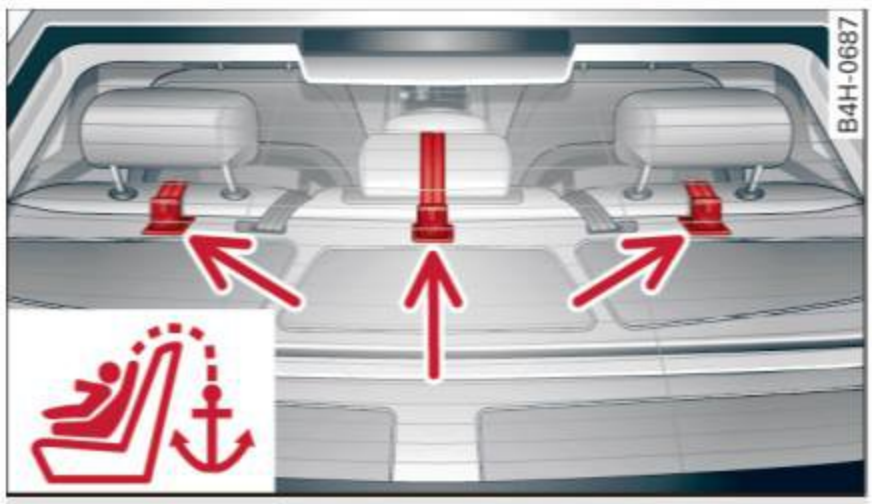


Fig. 251 Tether anchors: recess flaps behind the rear seatbacks

The tether anchors for the two*/three rear seating positions are located in recesses in the rear window shelf ⇨ *fig. 251*. Vehicles with two rear seating positions* are equipped with two tether anchors.

A tether is a straight or V-shaped strap that attaches the top part of a child restraint to special anchorage points in the vehicle.

The purpose of the tether is to reduce the forward movement of the child restraint in a crash, in order to help reduce the risk of head injury ▶

that could be caused by striking the vehicle interior.

Forward facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child safety seats.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your Audi.
- Improper use of child restraint anchors (including tether anchors) can lead to injury in a collision. The anchors are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchor point.
- Never attach two child restraint systems to one tether strap or tether anchorage.
- Never attach a tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment.
- Never use child restraint tether anchorages to secure safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages or to the tether anchors.
- If a tether or other strap is used to attach a child restraint to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight, that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.
- The heavier weight registered can make the Advanced Airbag System work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage

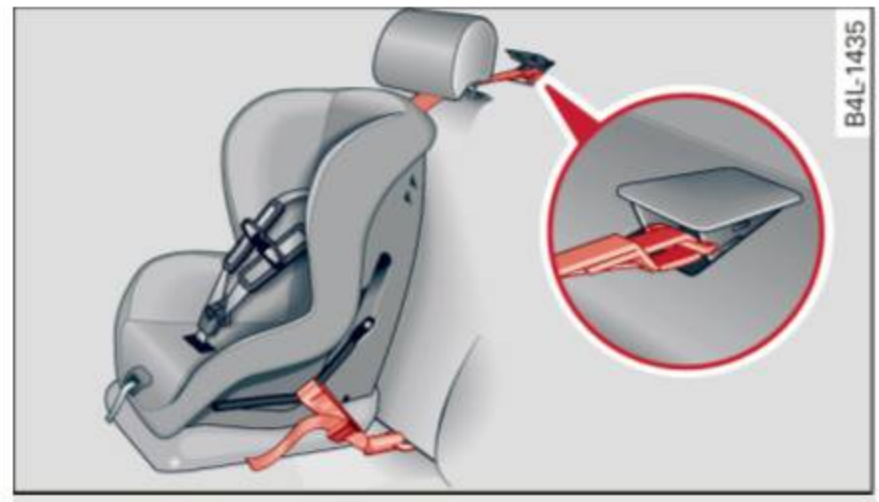


Fig. 252 Tether strap: proper routing and mounting

Installing the tether strap

- ▸ Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Guide the upper tether strap **under** the rear head restraint ⇨ *fig. 252* (raise the head restraint if necessary). For child restraints with V-tether straps, always make sure that the head restraint guide rods do not interfere with any part of the top tether strap.
- ▸ Center seating position*: Guide the upper tether strap over the rear head restraint.
- ▸ Tilt the recess flap up to expose the anchor bracket.
- ▸ Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage.
- ▸ Pull on the tether strap hook so that the spring catch of the hook engages.
- ▸ Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Releasing the tether strap

- ▸ Loosen the tension following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Depress the spring catch on the hook and release it from the anchorage. ▶

Note

If you leave the child restraint with the tether strap firmly installed for several days, this could leave a mark on the upholstery on the seat cushion and backrest in the area where the tether strap was installed. The upholstery would also be permanently stretched around the tether strap. This applies especially to leather seats.

Using tether straps on rearward-facing child restraints

Currently, few rear-facing child restraint systems come with a tether. Please read and heed the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions carefully to determine how to properly install the tether.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.
- A tight tether or other strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-mat in the seat and register a heavier weight in the Advanced Airbag System. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Additional information

Sources of information about child restraints and their use

There are a number of sources of additional information about child restraint selection, installation and use:

NHTSA advises that the best child safety seat is the one that fits your child and fits in your vehicle, and that you will use correctly and consistently.

Try before you buy!

U.S National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153)
http://www.nhtsa.gov
http://www.safercar.gov

National SAFE KIDS Campaign
Tel.: (202) 662-0600
http://www.safekids.org

Safety BeltSafe U.S.A
Tel.: (800) 745-SAFE (English)
Tel.: (800) 747-SANO (Spanish)
http://www.carseat.org

Transport Canada Information Centre
Tel.: 1-800-333-0371 or call 1-613-998-8616 if you are in the Ottawa area
http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm

Audi Customer Relations
Tel.: (800) 822-2834

Checking and Filling

Gasoline

Fuel supply

Applies to: vehicles with gasoline engine

Using the right fuel helps keep the environment clean and prevents engine damage.

Fuel recommendation

The fuel recommended for your vehicle is **unleaded premium** grade gasoline. Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 91 AKI (95 RON). For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

The recommended gasoline octane rating for your engine can also be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler flap. This rating may be specified as AKI or RON.

Your vehicle may also be operated using unleaded regular gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 87 AKI/91 RON. However, using 87 AKI/91 RON octane fuel will slightly reduce engine performance.

Use unleaded gasoline only. Unleaded gasoline is available throughout the USA, Canada, and in most European countries. We recommend that you do not take your vehicle to areas or countries where unleaded gasoline may not be available.

For more information on refueling your vehicle, see ⇨ *page 268*.

Octane rating

Octane rating indicates a gasoline's ability to resist engine damaging "knock" caused by premature ignition and detonation. Therefore, buying the correct grade of gasoline is very important to help prevent possible engine damage and a loss of engine performance.

Gasoline most commonly used in the United States and Canada has the following octane ratings that can usually be found on the filler pump:

– Premium Grade: 91 - 96 AKI

– Regular Grade: 87 - 90 AKI

Explanation of the abbreviations:

AKI = **A**nti **K**nock **I**ndex = (R+M)/2 = (RON+MON)/2

RON = **R**esearch **O**ctane **N**umber

MON = **M**otor **O**ctane **N**umber.

Note

– Do not use any fuel with octane ratings lower than 87 AKI or 91 RON otherwise expensive engine damage will occur.
– Do **not** use leaded gasoline. The use of leaded gasoline will severely damage your vehicle's catalytic converter and its ability to control exhaust emissions.

Blended gasoline

Applies to: vehicles with gasoline engine

Use of gasoline containing alcohol or MTBE (methyl tertiary butyl ether)

You may use unleaded gasoline blended with alcohol or MTBE (commonly referred to as oxygenates) if the blended mixture meets the following criteria:

Blend of gasoline methanol (wood alcohol or methyl alcohol)

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
– Blend must contain no more than 3% methanol.
– Blend must contain more than 2% co-solvents.

Blend of gasoline and ethanol (grain alcohol or ethyl alcohol)

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
– Blend must not contain more than 15% ethanol.

Blend of gasoline and MTBE

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
– Blend must contain not more than 15% MTBE.

Seasonally adjusted gasoline

Many gasoline grades are blended to perform especially well for winter or summer driving. During seasonal change-over, we suggest that you ▶

fill up at busy gas stations where the seasonal adjustment is more likely to be made in time.

Note

– Methanol fuels which do not meet these requirements may cause corrosion and damage to plastic and rubber components in the fuel system.
– Do not use fuels that fail to meet the specified criteria in this chapter.
– If you are unable to determine whether or not a particular fuel blend meets the specifications, ask your service station or its fuel supplier.
– Do not use fuel for which the contents cannot be identified.
– Fuel system damage and performance problems resulting from the use of fuels different from those specified are not the responsibility of Audi and are not covered under the New Vehicle or the Emission Control System Warranties.
– If you experience a loss of fuel economy or driveability and performance problems due to the use of one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel.

Gasoline additives

Applies to: vehicles with gasoline engine

A major concern among many auto manufacturers is carbon deposit build-up caused by the type of gasoline you use.

Although gasoline grades differ from one manufacturer to another, they have certain things in common. All gasoline grades contain substances that can cause deposits to collect on vital engine parts, such as fuel injectors and intake valves. Although most gasoline brands include additives to keep engine and fuel systems clean, they are not equally effective.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

After an extended period of using inadequate fuels, carbon deposit build-ups can rob your engine of peak performance.

Note

Damage or malfunction due to poor fuel quality is not covered by the Audi New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Refueling

Fuel filler neck

The fuel filler neck is located on the right rear side panel behind the fuel filler flap.

If the power locking system should fail, you can still open the flap manually - for detailed instructions see ⇨ *page 270*.

You can find the fuel tank capacity of your vehicle in ⇨ *page 334*.

The label on the inside of the fuel filler flap tells you the correct fuel for your vehicle. For more information about fuel specifications, see ⇨ *page 267*.

Your vehicle fuel tank has an onboard refuelling vapor recovery system. This feature helps to prevent fuel vapors from escaping from the tank and polluting the environment while you refuel your vehicle. In order to fill the tank properly while protecting the environment, please follow this refueling procedure carefully.

WARNING

Under normal operating conditions, never carry additional fuel containers in your car. Gas canisters and other containers used to transport fuel can be dangerous. Such containers, full or empty, may leak and could cause a fire in a collision. If you must transport fuel to use for your lawn mower, snow blower, etc., be very careful and always observe local and state laws regarding the use, transportation and storage of such fuel containers. Make certain the container meets industry standards (ANSI/ASTM F852 - 86). ▶

Note

Never drive your vehicle until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. Gasoline could enter the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.

Fueling procedure



Fig. 253 Right rear side of the vehicle: opening the fuel filler door



Fig. 254 Fuel filler door with attached fuel cap

The fuel filler door is unlocked or locked by the central locking system.

Opening the fuel cap

- ▸ Press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open ⇨ *fig. 253*.
- ▸ Unscrew the tank cap counterclockwise.
- ▸ Place the cap from above on the open fuel filler door ⇨ *fig. 254*.

Closing the fuel cap

- ▸ Screw the tank cap on to the right on the filler neck until it cannot turn any farther.
- ▸ Then press on the left side of the tank door until it latches.

Once the pump nozzle switches off, the fuel tank is "full". Do not fill the tank more. Otherwise the expansion space in the tank will be filled.

The correct fuel type for your vehicle can be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler door. For additional information on fuel, see ⇨ *page 267*.

The fuel tank capacity of your vehicle is listed in the **Technical Data** section ⇨ *page 334*.

To avoid fuel spilling or evaporating from the fuel tank always close fuel cap properly and completely. An improperly closed fuel filler cap may also cause the MIL lamp ⇨ *page 25* to come on.

WARNING

Not paying attention when fueling or handling fuel incorrectly can lead to fires, explosions or serious injuries.

- – Fuel ignites easily and can cause serious burns and other injuries.
- – If you do not switch the engine off when fueling and/or do not insert the fuel nozzle completely into the tank opening, fuel can leak out or run over. Leaked fuel can ignite and start a fire.
- – Do not use the telephone while fueling. The electromagnetic rays can cause sparks, which can ignite fuel vapors and start a fire.
- – Do not sit in your vehicle while fueling. If you must make an exception and enter your vehicle again while fueling, close the door and touch metal to discharge static electricity before touching the fuel nozzle. Static electricity can create sparks, which can ignite vapors when fueling.
- – Do not smoke or have an open flame in the area when fueling your vehicle or filling a fuel container because this increases the risk of an explosion.
- – For your safety, carrying fuel containers in your vehicle is not recommended. Whether full or empty, the container can leak and cause a fire in the event of an accident.
- – If you must make an exception and transport a fuel container, note the following: ▶

– Never fill the fuel container with fuel while it is in or on the vehicle. Static electricity is discharged when filling which can cause the fuel vapors to ignite and increases the risk of an explosion.
– Always place a fuel container on the ground before filling.
– Always hold the fuel nozzle completely in the fuel container when filling.
– If the fuel container is made of metal, the fuel nozzle must always be in contact with the container when filling it with fuel. This prevents static electricity from discharging.
– Never spill fuel in the vehicle or the luggage compartment. Evaporated fuel is explosive and increases the risk of serious injury or death.
– Follow legal requirements when using, storing and transporting fuel containers.
– Make sure the fuel container conforms to industry standards (ANSI/ASTM F852-86).

Note

– Remove spilled fuel from vehicle paint immediately, because it can damage paint.
– Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel will enter the exhaust system and increase the risk of damage to the catalytic converter.

For the sake of the environment

Do not overfill the fuel tank, otherwise fuel can leak out when the vehicle is warming up.

Tips

The fuel filler door on your vehicle does not lock if you lock the vehicle from the inside.

Fuel filler door emergency release

If the central locking system is faulty, the fuel filler door can be unlocked manually.

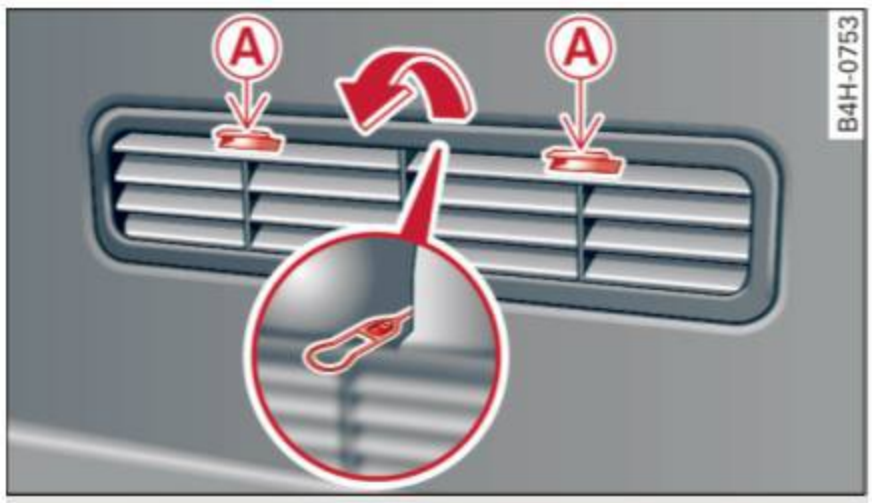


Fig. 255 Vehicles with selective catalytic reduction*: right side trim panel in the luggage compartment

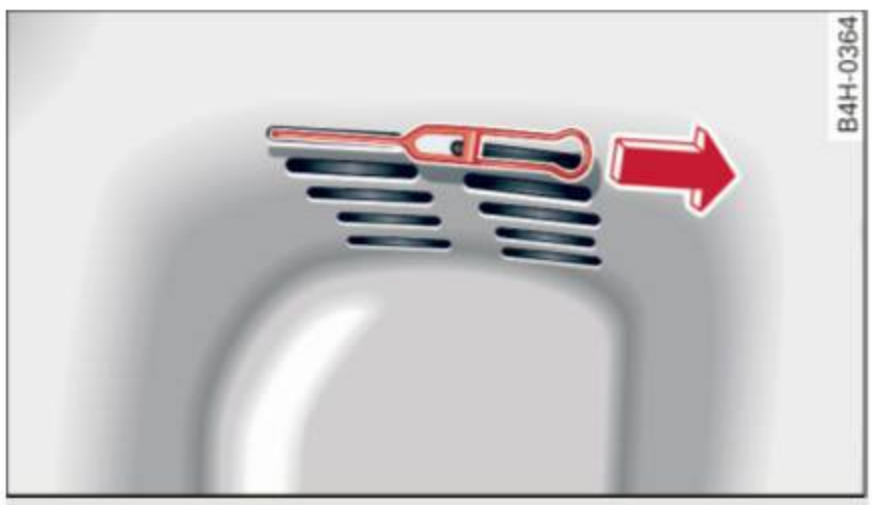


Fig. 256 Right side trim panel in the luggage compartment: emergency release mechanism

The emergency release mechanism is located behind the right side trim panel in the luggage compartment. In vehicles with selective catalytic reduction*, remove the vent grille first:

▸ Press both tabs Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 255* and tilt the vent grille downward. You can then remove the grille upward.
▸ Loosen the loop ⇨ *fig. 256* from the retainer and then pull on the loop carefully ⇨ ⓘ. The fuel filler door releases.
▸ Press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open it ⇨ *page 269, fig. 253*.

Note

Only pull on the loop until you feel resistance. You will not hear it release. Otherwise you could damage the emergency release mechanism.

Catalytic converter

Applies to: vehicles with gasoline engine

It is very important that your emission control system (catalytic converter) is functioning properly to ensure that your vehicle is running in an environmentally sound manner.

- ▸ Always use lead-free gasoline ⇨ *page 267, Fuel supply*.
- ▸ Never run the tank down all the way to empty.
- ▸ Never put too much motor oil in your engine ⇨ *page 276, Adding engine oil*.
- ▸ Never try to push- or tow-start your vehicle.

The catalytic converter is an efficient "clean-up" device built into the exhaust system of the vehicle. The catalytic converter burns many of the pollutants in the exhaust gas before they are released into the atmosphere.

The exclusive use of unleaded fuel is critically important for the life of the catalytic converter and proper functioning of the engine.

WARNING

The temperature of the exhaust system is high, both when driving and after stopping the engine.

- – Never touch the exhaust tail pipes once they have become hot. This could result in burns.
- – Do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other material which can cause a fire.
- – Do not apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or heat shields. During driving, the substance used for undercoating could overheat and cause a fire.

Note

- – Be aware that just one tank filling with **leaded** fuel will already seriously degrade the performance of the catalytic converter.
- – Do not exceed the correct engine oil level ⇨ *page 276*.
- – Do not drive until the fuel tank becomes completely empty. The engine could misfire. Unburned fuel could also get into the exhaust system and this could cause the catalytic converter to overheat.
- – Do not switch off the ignition while the vehicle is moving.
- – Do not continue to operate your vehicle under these conditions, as otherwise fuel can reach the catalytic converter. This could result in overheating of the converter, requiring its replacement.
- – To assure efficient operation of the Emission Control System:
  - – Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.
  - – Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.

For the sake of the environment

Even when the Emission Control System is operating properly, the exhaust gas can have a sulfur-like exhaust gas smell under some operating states. This depends on the sulfur content of the fuel being used. Using a different brand of fuel may help, or filling the tank with lead-free super grade gasoline.

Engine compartment

Working in the engine compartment

Special care is required if you are working in the engine compartment

For work in the engine compartment such as checking and filling fluids, there is a risk of injury, scalding, accidents, and burns. For this reason, follow all the warnings and general safety precautions provided in the following information. The engine compartment is a dangerous area on the vehicle. ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- – Turn the engine off.
- – Switch the ignition off. ▶

– Set the parking brake.
– Select the P selector lever position.
– Let the engine cool down.
– Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.
– Keep children away from the engine compartment.
– Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids (such as the anti-freezing agent contained in the coolant) can ignite.
– Avoid short circuits in the electrical system.
– When working in the engine compartment, remember that the radiator fan can switch on even if the ignition is switched off, which increases the risk of personal injury.
– Never open the cap on the coolant expansion tank when the engine is warm. The cooling system is under pressure.
– To protect your face, hands, and arms from hot steam or coolant, cover the cap with a large cloth when opening.
– Do not remove the engine cover under any circumstances. This increases the risk of burns.
– If tests need to be performed with the engine running, there is additional danger due to moving components (such as the ribbed belt, alternator and radiator fan) and from the high-voltage ignition system.
– Do not under any circumstances activate the throttle inadvertently (for example, by hand from the engine compartment) if the vehicle is stationary but the engine is running and a gear is engaged. Otherwise, the vehicle will start to move immediately and this could result in an accident.
– Pay attention to the following warnings listed when work on the fuel system or on the electrical equipment is required.
  – Do not smoke.
  – Never work near open flames.
  – Always have a working fire extinguisher nearby
– All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– To reduce the risk of electric shock and injury, never touch the following components when the engine is running or is being started:
  – Ignition cable
  – Other components in the electronic high-voltage ignition system
– If you must check or perform work on the engine while it is running:
  – Set the parking brake and place the selector lever in the P (park) position first.
  – Always proceed with extreme caution so that clothing, jewelry or long hair do not become caught in the radiator fan, fan belt or other moving components or do not come into contact with hot components. Tie back long hair before beginning work and do not wear clothing that can hang down into the engine.
– Limit your exposure to exhaust and chemicals to as short a time as possible ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:
– Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
– Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling. ▶

Note

When filling fluids, be sure not to mix the fluids up. Otherwise severe malfunctions and engine damage will occur.

For the sake of the environment

You should regularly check the ground under your vehicle in order to detect leaks quickly. If there are visible spots from oil or other fluids, bring your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to be checked.

Opening/closing the hood

The hood is released from inside the vehicle.

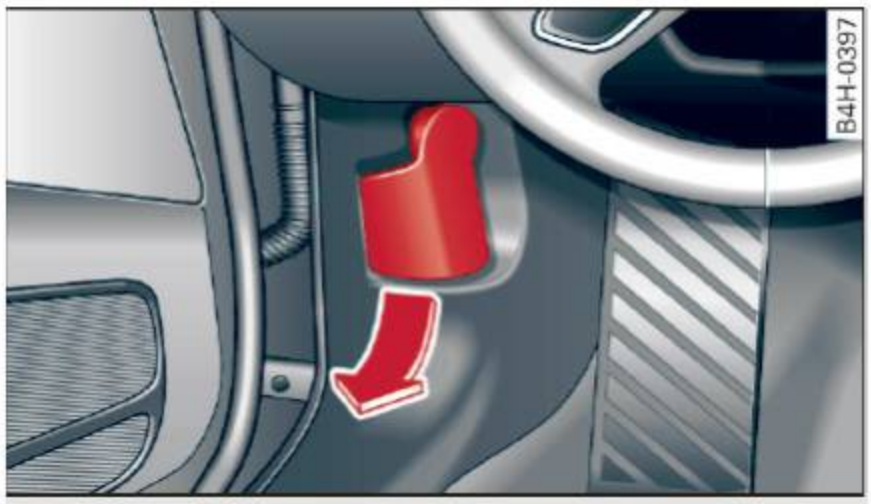


Fig. 257 Driver footwell: release lever



Fig. 258 Rocker switch under the hood

Make sure the wiper arms are not raised up from the windshield. Otherwise the paint could be damaged.

Opening the hood

- With the driver's door open, pull the lever below the instrument panel in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 257*.
- Raise the hood slightly ⇨ ⚠.
- Press the rocker switch under the hood upward ⇨ *fig. 258*. This releases the catch.
- Open the hood.

Closing the hood

- Push the hood down until you override the force of the strut.
- Let the hood fall lightly into the latch. *Do not press it in.* ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.

– For safety reasons, the hood must always be closed securely while driving. Because of this, always check the hood after closing it to make sure it is latched correctly. The hood is latched if the front corners cannot be lifted.

– If you notice that the hood is not latched while you are driving, stop immediately and close it, because driving when the hood is not latched increases the risk of an accident.

Engine compartment overview

The most important check points.

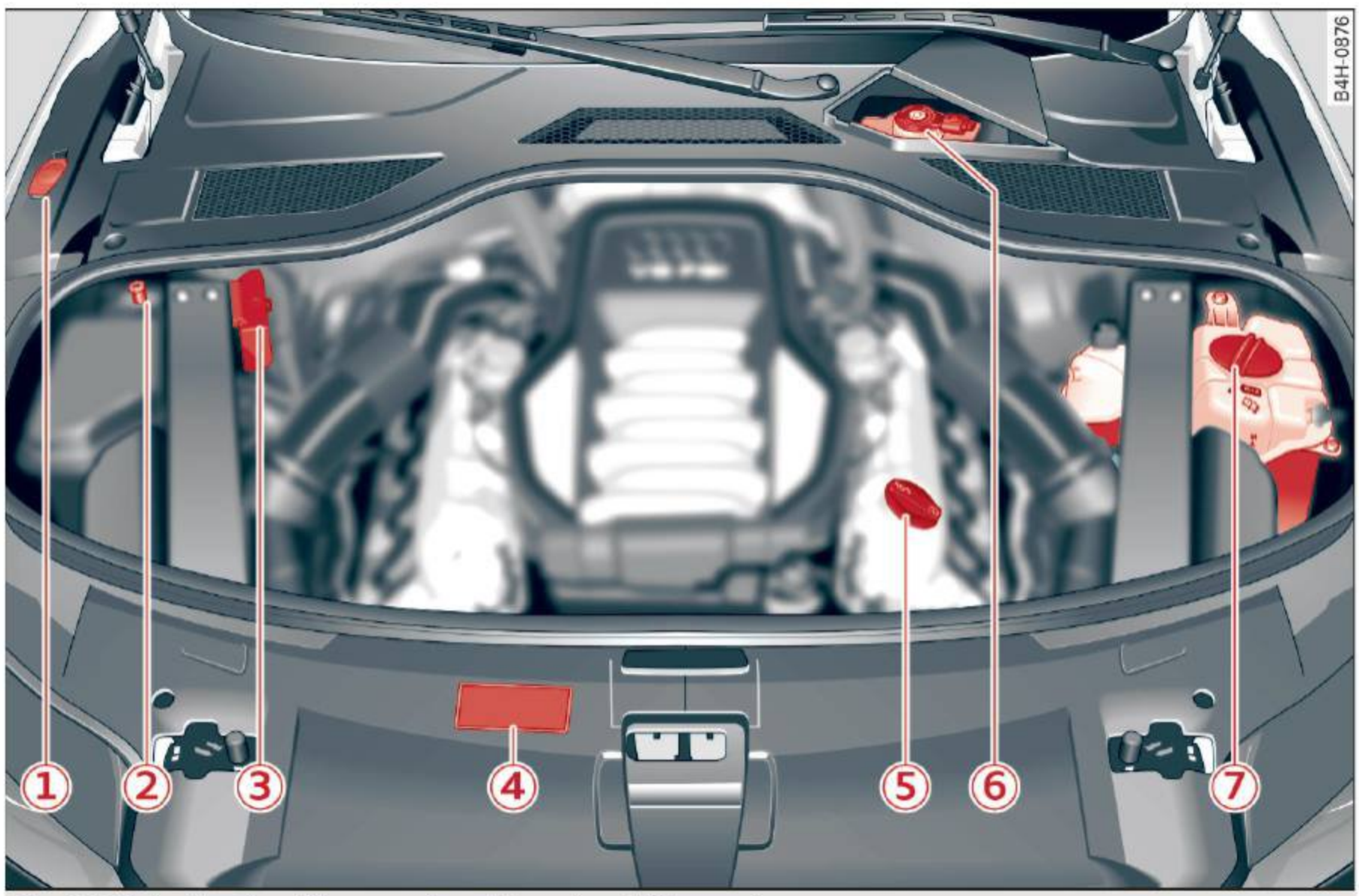


Fig. 259 Typical location of the reservoir and the engine oil filler opening

① Washer fluid reservoir (🚿) ⇨ *page 281*
② Jump start point (-) with hex head screw ⇨ *page 280*, ⇨ *page 327*
③ Jump start point (+) under a cover ⇨ *page 280*, ⇨ *page 327*
④ Engine oil label* with VW standard ⇨ *page 274*
⑤ Engine oil filler opening (🛢) ⇨ *page 276*
⑥ Brake fluid reservoir (⭕) ⇨ *page 279*
⑦ Coolant reservoir (🌡) ⇨ *page 278*

The engine oil filling opening (item ⑤) may be located in a different area depending on the engine version.

⚠ WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS before checking anything in the engine compartment ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 271.*

Engine oil

Engine oil specifications

The engine oil used must conform to exact specifications.

The service interval display in the instrument cluster of your vehicle will inform you when it is time for an oil change. We recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized Audi Service Advisor.

If you must add oil between oil changes, use an oil that matches the Audi oil quality standard listed on the sticker. The sticker is located at the front of the engine compartment ⇨ *page 274, fig. 259*

Audi recommends Castrol EDGE Professional
Audi recommends LongLife high performance engine oil from Audi Genuine Parts ▶

Using the proper engine oil is important for the functionality and service life of the engine. Your engine was factory-filled with a high-quality oil which can usually be used throughout the entire year.

Note

Your Limited New Vehicle Warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions due to failure to follow recommended maintenance and use requirements as set forth in the Audi Owner's Manual and Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

– Use only a high quality engine oil that expressly complies with the Audi oil quality standard specified for your vehicle's engine. Using any other oil can cause serious engine damage.
– Do not mix any lubricants or other additives into the engine oil. Doing so can cause engine damage.

Tips

If you need to add oil and there is none available that meets the Audi oil quality standard your engine requires, you may add a total of no more than 0.5 quart/liter of a high-quality "synthetic"oil that meets the following specifications.

– Vehicles with gasoline engine: ACEA A3 or API SM with a viscosity grade of SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-30 or SAE 5W-40.
– For more information about engine oil that has been approved for your vehicle, please contact either your authorized Audi dealer or Audi Customer Relations at 1 (800) 822-2834 or visit our web site at www.audiusa.com or www.audicanada.ca.

Engine oil consumption

The engine in your vehicle depends on an adequate amount of oil to lubricate and cool all of its moving parts.

In order to provide effective lubrication and cooling of internal engine components, all internal combustion engines consume a certain amount of oil. Oil consumption varies from engine to engine and may change significantly over the life of the engine. Typically, engines with a specified break-in period (see ⇨ *page 73*) consume more oil during the break-in period than they consume after oil consumption has stabilized.

Under normal conditions, the rate of oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of the oil, the RPM (revolutions per minute) at which the engine is operated, the ambient temperature and road conditions. Further factors are the amount of oil dilution from water condensation or fuel residue and the oxidation level of the oil. As any engine is subject to wear as mileage builds up, the oil consumption may increase over time until replacement of worn components may become necessary.

With all these variables coming into play, no standard rate of oil consumption can be established or specified. There is no alternative to regular and frequent checking of the oil level, see **Note**.

If the yellow engine oil level warning symbol in the instrument cluster lights up, you should check the oil level as soon as possible ⇨ *page 276*. Top off the oil at your earliest convenience ⇨ *page 276*.

WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 271*.

Note

Driving with an insufficient oil level is likely to cause severe damage to the engine.

Tips

– **The oil pressure warning display is not an indicator of the oil level. Do not rely on it. Instead, check the oil level in your engine at regular intervals, preferably each time you refuel, and always before going on a long trip.**
– If you have the impression your engine consumes excessive amounts of oil, we recommend that you consult your Audi dealer to ▶

4H0012721BD

have the cause of your concern properly diagnosed. Keep in mind that the accurate measurement of oil consumption requires great care and may take some time. Your Audi dealer has instructions about how to measure oil consumption accurately.

Checking the engine oil level

Applies to: vehicles with oil level indicator

The engine oil level can be checked in the Infotainment system

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 271*.

- ▸ Park your vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Shut the engine off when it is warm.
- ▸ Switch only the ignition back on.
- ▸ Wait approximately two minutes.
- ▸ Select: the CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Oil level**.
- ▸ Read the oil level in the display. Add engine oil if the bar in the oil level indicator is just before "min" ⇨ *page 276*.

The engine oil consumption may be up to 0.5 quart/600 miles (0.5 liter/1,000 km), depending on driving style and operating conditions. Consumption may be higher during the first 3,000 miles (5,000 km). Because of this, the engine oil level must be checked regularly. It would be best to check each time you refuel your vehicle and before long drives.

Tips

The oil level indicator in the display is only an informational display. If the oil level is too low, a minimum oil warning appears in the instrument cluster. Add oil and close the hood. The current oil level is displayed in the Infotainment system the next time the ignition is switched on.

Adding engine oil



Fig. 260 Engine compartment: engine oil filler opening cover

Read and follow the WARNINGS before checking anything in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 271*.

- ▸ Turn the engine off.
- ▸ Unscrew the engine oil filling opening cap ⇨ *fig. 260*, ⇨ *page 274*.
- ▸ Carefully add 0.5 quart (0.5 liter) of the correct oil ⇨ *page 274*.
- ▸ Check the oil level again after two minutes ⇨ *page 276, Checking the engine oil level*.
- ▸ Add more oil if necessary.
- ▸ Close the engine oil filler opening cap.

WARNING

- – When adding oil, do not let oil drip onto hot engine components. This increases the risk of a fire.
- – Always clean skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.

Note

- – Check the oil level. If the message **Please reduce oil level** appears, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have excess oil extracted if necessary.
- – Do not mix any additional lubricants into the engine oil. Damage caused by such additives is not covered by the warranty.

For the sake of the environment

- – Oil should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground. ▶

– Pay attention to legal requirements when disposing of empty oil containers.

Changing the engine oil

We recommend that have your oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 271*.

The engine oil must be changed according to the intervals specified in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. This is very important because the lubricating properties of oil diminish gradually during normal vehicle use.

Under some circumstances the engine oil should be changed more frequently. Change oil more often if you drive mostly short distances, operate the vehicle in dusty areas or under predominantly stop-and-go traffic conditions, or have your vehicle where temperatures remain below freezing for extended periods.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running for a short time. This is normal and is not a reason to change the oil more often than recommended.

Because of the problem of proper disposal, along with the special tools and necessary expertise required, we strongly recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized **Audi dealer** or a qualified service station.

If you choose to change your oil yourself, please note the following important information:

WARNING

To reduce the risk of personal injury if you must change the engine oil in your vehicle yourself:
– Wear eye protection.
– To reduce the risk of burns from hot engine oil, let the engine cool down to the touch.
– When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, stay as far away as possible. Always keep your forearm parallel to the ground to help prevent hot oil from running down your arm.
– Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose, one large enough to hold at least the total amount of oil in your engine.
– Engine oil is poisonous. Keep it well out of the reach of children.
– Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing oil off thoroughly with soap and water.

Note

Never mix oil additives with your engine oil. These additives can damage your engine and adversely affect your Audi Limited New Vehicle Warranty.

For the sake of the environment

– Before changing your oil, first make sure you know where you can properly dispose of the used oil.
– Always dispose of used engine oil properly. Do not dump it on garden soil, wooded areas, into open streams or down sewage drains.
– Recycle used engine oil by taking it to a used engine oil collection facility in your area, or contact a service station.

Cooling system

Coolant

The engine cooling system is filled with a mixture of purified water and coolant additive at the factory. This coolant must not be not changed.

The coolant level is monitored through the indicator light ⇨ *page 20*. However, we do recommend occasionally checking the coolant level manually.

If you must add coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. Mixing the coolant additive with distilled water is recommended. ▶

Coolant additive

The coolant additive is made of anti-freezing and corrosion protection agents. Only use the following coolant additives.

Coolant additive	Specification
G13	TL 774 J
G12++	TL 774 G

These additives may be mixed with each other. The amount of coolant additive that needs to be mixed with water depends on the climate where the vehicle will be operated. If the coolant additive percentage is too low, the coolant can freeze and damage the engine.

	Coolant additive	Freeze protection
Warm regions	min. 40%, max. 45%	min. -13 °F (-25 °C)
Cold regions	min. 50%, max. 55%	max. -40 °F (-40 °C)

Note

– Before the start of winter, have your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check if the coolant additive in your vehicle matches the percentage appropriate for the climate. This is especially important when driving in colder climates.
– If the appropriate coolant additive is not available in an emergency, do not add any other additive for risk of damaging the engine. If this happens, only use water and restore the correct mixture ratio with the specified coolant additive as soon as possible.
– Only refill with new coolant.
– Radiator sealant must not be mixed with the coolant.

Adding coolant



Fig. 261 Engine compartment: coolant expansion tank cover

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 271*.

Checking the engine coolant level

- ▸ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.
- ▸ Read the coolant level on the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *page 274*. The coolant level must be between the MIN and MAX markings when the engine in cold. When the engine is warm it can be slightly above the MAX marking.

Adding coolant

Requirement: there must be a residual amount of coolant in the expansion tank ⇨ (!).

- ▸ Let the engine cool down.
- ▸ Place a cloth over the coolant expansion tank cap and unscrew the cap counterclockwise ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Add coolant mixed in the correct ratio ⇨ *page 277* up to the MAX marking.
- ▸ Make sure that the fluid level remains stable. Add more coolant if necessary.
- ▸ Close the cap securely.

Coolant loss usually indicates there is a leak. Immediately drive your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the cooling system inspected. If the cooling system is not leaking, a loss can come from the coolant boiling through overheating and being pushed out of the cooling system. ▶

WARNING

- The cooling system is under pressure. Do not open the coolant expansion tank cap when the engine is hot. This increases the risk of burns.
- The coolant additive and the coolant can be dangerous to your health. For this reason, keep the coolant in the original container and away from children. There is a risk of poisoning.
- When working in the engine compartment, remember that the radiator fan can switch on even if the ignition is switched off, which increases the risk of injury.

Note

Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could enter the cooling system and damage the engine. If this is the case, do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Brake fluid



Fig. 262 Engine compartment: cap on brake fluid reservoir

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 271.*

Checking the brake fluid level

▸ Read the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *page 274, fig. 259*. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX markings ⇨ ⚠.

The brake fluid level is monitored automatically.

Changing the brake fluid

Have the brake fluid changed regularly by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

WARNING

- If the brake fluid level is below the MIN marking, it can impair the braking effect and driving safety, which increase the risk of an accident. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
- If the brake fluid is old, bubbles may form in the brake system during heavy braking. This would impair braking performance and driving safety, which increases the risk of an accident.
- To ensure the brake system functions correctly, only use brake fluids that comply with VW standard 501 14 or FMVSS-116 DOT 4.

Note

- If the brake fluid level is above the MAX marking, brake fluid may leak out over the edge of the reservoir and result in damage to the vehicle.
- Do not get any brake fluid on the vehicle paint, because it will corrode the paint.

Battery

General warnings about batteries

Because of the complex power supply, all work on batteries such as disconnecting, replacing, etc. should **only** be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility ⇨ ⚠.

The term "vehicle battery" refers to the 12 Volt battery in your vehicle.

Detailed warnings for the vehicle battery:

	Wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is highly corrosive. Wear protective gloves and eye protection. ▸

	Fire, sparks, open flame and smoking are forbidden.
	A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries.
	Keep children away from battery acid and batteries.

WARNING

All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

– Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive problems. Wash hands after handling.

Note

Protect the vehicle battery against freezing if the vehicle will be parked for long periods of time so that it is not destroyed by "freezing" ⇨ *page 280*.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries contain polluting substances such as sulfuric acid and lead. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Vehicle battery

The term "vehicle battery" refers to the 12 Volt battery in your vehicle.

Not running the vehicle for long periods of time

If you do not drive your vehicle for several days or weeks, electrical equipment is gradually scaled back or switched off. This reduces energy use and ensures the vehicle will be able to start after long periods of time ⇨ *page 130*. Some convenience functions, such as interior lighting or power seat adjustment, may not be available under certain circumstances. These convenience functions will be available again once you switch the ignition on and start the engine.

Even when electrical equipment is switched off, the equipment can still drain the vehicle battery if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time. Deep draining results in a chemical reaction that destroys the inside of the vehicle battery. The vehicle battery must be charged every month to reduce the risk of this happening ⇨ *page 280*. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Winter operation

Cold weather places higher demands on the vehicle battery. This results in reduced starting ability. Have the vehicle battery checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before the cold time of year.

Charging the vehicle battery

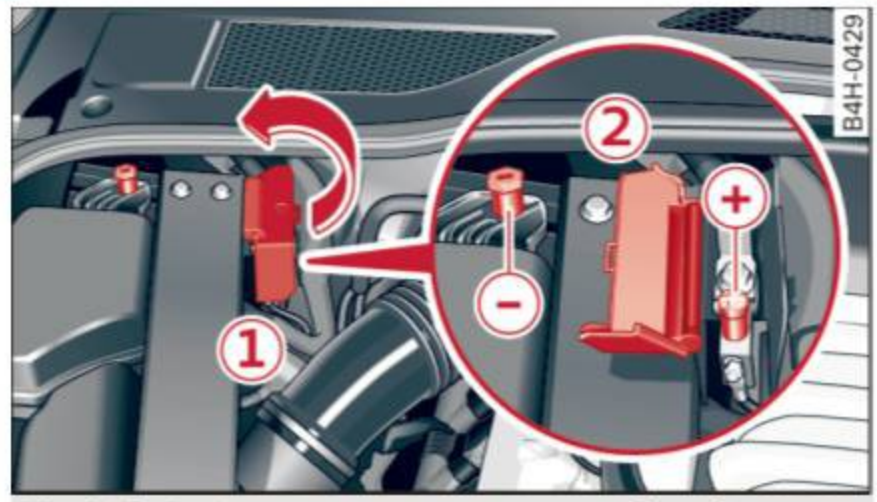


Fig. 263 Engine compartment: connectors for a charger and jump start cables

Requirement: only use chargers with a **maximum charging voltage of 30 amps/14.8 Volts**. The vehicle battery cables remain connected.

- ▸ Read the warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General warnings about batteries on page 280* and ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 273*.
- ▸ Remove the cover ① by pressing on the arrow ⇨ *fig. 263*.
- ▸ Open the cover ② on the positive terminal. ▶

- ▸ Clamp the charger terminal clamps to the jump start pins according to the instructions. (pin under the cover = “positive”, pin with hexagonal head = “negative”).
- ▸ Insert the power cable for the charging device into the socket and switch the device on.
- ▸ At the end of the charging process, switch the charger off and pull the power cable out of the socket.
- ▸ Now remove the charging device terminal clamps.
- ▸ Close the cover ② on the positive terminal and re-install the cover ①.
- ▸ Close the hood ⇨ *page 273*.

A drained battery can freeze at temperatures around 32ºF (0ºC). A frozen or thawed out battery must no longer be used. The battery housing could be cracked by the formation of ice, which could cause battery acid to leak out ⇨ ⚠.

Charging the battery

Only use chargers with a **maximum charging voltage of 14.8 V**. The battery connecting cables do not need to be disconnected. Do not open the battery when charging.

Read all of the manufacturer's instructions for the charger before charging the battery.

WARNING

- A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries. Only charge the vehicle battery in well-ventilated areas.
- A drained battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 °C). A frozen or thawed vehicle battery must not be charged and must not be used anymore. The battery housing can crack and battery acid can leak out if ice forms, which increases the risk of an explosion and chemical burns. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.
- Do not connect or disconnect the charging cable while charging because this increases the risk of an explosion.

Tips

- Only charge the vehicle battery through the connections in the engine compartment.
- Read all of the manufacturer's instructions for the charger before charging the vehicle battery.

Windshield washer system



Fig. 264 Engine compartment: washer fluid reservoir cap

The windshield washer fluid reservoir contains the cleaning solution for the windshield and the headlight washer system ⇨ *fig. 264*, ⇨ *page 274*. The reservoir capacity is found in ⇨ *page 334*.

To reduce the risk of lime scale deposits on the spray nozzles, use clean water with low amounts of calcium. Always add window cleaner to the water. When the outside temperatures are cold, an anti-freezing agent should be added to the water so that it does not freeze.

Note

- The concentration of anti-freezing agent must be adjusted to the vehicle operating conditions in the respective climate. A concentration that is too high can lead to vehicle damage.
- Never add radiator anti-freeze or other additives to the washer fluid.
- Do not use a glass cleaner that contains paint solvents, because this could damage the paint.

Service interval display

The service interval display detects when your vehicle is due for service.

The service interval display works in two stages:

– **Inspection or oil change reminder:** after a certain distance driven, a message appears in the instrument cluster display each time the ignition is switched on or off. The remaining distance or time is displayed briefly.
– **Inspection or oil change due:** if your vehicle has reached an inspection or oil change interval or both intervals at the same time, the message **Inspection due!** or **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** appears briefly after switching the ignition on/off.

Checking service intervals

You can check the remaining distance or time until the next oil change or next inspection in the Car menu. To do this, select: the CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Service intervals**.

Resetting the indicator

Your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will reset the service interval display after performing service.

If you have changed the oil yourself, you must reset the oil change interval.

To reset the indicator, select: the CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Service intervals**. Turn the control knob downward to **Reset oil change interval** and press the control knob.

Note

– Only reset the oil change indicator if the oil was changed.
– Following the service intervals is critical to maintaining the service life and value of your vehicle, especially the engine. Even if the mileage on the vehicle is low, do not exceed the time for the next service.

Wheels

Wheels and Tires

General information

- ▸Check your tires regularly for damage (punctures, cuts, cracks and bulges). Remove foreign objects from the tire tread.
- ▸If driving over curbs or similar obstacles, drive slowly and approach the curb at an angle.
- ▸Have faulty tires or rims replaced immediately.
- ▸Protect your tires from oil, grease and fuel.
- ▸Mark tires before removing them so that the same running direction can be maintained if they are reinstalled.
- ▸Lay tires flat when storing and store them in a cool, dry location with as little exposure to light as possible.

Note

–Please note that summer and winter tires are designed for the conditions that are typical in those seasons. Audi recommends using winter tires during the winter months. Low temperatures significantly decrease the elasticity of summer tires, which affects traction and braking ability. If summer tires are used in very cold temperatures, cracks can form on the tread bars, resulting in permanent tire damage that can cause loud driving noise and unbalanced tires.

–Burnished, polished or chromed rims must not be used in winter driving conditions. The surface of the rims does not have sufficient corrosion protection for this and could be permanently damaged by road salt or similar substances.

Tire designations

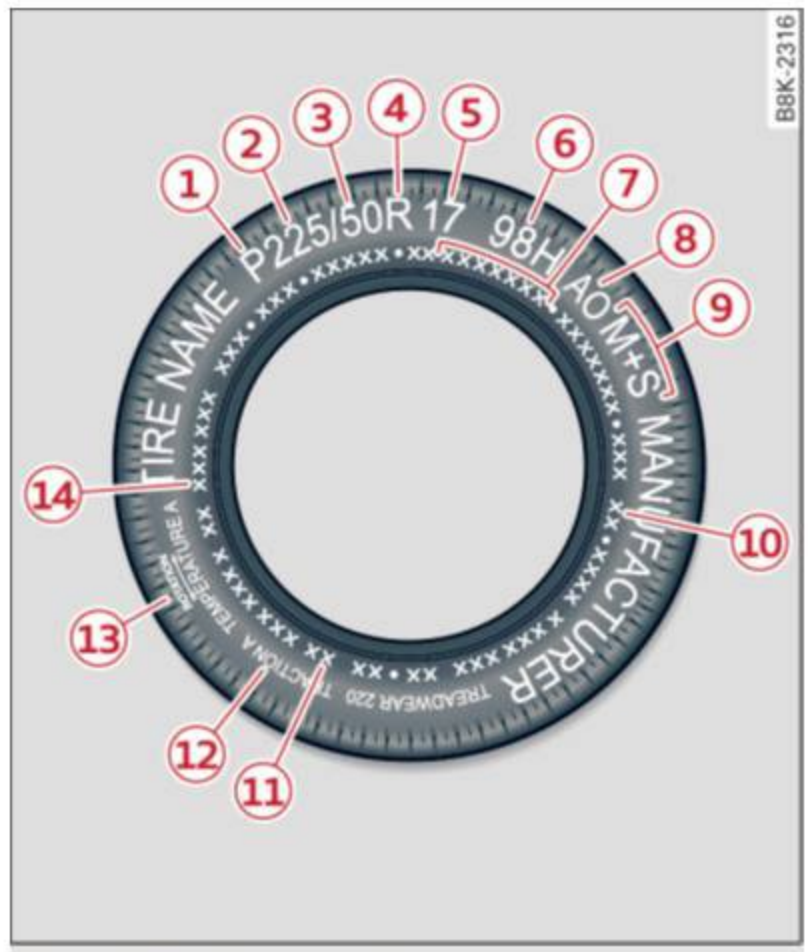


Fig. 265 Tire specification codes on the sidewall of a tire

① Tires for passenger vehicles (if applicable)

P indicates a tire for a passenger vehicle. T indicates a tire designated for temporary use.

② Nominal width

Nominal width of the tire between the sidewalls in millimeters. In general: the larger the number, the wider the tire.

③ Aspect ratio

Height/width ratio expressed as a percentage.

④ Tire construction

R indicates a radial tire.

⑤ Rim diameter

Size of the rim diameter in inches.

⑥ Load index and speed rating

The load index indicates the tire's load-carrying capacity.

The speed rating indicates the maximum permitted speed ⇨ ⚠ *in Winter tires on page 298*.

“EXTRA LOAD”, “xl” or “RF” indicates that the tire is reinforced or is an Extra Load tire.

Speed rating	Maximum permitted speed
P	up to 93 mph (150 km/h)
Q	up to 99 mph (160 km/h)

Speed rating	Maximum permitted speed
R	up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
S	up to 110 mph (180 km/h)
T	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
U	up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
H	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V	up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[a]
Z	above 149 mph (240 km/h)[a]
W	up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[a]
Y	up to 186 mph (300 km/h)[a]

a) For tires above 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the code “ZR”.

⑦ US DOT number (TIN) and manufacture date

The manufacture date is listed on the tire sidewall (it may only appear on the inner side of the tire):

DOT ... 2216 ...

means, for example, that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of the year 2016.

⑧ Audi Original equipment tires

Audi Original equipment tires with the designation “AO” have been specially matched to your Audi. When used correctly, these tires meet the highest standards for safety and handling. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will be ▶

able to provide you with more information.

⑨ Mud and snow capability

"M/S" or "M+S" indicates the tire has properties making it suitable to drive in mud or snow. ⛄ indicates a winter tire.

⑩ Composition of the tire cord and materials

The number of plies indicates the number of rubberized fabric layers in the tire. In general: the more layers, the more weight a tire can carry. Tire manufacturers must also specify the materials used in the tire. These include steel, nylon, polyester and other materials.

⑪ Maximum permitted load

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that the tire can carry.

⑫ Uniform tire quality grade standards for treadwear, traction and temperature resistance

Tread wear, traction and temperature ranges ⇨ *page 300*.

⑬ Running direction

The arrows indicate the running direction of unidirectional tires. You must always follow the specified running direction ⇨ *page 319*.

⑭ Maximum permitted inflation pressure

This number indicates the maximum pressure to which a tire can be inflated under normal operating conditions.

Glossary of tire and loading terminology

Accessory weight

means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Aspect ratio

means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 55 or lower indicate a low sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement. ▶

4H0012721BD

Bead

means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

Bead separation

means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

Cord

means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

Cold tire inflation pressure

means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Curb weight

means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

Extra load tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Extra load tires may be identified as "XL", "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" on the sidewall.

Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR")

means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR")

means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

Groove

means the space between two adjacent tread ribs.

Load rating (code)

means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Maximum load rating

means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight

means the sum of: ▶

(a) Curb weight
(b) Accessory weight
(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight

Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called "maximum inflation pressure."

Normal occupant weight

means 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

Occupant distribution

means distribution of occupants in a vehicle.

Outer diameter

means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

Overall width

means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

Ply

means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

Production options weight

means the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs. (2.3 kg) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

Radial ply tire

means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Recommended inflation pressure

see ⇨ *page 286, Cold tire inflation pressure*.

Reinforced tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Reinforced tires may be identified as ▶

"XL", "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" on the sidewall.

Rim

means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Rim diameter

means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

Rim size designation

means rim diameter and width.

Rim width

means nominal distance between rim flanges.

Sidewall

means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

Speed rating (letter code)

means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h) ⇨ *table on page 284*. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the maximum permissible road speeds ⇨ ⚠ *in Winter tires on page 298*.

Tire pressure monitoring system*

means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale.

Tread

means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Tread separation

means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

Treadwear indicators (TWI)

means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See ⇨ *page 292, Treadwear indicator* for more information on measuring tire wear. ▶

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles (kilometers) or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire's "serial number". It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example,

DOT ... 2216 ...

means that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of 2016. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Vehicle capacity weight

means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity.

Vehicle maximum load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

Vehicle normal load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with ⇨ *table on page 295*) and dividing by two. ▶

4H0012721BD

Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Refer to the tire inflation pressure label ⇨ *page 293, fig. 268* for the number of seating positions. Refer to the table ⇨ *table on page 295* for the number of people that correspond to the vehicle normal load.

New tires or wheels

Audi recommends having all work on tires or wheels performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. These facilities have the proper knowledge and are equipped with the required tools and replacement parts.

- ►New tires do not yet have the optimum gripping properties. Drive carefully and at moderate speeds for the first 350 miles (500 km) with new tires.
- ►Use tires of the same construction, size (rolling circumference) and as close to the same tread pattern as possible on all four wheels.
- ►Do not replace tires individually. At least replace both tires on the same axle at the same time.
- ►Audi recommends that you use Audi Original Tires. If you would like to use different tires, please note that the tires may perform differently even if they are the same size ⇨ ⚠.
- ►If you would like to equip your vehicle with a tire/rim combination that is different from what was installed at the factory, consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before making a purchase ⇨ ⚠.

The spare tire* is different from the regular tires installed on the vehicle - for example, if winter tires or wide tires are installed - so only use the spare tire* temporarily in case of emergency and drive carefully while it is in use. It should be replaced with a regular tire as soon as possible.

All four wheels must be equipped with tires that are the same brand and have the same construction and tread pattern so that the drive system is not damaged by different tire speeds. For this reason, in case of emergency, only ►

use a spare tire* that is the same circumference as the regular tires.

WARNING

–Only use tire/rim combinations and suitable wheel bolts that have been approved by Audi. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.

–For technical reasons, it is not possible to use tires from other vehicles - in some cases, you cannot even use tires from the same vehicle model.

–Make sure that the tires you select have enough clearance to the vehicle. Replacement tires should not be chosen simply based on the nominal size, because tires with a different construction can differ greatly even if they are the same size. If there is not enough clearance, the tires or the vehicle can be damaged and this can reduce driving safety and increase the risk of an accident.

–Only use tires that are more than six years old when absolutely necessary and drive carefully when doing so.

–Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.

–If you install wheel covers on the vehicle, make sure they allow enough air circulation to cool the brake system. If they do not, this could increase the risk of an accident.

Tire wear/damage



Fig. 266 Tire profile: treadwear indicator

Tire wear

Check the tires regularly for wear.

–Inflation pressure that is too low or high can increase tire wear considerably.

–Driving quickly through curves, rapid acceleration and heavy braking increase tire wear. ▶

–Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check the wheel alignment if there is unusual wear.
–Have the wheels rebalanced if an imbalance is causing noticeable vibration in the steering wheel. If you do not, the tires and other vehicle components could wear more quickly.

Treadwear indicator

Original equipment tires contain treadwear indicators in the tread pattern, which are bars that are 1/16 in (1.6 mm) high and are spaced evenly around the tire perpendicular to the running direction. The letters "TWI" or triangles on the tire sidewall indicate the location of the treadwear indicators.

The tires have reached the minimum tread depth [1] when they have worn down to the treadwear indicators. Replace the tires with new ones ⇨ ⚠.

Tire rotation

Rotating the tires regularly is recommended to ensure the tires wear evenly. To rotate the tires, install the tires from the rear axle on the front axle and vice versa. This will allow the tires to have approximately the same length of service life.

For unidirectional tires, make sure the tires are installed according to the running direction indicated on the tire sidewall ⇨ *page 319*.

Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims can often occur in locations that are hidden. Unusual vibrations in the vehicle or pulling to one side may indicate that there is tire damage. Reduce your speed immediately. Check the tires for damage. If no damage is visible from the outside, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the vehicle inspected.

⚠ WARNING

Tread that has worn too low or different tread depths on the tires can reduce driving safety. ▶

[1] Obey any applicable regulations in your country.

This can especially have a negative effect on handling, on the risk aquaplaning when driving through water, when driving through curves and when braking, which increases the risk of an accident.

Tire pressure



Fig. 267 Driver's side B-pillar: tire pressure label

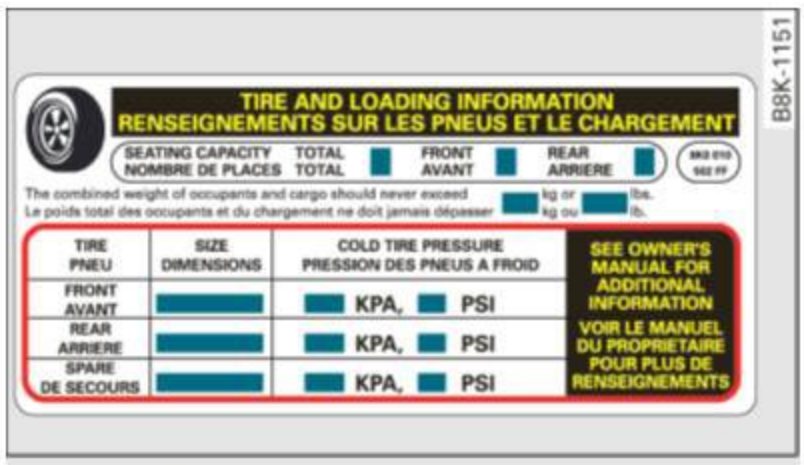


Fig. 268 Tire pressure label

The correct tire pressure for tires mounted in the factory and for the spare tire* is indicated on a label. The label is located on the B-pillar ⇨ *fig. 267*, ⇨ *fig. 268*.

When the vehicle is partially loaded (up to 3 people), use the tire pressure specified for normal loads ⇨ *table on page 295*. If driving the vehicle when fully loaded, you must increase the tire pressure to the maximum specified pressure ⇨ ⚠.

Checking/correcting tire pressure

- ▸Check the tire pressure at least once per month and also check it before every long drive.
- ▸Always check the tire pressure when the tires are *cold*. Do not reduce the pressure if it increases when the tires are warm.
- ▸Check the label ⇨ *fig. 268* for the correct tire pressure based on vehicle load.
- ▸Correct the tire pressure if necessary.
- ▸Vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System*: store the modified tire pressure in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 302*.
- ▸Check the pressure in the emergency tire*/spare tire*. Always maintain the maximum temperature that is specified for the tire. ▸

WARNING

Always adapt the tire pressure to your driving style and vehicle load.

–Overloading can lead to loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of an accident. Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 295, Tires and vehicle load limits*.

–The tire must flex more if the tire pressure is too low or if the vehicle speed or load are too high. This heats the tire up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst and result in loss of vehicle control.

–Incorrect tire pressure increases tire wear and has a negative effect on driving and braking behavior, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Replace lost valve caps to reduce the risk of damage to the tire valves.

For the sake of the environment

Tire pressure that is too low increases fuel consumption.

Tips

Audi recommends using the tire pressure specified for a normal load ⇨ *table on page 295* or for a full load when the vehicle is partially loaded.

Tire pressure table

Please note that the information contained in the following table was correct at the time of printing, and the information is subject to change. If there are differences between this information and the tire pressures specified on the label on the driver's side B-pillar, always follow the specification on the B-pillar label ⇨ *page 293, fig. 267*.

Make sure that the tire designation on your tire matches the designation on the tire pressure label and the tire pressure table.

The following table lists recommended tire pressures in cold ▶

tires according to the load and the size of the tires installed.

Model/ Engine	Tire designation	Tire pressure							
		Normal load (up to 2*/3 people)[a]				Maximum load			
		front		rear		front		rear	
		PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA
A8/A8 L: 3.0L 6 cylinders	235/55 R18 104H	35	240	30	210	36	250	38	260
	255/45 R19 104H	35	240	30	210	36	250	38	260
	265/40 R20 104H	35	240	30	210	36	250	38	260
	265/40 R20 104Y	35	240	30	210	33	230	35	240
	265/35 R21 101Y	38	260	35	240	36	250	38	260
	275/35 R21 103Y	35	240	30	210	36	250	35	240
A8/A8 L: 4.0L 8 cylinders	235/55 R18 104H	36	250	30	210	38	260	38	260
	255/45 R19 104H	36	250	30	210	38	260	38	260
	265/40 R20 104H	36	250	30	210	38	260	38	260
	265/40 R20 104Y	36	250	30	210	35	240	35	240
	275/35 R21 103Y	36	250	30	210	38	260	38	260
S8: 4.0L 8 cylinders	265/40 R20 104Y	36	250	30	210	39	270	38	260
	265/35 R21 101Y	39	270	33	230	44	300	42	290
	275/35 R21 103Y	36	250	30	210	44	300	42	290
S8 plus: 4.0L 8 cylinders	265/40 R20 104Y	38	260	32	220	39	270	38	260
	275/35 R21 103Y	45	310	39	270	49	340	48	330

a) **Vehicles with 4 seating positions:** two people in the front, **Vehicles with 5 seating positions:** two people in the front, one person in the rear

WARNING

Please note the important safety precautions regarding tire pressure ⇨ *page 293* and load limits ⇨ *page 295*.

Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash.

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making ▶

sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry ("seating capacity") with an assumed weight of 150 lbs. (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle. If you tow a trailer, the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer must be included as part of the vehicle load.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles.

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being carried in the vehicle (including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer) is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located on the driver's side B-pillar ⇨ *page 293, fig. 267*.

⚠ WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

–Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.

–The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance. ▶

–Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.
–Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS"on your vehicle's placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇨ *page 293, fig. 267*.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from "XXX" kilograms or "XXX" pounds shown on the sticker ⇨ *page 293, fig. 267*.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lbs. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces ▶

the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

▸ Check the tire sidewall (⇨ *page 283, fig. 265*) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire.

Wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must be clean and loosen/tighten easily.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim ring* or with bolted wheel covers* consist of multiple pieces. These components were bolted together using special bolts and a special procedure. You must not repair or disassemble them ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Wheel bolts that are tightened or repaired incorrectly can become loose and result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident. For the correct tightening specification, see ⇨ *page 314*.

– Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hub clean and free of grease.
– Only use wheel bolts that fit the rim.
– Always have damaged rims repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Never repair or disassemble rims yourself, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Winter tires

Winter tires significantly improve the vehicle's handling when driving in winter conditions. Because of their construction (width, compound, tread pattern), summer tires provide less traction on ice and snow.

▸ Use winter tires on all four wheels.
▸ Only use winter tires that are approved for your vehicle.
▸ Please note that the maximum permitted speed may be lower with winter tires ⇨ ⚠. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can inform you about the maximum permitted speed for your tires.
▸ Check the tire pressure after installing wheels ⇨ *page 293*.

The effectiveness of winter tires is reduced greatly when the tread is worn down to a depth of 0.157 in (4 mm). The characteristics of winter tires also decrease greatly as the tire ages, regardless of the remaining tread.

WARNING

– Never drive faster than the maximum permitted speed for your tires. This could cause the tires to heat up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst.
– Always adapt your driving to the road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tires can lose traction on black ice.

For the sake of the environment

Reinstall summer tires at the appropriate time, because they provide better handling when roads are free of snow and ice. Summer tires cause less road noise, tire wear and fuel consumption.

Tips

You can also use all season tires instead of winter tires. Please note that in some countries where winter tires are required, only winter tires with the ⛄ symbol may be permitted.

Snow chains

Snow chains not only improve the driving in winter road conditions, but also the braking.

▸ Only install snow chains on the front wheels. ▶

- ▸ Check and correct the seating of the snow chains after driving a few feet, if necessary. Follow the instructions from the manufacturer.
- ▸ Note the maximum speed of 30 mph (50 km/h). Note the local regulations.

Use of snow chains is only permitted with certain rim/tire combinations due to technical reasons. Check with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to see if you may use snow chains.

You must remove the snow chains on roads without snow. Otherwise, you could impair driving ability and damage the tires.

WARNING

Using incorrect snow chains or installing snow chains incorrectly can result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– Snow chains can damage the rims/wheel covers* if the chains come into direct contact with them. Remove the wheel covers* first. Use coated snow chains.
– Using snow chains that add more than 0.4 inch (10.5 mm) of height can severely damage the wheel housings and other vehicle components.
– Do not install and use snow chains if there is a malfunction in the adaptive air suspension, because the vehicle height will be very low. If you drive with snow chains anyway, the wheel housings and other vehicle components can be severely damaged.

Tips

When using snow chains, it may be useful to switch on sport mode ⇨ *page 127*.

Low aspect ratio tires

Your Audi is factory-equipped with low aspect ratio tires. These tires have been thoroughly tested and been selected specifically for your model for their superb performance, road feel and handling under a variety of driving conditions. Ask your authorized Audi dealer for more details.

The low aspect ratio of these tires is indicated by a numeral of **55 or less** in the tire's size designation. The numeral represents the ratio of the tire's sidewall height in relation to its tread width expressed in percentage. Conventional tires have a height/width ratio of 60 or more.

The performance of low-aspect-ratio tires is particularly sensitive to improper inflation pressure. It is therefore important that low aspect ratio tires are inflated to the specified pressure and that the inflation pressure is regularly checked and maintained. Tire pressures should be checked at least once a month and always before a long trip ⇨ *page 293*.

What you can do to avoid tire and rim damage

Low aspect ratio tires can be damaged more easily by impact with potholes, curbs, gullies or ridges on the road, particularly if the tire is underinflated.

In order to minimize the occurrence of impact damage to the tires of your vehicle, we recommend that you observe the following precautions:

– Always maintain recommended inflation pressures. Check your tire pressure every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) and add air if necessary.
– Drive carefully on roads with potholes, deep gullies or ridges. The impact from driving through or over such obstacles can damage your tires. Impact with a curb may also cause damage to your tires.
– After any impact, immediately inspect your tires or have them inspected by the nearest authorized Audi dealer. Replace a damaged tire as soon as possible.
– Inspect your tires every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) for damage and wear. Damage is not always easy to see. Damage can lead to loss of air and underinflation, which could eventually cause tire failure. If you believe that a tire may have been damaged, replace the tire as soon as possible.
– These tires may wear more quickly than others. ▶

– Please also remember that, while these tires deliver responsive handling, they may ride less comfortably and make more noise than other choices.

Reduced performance in winter/cold season conditions

All tires are designed for certain purposes. The low aspect ratio, ultra high performance tires originally installed on your vehicle are intended for maximum dry and wet road performance and handling. They are not suitable for cold, snowy or icy weather conditions. If you drive under those circumstances, you should equip your vehicle with all-season or winter tires, which offer better traction under those conditions. We suggest you use the recommended snow or all-season tires specified for your vehicle, or their equivalent.

Refer to ⇨ *page 298* for more detailed information regarding winter tires.

Uniform tire quality grading

– Tread wear
– Traction AA A B C
– Temperature A B C

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇨ *page 283, fig. 265*.

For example: Tread wear **200**, Traction **AA**, Temperature **A**.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇨ ⚠.

Temperature

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure ⇨ ⚠.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

⚠ WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure. ▶

WARNING

Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (A8, S8)

General notes

Applies to: A8, S8

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

If the Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator appears

Applies to: A8, S8

The tire pressure indicator in the instrument cluster informs you if the tire pressure is too low or if there is a system malfunction.



Fig. 269 Instrument cluster: indicator light with message

Using the ABS sensors, the tire pressure monitoring system compares the tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics of the individual tires. If the pressure changes in one or more tires, this is indicated in the instrument cluster display with an indicator light (!) and a message. If only one tire is affected, the location of that tire will be indicated.

The tire pressures must be stored in the Infotainment system again each time the pressures change (switching between partial and full load pressure) or after changing or replacing a tire on your vehicle ⇨ *page 302*. The tire pressure monitoring system only monitors the tire pressure you have stored. Refer to the tire pressure label for ▶

4H0012721BD

the recommended tire pressure for your vehicle ⇨ *page 293, fig. 268*.

Tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics can change and cause a tire pressure warning if:

– the tire pressure in one or more tires is too low.
– the tire has structural damage.
– the tire was replaced or the tire pressure was changed and it was not stored ⇨ *page 302*.
– the spare tire* is installed.

Indicator lights

(!) Loss of pressure in at least one tire ⇨ ⚠. Check the tires and replace or repair if necessary. Check/correct the pressures of all four tires and store the pressure again in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 302*.

TPMS (**T**ire **P**ressure **M**onitoring **S**ystem) **Tire pressure: System malfunction!**. If TPMS appears after switching the ignition on or while driving and the (!) indicator light in the instrument cluster blinks for approximately one minute and then stays on, there is system malfunction. Try to store the correct tire pressures ⇨ *page 302*. If the indicator light does turn off or turns on again after a short period of time, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

– If the tire pressure indicator appears in the display, reduce your speed immediately and avoid any hard steering or braking maneuvers. Stop as soon as possible and check the tires and their pressure.
– The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct tire pressure. You must check the tire pressure regularly.
– Under certain conditions (such as a sporty driving style, winter conditions or unpaved roads), the tire pressure monitoring system indicator may be delayed.
– Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.

Tips

– The tire pressure monitoring system can also stop working when there is an ESC malfunction.
– Using snow chains may result in a system malfunction.
– The tires with the identification “AO” or “RO” ⇨ *page 290* have been matched with your Audi tire pressure monitoring system. We recommend that you use these tires.

Storing tire pressures

Applies to: A8, S8

If the tire pressure changes or a tire is replaced, it must be confirmed in the Infotainment system.

▸ Make sure before storing that the tire pressures of all four tires meet the specified values and are adapted to the load ⇨ *page 291*.
▸ Switch the ignition on.
▸ Select: the CAR function button > **Car Systems** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Tire pressure monitoring** > **Store tire pressure** > **Yes, store now**.

Tips

Do not store the tire pressures if snow chains are installed. Otherwise the system could malfunction.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (S8 plus)

(!) General notes

Applies to: S8 plus

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires). ▸

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Description

Applies to: S8 plus

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors the pressure in the four tires when driving.

The system uses sensors that measure the temperature and pressure in the tires. The data is sent from these sensors to the control module by radio frequency.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System shows the current pressures and temperatures of the tires in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 304*. It also compares the current tire pressures with the stored tire pressures and gives a warning in the driver information system if the tire pressure is different from what is stored ⇨ *page 304*.

The system does not detect if the stored tire pressures match the recommended tire pressures.

– Every time the tire pressures change, for example when the load in the vehicle changes,
– after replacing a tire, or
– if wheels with new wheel sensors are used,

you must store the tire pressures again ⇨ *page 305*.

⚠ WARNING

– The tire pressure monitoring system assists the driver in monitoring tire pressures. The driver is responsible for having the tires inflated to the correct pressure.
– Do not change the tire pressure when the temperature of the tire is high. This could result in serious damage to the tire and even cause the tire to burst, increasing the risk of an accident.
– A tire with low pressure flexes more. This heats the tire up too much. This could cause the tread to separate and even cause the tire to burst, increasing the risk of an accident.
– The Tire Pressure Monitoring System does not warn you of damage or defects in the tire construction that could cause the tire to burst, for example. Inspect your tires regularly.

▶

4H0012721BD

For the sake of the environment

Low tire pressure increases fuel consumption and tire wear.

Tips

– The pressure of the spare tire* is not monitored.
– If tires are replaced, the sensors/valves do not need to be removed or replaced. Just replaced the valve stem and, if necessary, the valve and the wheel electronics. If you have questions, see your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Displaying tire pressures/temperatures

Applies to: S8 plus

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **Car systems** > **Servicing & checks** > **Tire pressure monitoring** > **Display tire pressures**.

The current tire pressures are shown in green and yellow numbers in the Infotainment system:

– **Green:** the current tire pressure and the specified tire pressure are approximately the same.
– **Yellow:** the current tire pressure is too low compared to the specified tire pressure.

The specified tire pressure is the last tire pressure that was stored ⇨ *page 305*.

Note that the tire pressure also depends on the temperature of the tire. The tire pressure increases as the engine becomes warmer while driving.

WARNING

Read and follow the important information and notes ⇨ *page 303*.

Tips

The tire pressure or temperature are not displayed in adaptation mode. Dashes **--.--** are shown in place of the pressure and temperature.

Tire pressure loss

Applies to: S8 plus



Fig. 270 Display: indicator light with a message

If the (!) indicator light turns on, the pressure in at least one tire is too low or new sensors were not adapted:

(!) indicator lights turns on after turning the ignition on

The tire pressure is too low compared to the specified pressure.

▸ Check and store the tire pressure(s) the next time it is possible ⇨ *page 305*.

(!) indicator light turns on while driving

Wheels with new sensors were not adapted or the tire pressure has reached a critical level compared to the specified pressure.

▸ Avoid unnecessary steering and braking maneuvers.
▸ Adapt your driving style to the situation.
▸ Stop as soon as possible and check the tire(s).
▸ If it is possible to continue driving, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately and have your tire(s) repaired or replaced.

WARNING

Read and follow the important information and notes ⇨ *page 303*.

Storing new tire pressures

Applies to: S8 plus

Correctly stored tire pressure specifications are necessary for reliable tire pressure monitoring.

- ▸ Check the tire pressures in all wheels.
- ▸ If necessary, correct the tire pressure according to the specifications on the sticker on the driver's door ⇨ *page 291*. Only correct the pressure in tires whose temperature is approximately the same as the ambient temperature. If the temperature of the tire is higher than the ambient air temperature, the tire pressure must be increased approximately 3 PSI (0,2 bar) above the value on the sticker.
- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ Select: CAR function button > **Car systems** > **Tire pressure monitoring** > **Store tire pressures**. After storing, the tire pressure monitoring system measures the current tire pressures and stores them as the new specified pressures.
- ▸ If the changed tire pressures are not displayed in the Infotainment system, drive the vehicle for approximately 10 minutes so that the sensor signal from the wheels is received again.

During this adaptation phase, **--,--** is displayed for pressure and temperature and the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is only partially available: it only warns you if one or more of the tire pressures is/are under the minimum permitted value. If this is the case, the (!) indicator light appears with a message.

WARNING

Read and follow the important information and notes ⇨ *page 303*.

Malfunctions

Applies to: S8 plus

If the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is not available, the TPMS indicator light appears in the driver information system. The (!) indicator light also blinks for approximately one minutes each time the ignition is switched on. The tire pressure monitoring system cannot be selected in the Infotainment system. The following are examples of situations that could cause a malfunction:

- – If the message appears at the end of the adaptation phase, the system cannot detect the wheels installed on the vehicle. This may result from one or more wheels being installed without wheel sensors or with incompatible wheel sensors.
- – A wheel sensor or another component has failed.
- – Using snow chains can affect the function of the system because of the shielding effect of the chains.
- – The tire pressure monitoring system is not available due to a malfunction.
- – Transmitters with the same frequency, such as headphones or remote-controlled devices, may cause a temporary system malfunction due to the strong electromagnetic field.

The TPMS indicator light turns off once the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is available again. If you cannot correct the malfunction and the TPMS indicator light stays on, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Care and cleaning

General information

Regular, proper care helps to maintain your vehicle's value. It can also be a requirement when submitting warranty claims for corrosion damage and paint defects on the body.

The necessary care products can be obtained from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Read and follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

- Using cleaning and care products incorrectly can be dangerous to your health.
- Always store cleaning and care products out of reach of children to reduce the risk of poisoning.

For the sake of the environment

- Preferably purchase environmentally-friendly cleaning products.
- Do not dispose of leftover cleaning and care products with household trash.

Car washes

The longer that deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap or road salt remain on the vehicle, the more the surface can be damaged. High temperatures such as those caused by sunlight increase the damaging effect.

Before washing, rinse off heavy deposits with plenty of water.

Stubborn deposits such as bird droppings or tree sap are best removed with plenty of water and a microfiber cloth.

Also, wash the underside of your vehicle once road salt stops being used for the season.

Pressure washers

When washing your vehicle with a pressure washer, always follow the operating instructions provided with the pressure washer. This is especially important in regard to the pressure and spraying distance. Do not aim the spray directly at the seals on the side windows, doors, lids or the sunroof* or at tires, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors* or camera lenses*. Keep a distance of at least 16 in (40 cm).

Do not remove snow and ice with a pressure washer.

Never use cone nozzles or high pressure nozzles.

The water temperature must not be above 140 °F (60 °C).

Automatic car washes

Spray off the vehicle before washing.

Make sure that the windows and roof* are closed and the windshield wipers are off. Follow instructions from the car wash operator, especially if there are accessories attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use car washes that do not have brushes.

Only use car washes where the vehicle remains stationary and the washing equipment moves around the vehicle when washing and drying. Car washes that move the vehicle through the car wash using a chain are not recommended.

Washing by hand

Clean the vehicle starting from the top and working down using a soft sponge or cleaning brush. Use solvent-free cleaning products.

Washing vehicles with matte finish paint by hand

To avoid damaging the paint when washing, first remove dust and large particles from your vehicle. Insects, grease spots and fingerprints are best removed with a special cleaner for matte finish paint.

Apply the product using a microfiber cloth. To avoid damaging the paint surface, do not use too much pressure.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water. Then clean using a neutral shampoo and a soft microfiber cloth.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly again and let it air dry. Remove any water residue using a chamois. ▶

WARNING

– Only wash the vehicle when the ignition is off and follow the instructions from the car wash operator to reduce the risk of accidents.
– To reduce the risk of cuts, protect yourself from sharp metal components when washing the underbody or the inside of the wheel housings.
– After washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed due to moisture on the brake rotors or ice in the winter. This increases the risk of an accident. The brakes must be dried first with a few careful brake applications.

Note

– If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage to the mirrors. Power folding exterior mirrors* must only be folded in and out using the power folding function.
– To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
– To reduce the risk of damage, do not wash the power top with a pressure washer.
– To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use insect removing sponges, kitchen sponges or similar items.
– Matte finish painted vehicle components:
  – To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use polishing agents or hard wax.
  – Never use protective wax. It can destroy the matte finish effect.
  – Do not place any stickers or magnetic signs on vehicle parts painted with matte finish paint. The paint could be damaged when the stickers or magnets are removed.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle in facilities specially designed for that purpose. This will reduce the risk of dirty water contaminated with oil from entering the sewer system.

Cleaning and care information

When cleaning and caring for individual vehicle components, refer to the following tables. The information contained there is simply recommendations. For questions or for components that are not listed, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Also follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠.

Exterior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windshield wiper blades	Deposits	⇨ *page 51*
Headlights/ Tail lights	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]
Sensors/ camera lenses	Deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning solution Camera lenses: soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning solution
	Snow/ice	Hand brush/solvent-free de-icing spray
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free special cleaning solution

4H0012721BD

Component	Situation	Solution
Exhaust tail pipes	Road salt	Water, cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Decorative parts/ Trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a], a cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Paint	Paint damage	Refer to the paint number on the vehicle data label, repair with touch up paint ⇨ *page 333*
	Spilled fuel	Rinse with water immediately
	Surface rust	Rust remover, then protect with hard wax; for questions, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Corrosion	Have it removed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Water no longer beads on the surface of clean paint	Protect with hard wax (at least twice per year)
	No shine even though paint has been protected/paint looks poor	Treat with suitable polish; then apply paint protectant if the polish that was used does not contain any protectant
	Deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap and road salt	Dampen with water immediately and remove with a microfiber cloth
	Grease-based contaminants such as cosmetics or sunblock	Remove immediately with a mild soap solution [a] and a soft cloth
Carbon parts	Deposits	clean the same way as painted parts ⇨ *page 306*

[a] Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

Interior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windows	Deposits	Glass cleaner, then wipe dry
Decorative parts/ Trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution[a]
Plastic parts	Deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier deposits	Mild soap solution [a], detergent-free plastic cleaning solution, if necessary
Displays	Deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner
Controls	Deposits	Soft brush, then a soft cloth with a mild soap solution[a]
Safety belts	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a], allow to dry before letting them retract

Component	Situation	Solution
Textiles artificial leather, Alcantara	Deposits adhering to the surface	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild soap solution[a)]
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Apply a mild soap solution [a)], blot away the dissolved oil or dye, treat afterward with water, if necessary
	Special deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Special stain remover, blot with absorbent material, treat afterward with mild soap solution, if necessary [a)]
Natural leather	Fresh stains	Wool cloth with a mild soap solution[a)]
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and stain remover suitable for leather dried stains: oil cleaning spray
	Special deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Spot remover suitable for leather
	Care	Regularly apply conditioning cream that protects from light and penetrates into the material. Use specially-colored conditioning cream, if necessary.
Refrigerator	Dust and dirt	Clean the ventilation openings in the luggage compartment
	Deposits	Lukewarm water, mild soap solution if necessary[a)], then dry
	Defrosting	Empty the refrigerator, switch it off and let it thaw with the door open, then dry
Carbon parts	Deposits	clean the same way as plastic parts

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

WARNING

The windshield may not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions such as wetness, darkness, or low sun can result in increased glare. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.

Note

– **Headlights/tail lights**

  – Never clean headlights or tail lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
  – Do not use any cleaning product that contains alcohol, because they could cause cracks to form.

– **Wheels**

  – Never use any paint polish or other abrasive materials. ▶

- Damage to the protective layer on the rims such as stone chips or scratches must be repaired immediately.

– **Sensors/camera lenses**
- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the camera lens. This could cause the lens to crack.
- Never use abrasive cleaning materials or alcohol to clean the camera lens. This could cause scratches and cracks.

– **Door windows**
- Remove snow and ice on windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper. To avoid scratches, move the scraper only in one direction and not back and forth.
- Never remove snow or ice from door windows and mirrors using warm or hot water because this could cause cracks to form.
- To avoid damage to the rear window defogger, do not apply any stickers on the heating wires on the inside of the window.

– **Decorative parts/trim**
- Never use chrome care or cleaning products.

– **Paint**
- To reduce the risk of scratches, the vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before polishing or waxing.
- To prevent paint damage, do not polish or wax the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not polish away rust spots.
- Remove cosmetics and sunscreen immediately - these could damage the paint.

– **Displays**
- To avoid scratches, do not use dry cleaning methods on displays.

– **Controls**
- Make sure that no fluids enter the controls, because this could cause damage.

– **Safety belts**
- Do not remove the safety belts to clean them.
- Never clean safety belts or their components chemically or with corrosive fluids or solvents and never allow sharp objects to come into contact with the safety belts. This could cause damage to the belt webbing.
- If there is damage to the webbing, the connections, the retractors or the buckles, have them replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

– **Textiles/artificial leather/Alcantara**
- Never treat artificial leather/Alcantara with leather care products, solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remove or similar products.
- Have a specialist remove stubborn stains to prevent damage.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
- Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
- Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
- Open hook and loop fasteners, for example on clothing, can damage seat covers. Make sure hook and loop fasteners are closed.

– **Natural leather**
- Never treat leather with solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover or similar products.
- Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
- Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
- To help prevent the leather from fading, do not leave the vehicle in direct sunlight for long periods of time. If leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, you should cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight.

– **Refrigerator**
- Do not try to speed up the defrosting process by applying heat.
- To help prevent health risks or damage to the refrigerator, do not use any abrasive ▶

cleaners, solvents, wax or strongly scented or aggressive cleaning products.
– Do not clean the refrigerator with rough cleaning tools such as steel wool.

Tips

– Insects are easier to remove from paint that has been freshly waxed.
– Regular waxing can prevent rust spots from forming.

Placing your vehicle out of service

If you would like to take your vehicle out of service for a longer period of time, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. They will advise you of important measures, such as corrosion protection, service and storage procedures. Also follow the information about the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 279*.

4H0012721BD

Emergency assistance

General information

- ▸ Park the vehicle as far as possible from moving traffic in the event of a breakdown. In the event of a flat tire, park the vehicle on a level surface. It you are on a steep hill, be especially careful.
- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Switch the emergency flashers on.
- ▸ Set up the warning triangle ⇨ *page 312*.
- ▸ Have the passengers exit the vehicle. They should move to a safe place, for example behind a guard rail.

WARNING

Follow the steps given above. This is for your protection and the for the safety of other drivers.

Equipment

Warning triangle

Applies to: vehicles with warning triangle



Fig. 271 Luggage compartment lid: warning triangle

The warning triangle placed in the vehicle at the factory is located in the luggage compartment.

- ▸ To remove the warning triangle, press the fastener in the direction of the arrow and fold the holder down.

The luggage compartment lid is only designed to hold the warning triangle offered by the Audi Genuine Accessories program.

Vehicle tool kit

Applies to: vehicles with vehicle tool kit

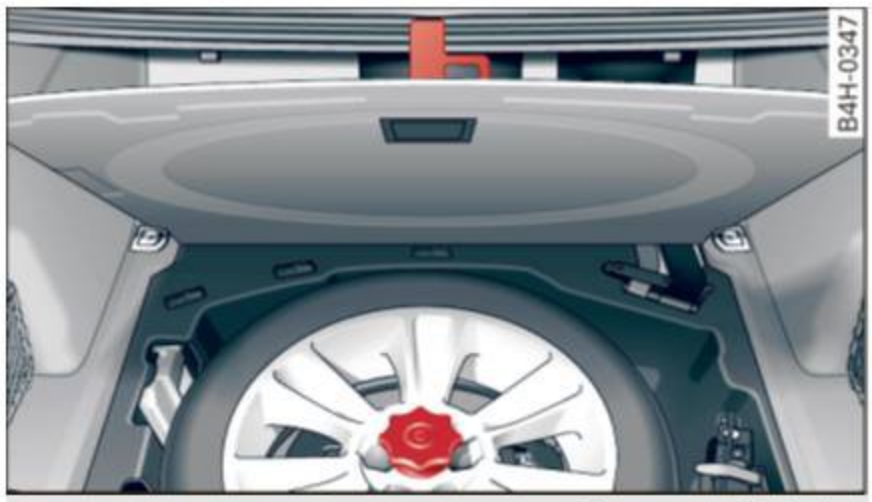


Fig. 272 Luggage compartment: cargo floor cover folded upward

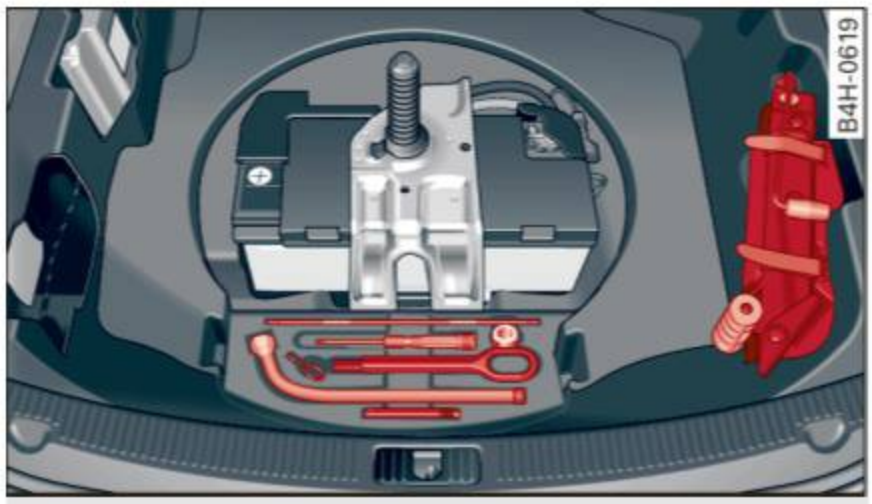


Fig. 273 Luggage compartment: example of vehicle tool kit and vehicle jack

The vehicle tools and vehicle jack* are stored in the luggage compartment under the floor cover.

- ▸ Lift the cargo floor by the plastic handle.
- ▸ Hook the handle into the luggage compartment seal ⇨ *fig. 272*.
- ▸ Turn the handwheel counter-clockwise and remove it.
- ▸ Remove the spare tire* to access the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *fig. 272*.

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle tool kit may be located under the spare tire, under another cover or in the tool box.

The position of the vehicle jack* may vary.

WARNING

Improper use of the vehicle jack can cause serious personal injuries.

– Never use the screw driver hex head to tighten wheel bolts, since the bolts cannot attain the necessary tightening torque if you ▸

use the hex head, potentially causing an accident.
– The factory-supplied jack is intended only for your vehicle model. Under no circumstances should it be used to lift heavy vehicles or other loads; you risk injuring yourself.
– Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised, which could cause an accident.
– Support the vehicle securely with appropriate stands if work is to be performed underneath the vehicle; otherwise, there is a potential risk for injury.
– Never use the jack supplied with your Audi on another vehicle, particularly on a heavier one. The jack is only suitable for use on the vehicle it came with.

Tips

The vehicle jack* in your vehicle is maintenance-free.

Replacing wheels

Before changing a wheel

Observe the following precautions for your own and your passenger's safety when changing a wheel.

- After you experience a tire failure, pull the car well away from moving traffic and try to reach **level** ground before you stop ⇨ ⚠.
- All passengers should **leave the car** and move to a safe location (for instance, behind the guardrail) ⇨ ⚠.
- Engage the **parking brake** to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally ⇨ ⚠.
- Move **selector lever to position P** ⇨ ⚠.
- If you are towing a trailer, unhitch the trailer from your vehicle.
- Take the **jack** and the **spare tire** out of the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 312*.

WARNING

You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:

– If you have a flat tire, move a safe distance off the road. Turn off the engine, turn the emergency flashers on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists.
– Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.
– To help prevent the vehicle from moving suddenly and possibly slipping off the jack, always fully set the parking brake and block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed. When one front wheel is lifted off the ground, placing the Automatic Transmission in "P" (Park) will *not* prevent the vehicle from moving.
– Before you change a wheel, be sure the ground is level and firm. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
– Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 213*.

Tips

Before changing the wheel, you must activate the jacking mode, so that the automatic controls for the Adaptive Air Suspension do not make it more difficult to lift the vehicle with the jack ⇨ *page 315*.

Changing a wheel

When you change a wheel, follow the sequence described below step-by-step and in exactly that order.

1. Activate the vehicle jack mode ⇨ *page 315*.
2. Remove the **decorative wheel cover*** . For more details see also ⇨ *page 314, Decorative wheel covers* or ⇨ *page 314, Wheels with wheel bolt caps*.
3. Loosen the **wheel bolts** ⇨ *page 315*.
4. Locate the proper mounting point for the jack and align the jack below that point ⇨ *page 315* or ⇨ *page 316*.
5. **Raise** the car with the jack ⇨ *page 315* or ⇨ *page 316*.
6. Remove the **wheel with the flat tire** and then install **the spare** ⇨ *page 318*. ▶

4H0012721BD

7. Tighten all wheel bolts lightly.
8. **Lower** the vehicle with the jack.
9. Use the wheel bolt wrench and **firmly** tighten all wheel bolts ⇨ *page 315*.
10. Replace the decorative **wheel cover***.
11. Deactivate the vehicle jack mode in the MMI: CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Air susp.: jack mode** > **Off**.

The vehicle jack mode switches off automatically at speeds above 10 km/h.

WARNING

Always read and follow all WARNINGS and information ⇨ ⚠ *in A8: Raising the vehicle on page 316* and ⇨ *page 319*.

After changing a wheel

A wheel change is not complete without the doing the following.

- Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack* and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 213*.
- Check the **tire pressure** on the spare wheel immediately after mounting it.
- As soon as possible, have the **tightening torques** on all wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench. The correct tightening torque is 90 ft lb (120 Nm).
- Have the flat tire **replaced** as soon as possible.

Tips

– If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.
– Drive at reduced speed until you have the tightening torques checked.
– After changing a wheel, the tire pressure in all four tires must be checked/corrected and the tire pressure monitoring indicator must be stored in the MMI ⇨ *page 302*.

Decorative wheel covers

Applies to: vehicles with decorative wheel covers

The decorative wheel covers must be removed first to access the wheel bolts.

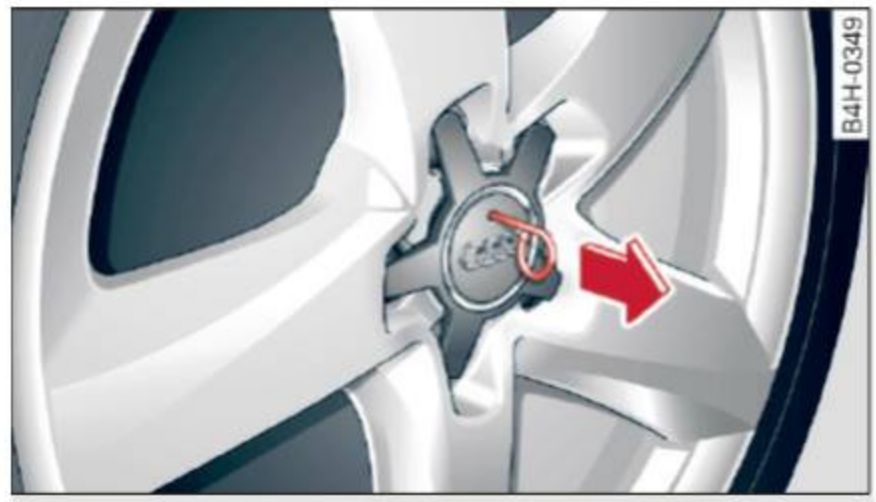


Fig. 274 Changing a wheel: Removing the wheel cover

Removing

- Insert the **hook** (provided with the vehicle tool kit) in the hole in the wheel hub cover.
- Pull off the **decorative wheel cover** ⇨ *fig. 274*.

Wheels with wheel bolt caps

Applies to: vehicles with wheel bolts with caps

The caps must be removed first from the wheel bolts before the bolts can be unscrewed.



Fig. 275 Changing a wheel: removing the wheel bolt caps

Removing

- Push the **plastic clip** (provided with the vehicle tool kit) over the wheel bolt cap until the inner retainers on the clip align with the edge of the cover.
- Remove the cap with the **plastic clip** (vehicle tool kit) ⇨ *fig. 275*.

Refitting

- Place the caps over the wheel bolts and push them back on. ▶

The caps are to protect and keep the wheel bolts clean.

Loosening and tightening the wheel bolts

The wheel bolts must be loosened before raising the vehicle.



Fig. 276 Changing a wheel: loosening the wheel bolts

Loosening

- ▸ Slide the **wheel wrench** onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go.
- ▸ Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn the wheel bolts **counter-clockwise** about *one single* turn in the direction of arrow ⇨ *fig. 276*.

Tightening

- ▸ Slide the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go.
- ▸ Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn each wheel bolt **clockwise** until it is seated.

WARNING

– Do not use force or hurry when changing a wheel - you can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack and cause serious personal injuries.

– *Do not* loosen the wheel bolts *more than one turn* before you raise the vehicle with the jack. - You risk an injury.

Tips

– Never use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.

– If a wheel bolt is very tight, you may find it easier to loosen by carefully pushing down on the end of the wheel bolt wrench with *one foot only*. As you do so, hold on to the car to keep your balance and take care not to slip.

A8: Raising the vehicle

The vehicle must be lifted with the jack first before the wheel can be removed.

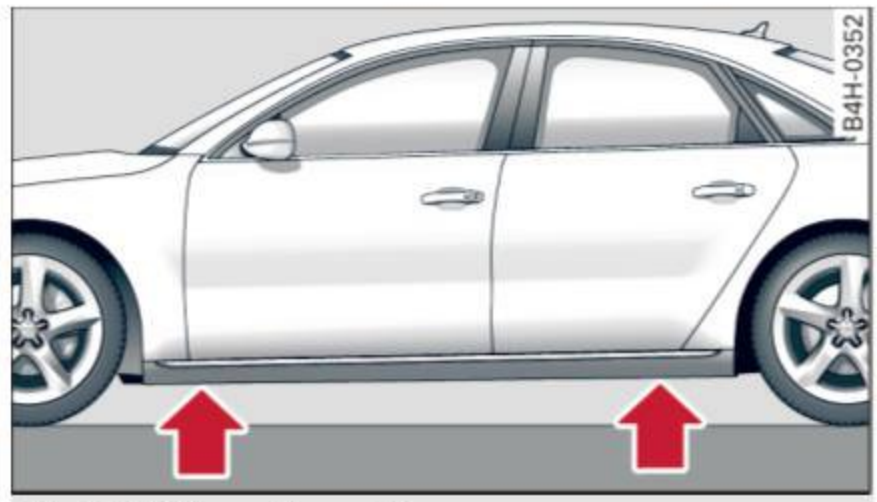


Fig. 277 Sill panels: markings

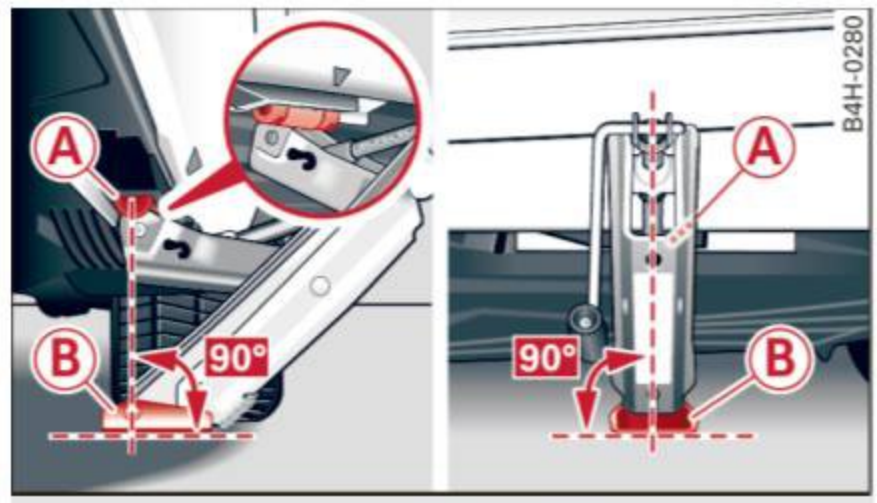


Fig. 278 Sill: positioning the vehicle jack

- ▸ Activate the vehicle jack mode in the MMI: CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Air susp.: jack mode** > **On**.
- ▸ Engage the **parking brake** to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally.
- ▸ Move the **selector lever to position P**.
- ▸ Find the **marking** (imprint) on the sill that is nearest the wheel that will be changed ⇨ *fig. 277*. Behind the marking, there is a **lifting point** on the sill for the vehicle jack.
- ▸ Turn the **vehicle jack** located under the lifting point on the sill to raise the jack until its arm Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 278* is located under the designated plastic mount ⇨ ⚠ ⇨ (!).
- ▸ Align the jack so that its arm Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 278* engages in the designated lifting point in the door sill and the movable base Ⓑ lies flat on the ▸

ground. The base Ⓑ must be *vertical* under the lifting point Ⓐ.

▸ Wind the jack up further until the flat tire comes off the ground ⇨ ⚠.

Position the vehicle jack **only** under the designated lifting points on the sill ⇨ *fig. 277*. There is exactly *one* location for each wheel. The jack must not be positioned at any other location ⇨ ⚠ ⇨ ⓘ.

An **unstable surface** under the jack can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary place a sturdy board or similar support under the jack. On **hard, slippery surfaces** (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

– You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:
  – Position the vehicle jack only at the designated lifting points and align the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle jack could slip and cause an injury if it does not have sufficient hold on the vehicle.
  – A soft or unstable surface under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
  – On hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping.
– To help prevent injury to yourself and your passengers:
  – Do not raise the vehicle until you are sure the jack is securely engaged.
  – Passengers must not remain in the vehicle when it is jacked up.
  – Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.
  – Make sure jack position is correct, adjust as necessary and then continue to raise the jack.
– Changes in temperature or load can affect the height of the vehicle.

ⓘ Note

Do not lift the vehicle by the sill. Position the vehicle jack only at the designated lifting points on the sill. Otherwise, your vehicle will be damaged.

ⓘ Tips

The vehicle jack mode switches off automatically at speeds above 10 km/h.

S8: Raising the vehicle

The vehicle must be lifted with the jack first before the wheel can be removed.

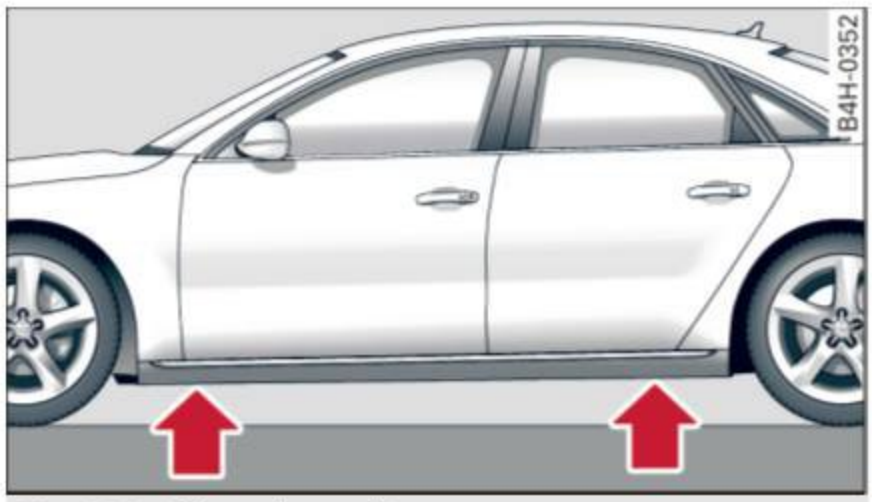


Fig. 279 Sill panels: markings

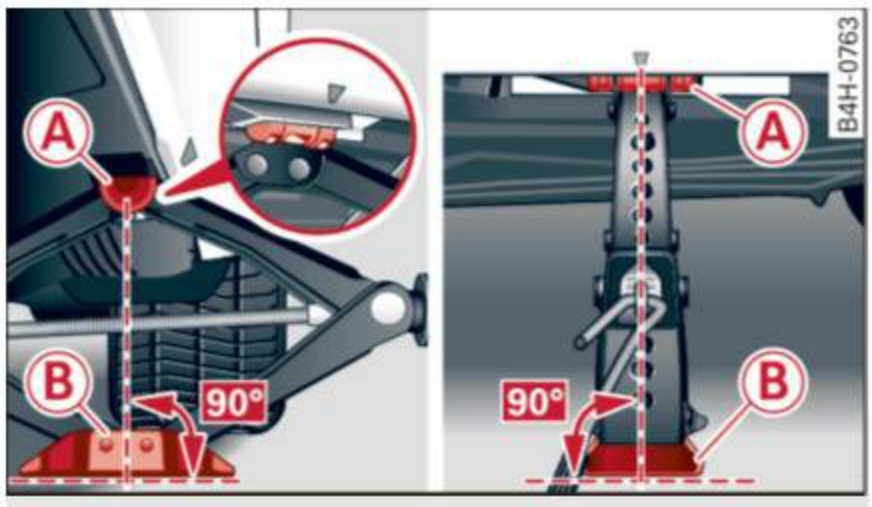


Fig. 280 Sill: positioning the vehicle jack

▸ Activate the vehicle jack mode in the MMI: CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Air susp.: jack mode** > **On**.
▸ Engage the **parking brake** to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally.
▸ Move the **selector lever to position P**.
▸ Find the **marking** (imprint) on the sill that is nearest the wheel that will be changed ▶

⇨ *fig. 279*. Behind the marking, there is a **lifting point** on the sill for the vehicle jack.

- ▸ Turn the **vehicle jack** located under the lifting point on the sill to raise the jack until its arm Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 280* is located under the designated plastic mount ⇨ ⚠ *in A8: Raising the vehicle on page 316* ⇨ Ⓘ.
- ▸ Align the jack so that its arm Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 280* engages in the designated lifting point in the door sill and the movable base Ⓑ lies flat on the ground. The base Ⓑ must be *vertical* under the lifting point Ⓐ.
- ▸ Wind the jack up further until the flat tire comes off the ground ⇨ ⚠ *in A8: Raising the vehicle on page 316*.

Position the vehicle jack **only** under the designated lifting points on the sill ⇨ *page 315, fig. 277*. There is exactly *one* location for each wheel. The jack must not be positioned at any other location ⇨ ⚠ *in A8: Raising the vehicle on page 316* ⇨ Ⓘ.

An **unstable surface** under the jack can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary place a sturdy board or similar support under the jack. On **hard, slippery surfaces** (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

– You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:
  – Position the vehicle jack only at the designated lifting points and align the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle jack could slip and cause an injury if it does not have sufficient hold on the vehicle.
  – A soft or unstable surface under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
  – On hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping.
– To help prevent injury to yourself and your passengers:
  – Do not raise the vehicle until you are sure the jack is securely engaged.
  – Passengers must not remain in the vehicle when it is jacked up.
  – Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.
  – Make sure jack position is correct, adjust as necessary and then continue to raise the jack.
– Changes in temperature or load can affect the height of the vehicle.

Ⓘ Note

Do not lift the vehicle by the sill. Position the vehicle jack only at the designated lifting points on the sill. Otherwise, your vehicle will be damaged.

Ⓘ Tips

The vehicle jack mode switches off automatically at speeds above 10 km/h.

Taking the wheel off/installing the spare

Follow these instructions step-by-step for changing the wheel.

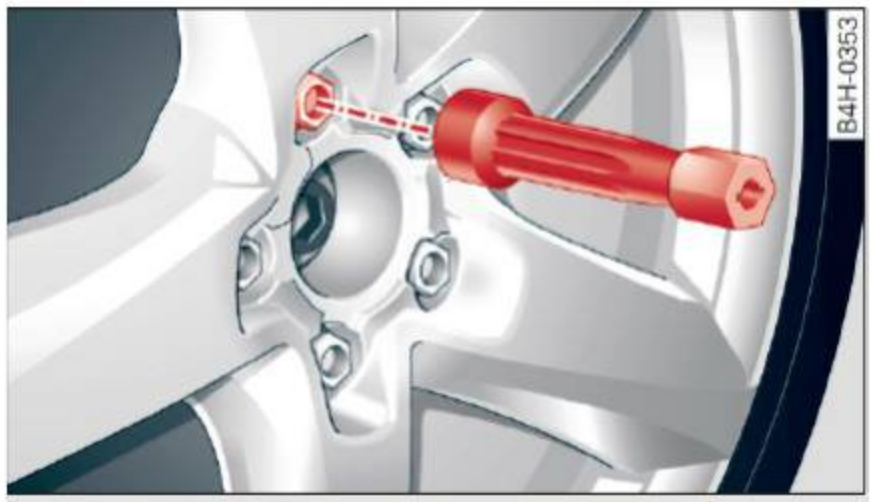


Fig. 281 Changing a wheel: using the screwdriver handle (with the blade removed) to turn the bolts

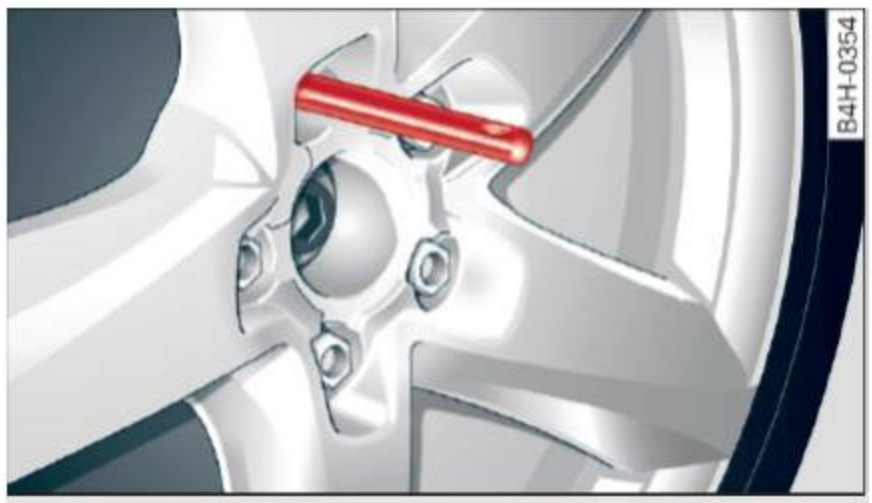


Fig. 282 Changing a wheel: alignment pin inside the top hole

After you have loosened all wheel bolts and raised the vehicle off the ground, remove and replace the wheel as follows:

Removing the wheel

- Use the **hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle** to completely remove the topmost wheel bolt and set it aside on a *clean* surface ⇨ *fig. 281*.
- Screw the threaded end of the **alignment pin** from the tool kit hand-tight into the empty bolt hole ⇨ *fig. 282* [1].
- Then remove the other wheel bolts as described above.
- Take off the wheel leaving the alignment pin in the bolt hole ⇨ (!).

Putting on the spare wheel

- Lift the spare wheel and carefully slide it over the alignment pin to guide it in place ⇨ (!).
- Use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to screw in and tighten all wheel bolts *slightly*.
- Remove the alignment pin and insert and tighten the remaining wheel bolt slightly like the rest.
- Turn the jack handle counter-clockwise to lower the vehicle until the jack is fully released.
- Use the wheel bolt wrench to tighten all wheel bolts firmly ⇨ *page 315*. Tighten them *crosswise*, from one bolt to the (approximately) opposite one, to keep the wheel centered.

(!) Note

When removing or installing the wheel, the rim could hit the brake rotor/ceramic brake rotor* and damage the rotor. Work carefully and have a second person help you.

(i) Tips

Never use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.

– Pull the reversible blade from the screwdriver before you use the hexagonal socket in the handle to turn the wheel bolts.
– When mounting tires with **unidirectional tread design** make sure the tread pattern is pointed the right way ⇨ *page 319*.
– The wheel bolts should be clean and easy to turn. Check for dirt and corrosion on the mating surfaces of both the wheel and the hub. Remove all dirt from these surfaces before remounting the wheel.

[1] Applies to vehicles with ceramic brake rotors*: Use a second alignment pin* (stored in the spare wheel well molding) for the lower hole, following the description for the first alignment pin.

Tires with unidirectional tread design

Tires with unidirectional tread design must be mounted with their tread pattern pointed in the right direction.

Using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction

When using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction, please note the following:

- The direction of rotation is marked by an arrow on the side of the tire.
- If the spare tire has to be installed in the incorrect direction, use the spare tire only temporarily since the tire will not be able to achieve its optimum performance characteristics with regard to aquaplaning, noise and wear.
- We recommend that you pay particular attention to this fact during wet weather and that you adjust your speed to match road conditions.
- Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible to restore the handling advantages of a unidirectional tire.

Notes on wheel changing

Please read the information ⇨ *page 290* if you are going to use a spare tire which is different from the tires on your vehicle.

After you change a tire:

- **Check the tire pressure on the spare immediately after installation.**
- **Have the wheel bolt tightening torque checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.**
- **With steel and alloy wheel rims, the wheel bolts are correctly tightened at a torque of 90 ft lb (120 Nm).**
- **If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.**
- **Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible. Remount the wheel cover.**

Until then, drive with extra care and at reduced speeds.

WARNING

- If you are going to equip your vehicle with tires or rims which differ from those which were factory installed, then be sure to read the information ⇨ *page 290*.
- Always make sure the damaged wheel or even a flat tire and the jack and tool kit are properly secured in the luggage compartment and are not loose in the passenger compartment.
- In an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, injuring anyone in the vehicle.
- Always store damaged wheel, jack and tools securely in the luggage compartment. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, causing injury to passengers in the vehicle.

Spare tires

General information

Applies to: vehicles with spare tire/space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire)

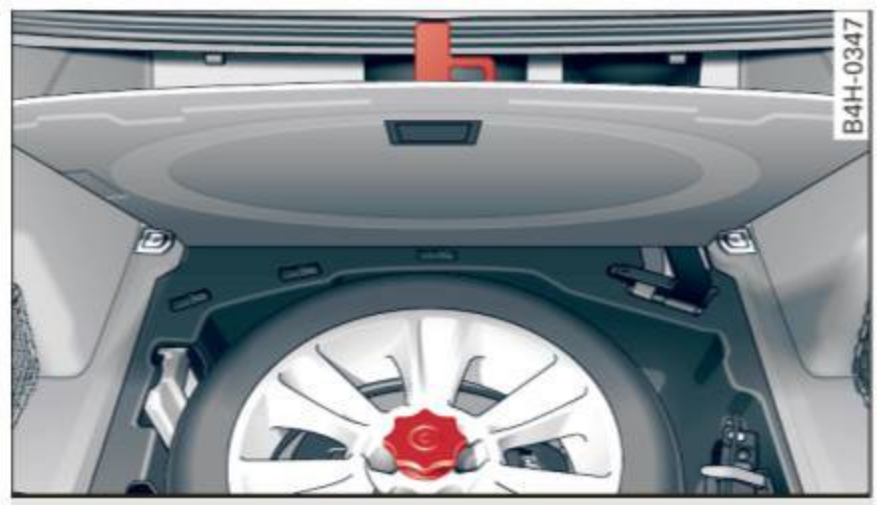


Fig. 283 Luggage compartment: cargo floor cover folded upward

The spare tire is intended for short-term use only. Have the damaged tire checked and, if necessary, replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible. ▶

There are some restrictions on the use of the spare tire. The spare tire has been designed specifically for your type of vehicle. Do not replace it with the spare tire from another type of vehicle.

There are different types of spare tires available depending on the equipment ⇨ *page 320*.

Removing the spare tire

- ▸ Lift the cargo floor by the plastic handle ⇨ *fig. 283*.
- ▸ Hook the handle into the luggage compartment seal.
- ▸ Turn the handwheel counter-clockwise and remove it.
- ▸ Remove the spare tire.

Snow chains

For technical reasons, the use of snow chains on the compact spare tire is not permitted.

If you have to drive with snow chains and a front tire fails, mount the spare wheel in place of a rear tire. Install the snow chains on the rear tire that you removed, and install that in place of the front tire that failed.

⚠ WARNING

- After installing a spare tire, the tire pressure must be checked as quickly as possible.
- Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) with a compact spare tire. Driving faster than that increases the risk of an accident.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, avoid full-throttle acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering with the compact spare tire.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, never drive with more than one compact spare tire.
- Normal summer or winter tires must not be mounted on the compact spare wheel rim.

⚠ WARNING

- Never use the spare tire if it is damaged or if it is worn down to the tread wear indicators.
- If the spare tire is more than 6 years old, use it only in an emergency and with extreme caution and careful driving.
- The spare tire is intended only for temporary and short-term use. It should be replaced as soon as possible with the normal wheel and tire.
- For technical reasons, the use of tire chains on the spare tire is not permitted. If it is necessary to drive with tire chains, the spare wheel must be mounted on the front axle in the event of a flat in a rear tire. The newly available front wheel must then be installed in place of the rear wheel with the flat tire. Installing the tire chain before mounting the wheel and tire is recommended.
- Loose items in the passenger compartment can cause serious personal injury during hard braking or in an accident. Never store the inflatable spare tire or jack and tools in the passenger compartment.

Spare tire types

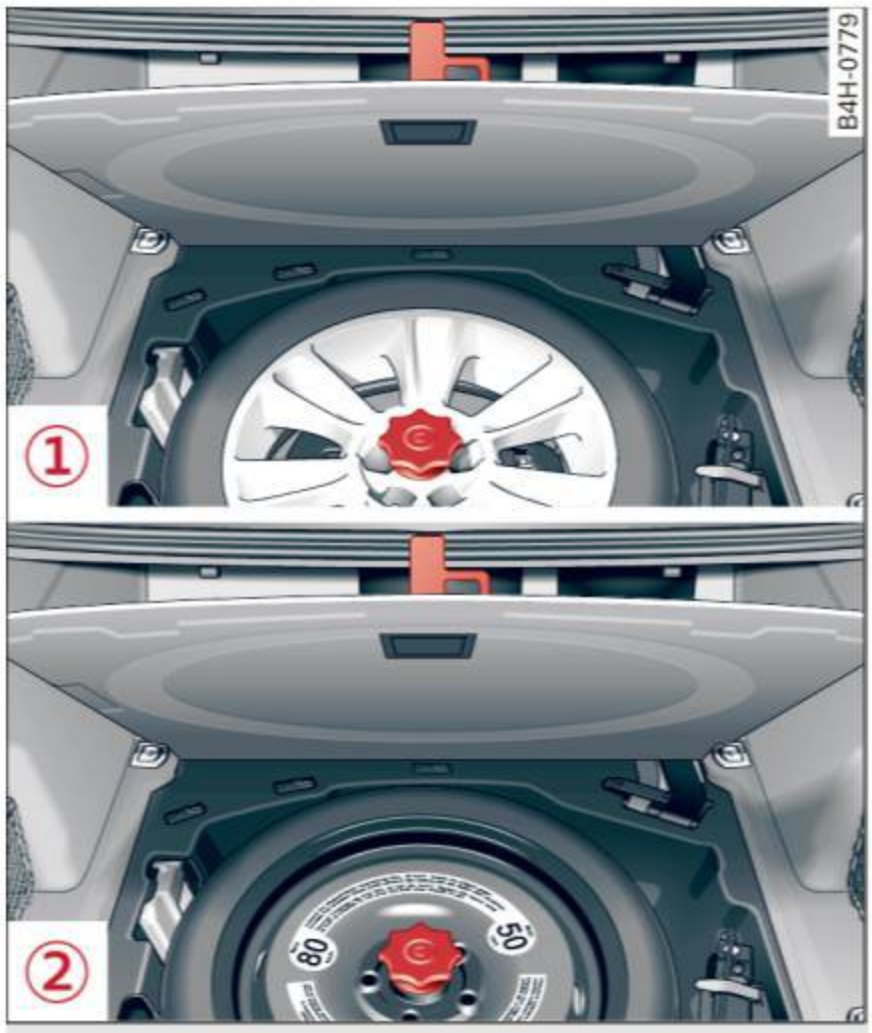


Fig. 284 Luggage compartment: space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire)

① Spare tire*

If you have to mount a spare tire opposite the running direction because of a flat tire, drive carefully and restore the correct running direction as soon as possible ⇨ *page 319*. ▸

② Space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire)*

The tire pressure must be 61 PSI (4.2 bar).

Fuses and bulbs

Electrical fuses

Changing fuses

A fuse that has blown will have metal strips that have burned through.

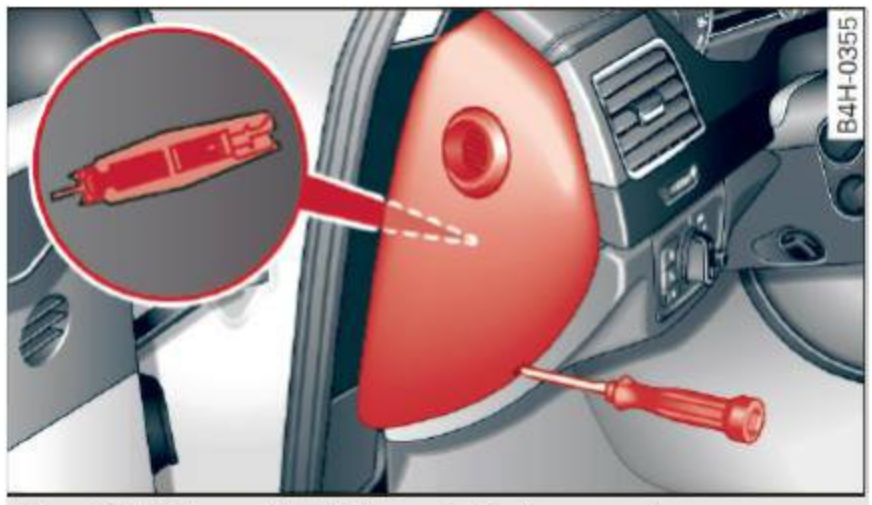


Fig. 285 Driver side of the cockpit: fuse panel cover

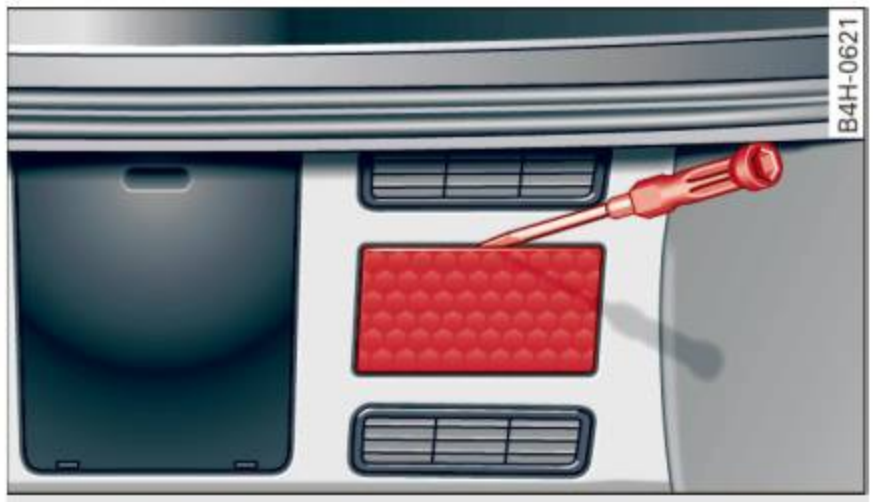


Fig. 286 Luggage compartment: fuse panel cover

The fuses are located on front left and right of the cockpit and behind the trim on the right side of the luggage compartment.

- ▸ Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off.
- ▸ Check the following table to see which fuse belongs to the equipment.
- ▸ Remove the cover ⇨ *fig. 285* or ⇨ *fig. 286*.
- ▸ Remove the colored plastic clip from the fuse panel, if necessary ⇨ *page 323, fig. 287*. You can dispose of the plastic clip.
- ▸ Remove the clamp from the rear side of the cover ⇨ *fig. 285*.
- ▸ Remove the fuse using the clamp.
- ▸ Replace the blown fuse only with an identical new one.
- ▸ Install the cover.

Fuse color identification

Color	Current rating in amps
Black	1
Purple	3
Light brown	5
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Blue	15
Yellow	20
White or transparent	25
Green	30
Orange	40

WARNING

Do not repair fuses and never replace a blown fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. This can cause damage to the electrical system and a fire.

Note

If a new fuse burns out again shortly after you have installed it, have the electrical system checked as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

- – The following table does not list fuse locations that are not used.
- – Some of the equipment listed in the following tables applies only to certain model versions or certain optional equipment.

Driver's side cockpit fuse assignment

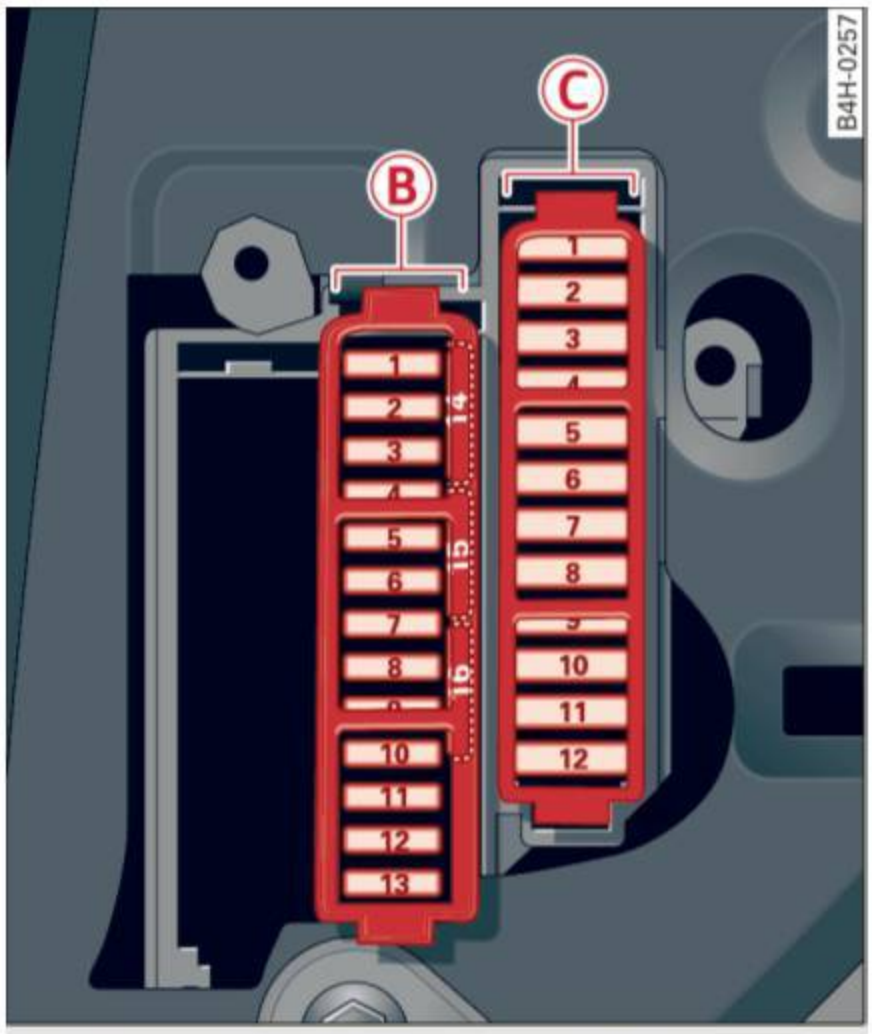


Fig. 287 Driver side cockpit: fuse panel with plastic bracket

Fuse panel Ⓑ (brown)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Light switch
2	Emergency start coil (driver identification)
3	Left rear door control module
4	Head-up display
5	Horn
6	Interior lights (headliner)
8	Steering column lever, multifunction steering wheel controls, steering wheel heating
10	Power steering column adjustment
11	Driver door control module
12	Diagnostic connector, light/rain sensor
14	Power steering column adjustment
15	Power steering, A/C compressor
16	Brake booster

Fuse panel Ⓒ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Front seat heating
2	Windshield wipers
3	Front exterior lighting
4	Sliding/tilting sunroof
5	Driver power window
6	Driver's seat (pneumatic)
7	Panorama roof
8	Dynamic steering
9	Front exterior lighting
10	Windshield/headlight washer system
11	Left rear power window
12	Panorama roof

Front passenger side cockpit fuse assignment

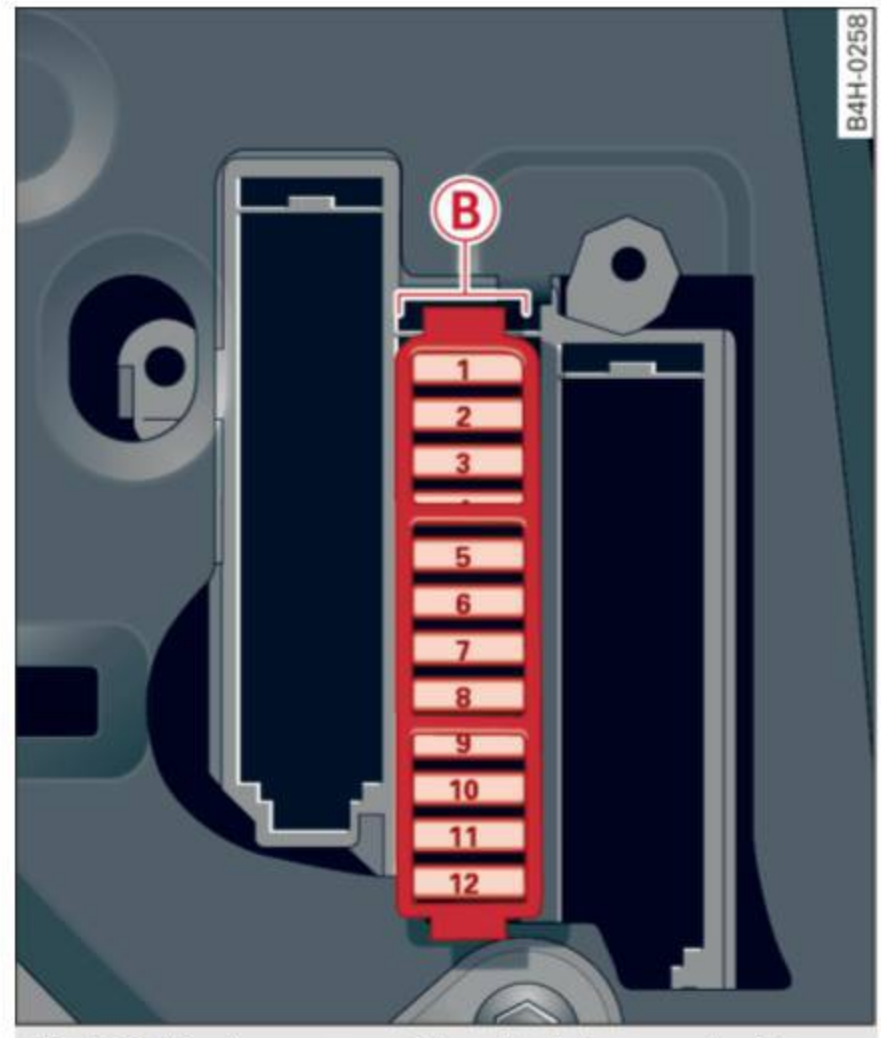


Fig. 288 Front passenger side cockpit: fuse panel with plastic bracket

Fuse panel Ⓑ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Anti-theft alarm system
2	Transmission control module
3	Front climate control fan
4	Engine supply
6	Engine control module
7	Front passenger door control module

Fuse panel Ⓑ (black)	
8	Front passenger power window
9	ESC control module
10	ESC control module

Fuse panel Ⓑ (black)	
11	Right rear power window
12	Front passenger's seat (pneumatic)

Luggage compartment fuse assignment

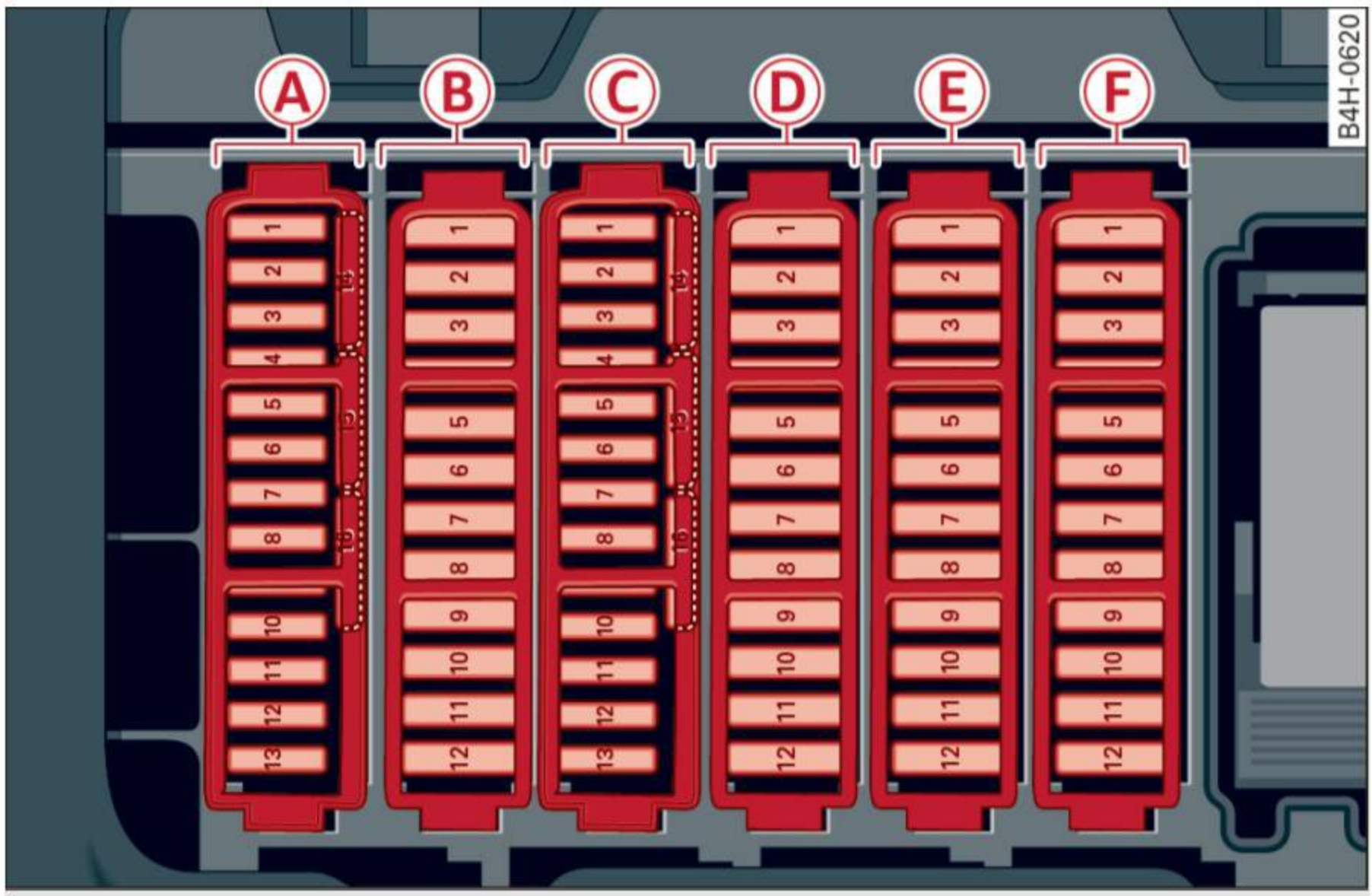


Fig. 289 Luggage compartment: fuse panel with plastic bracket

Fuse panel Ⓐ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	ESC button, data logger, diagnostic connector, BCM - 1, adaptive light
2	Networking gateway
3	adaptive air suspension
4	Parking aid
5	Steering column lever
6	Suspension control system sensor
7	Belt tensioners, airbag control module
8	Heated washer fluid nozzles, HomeLink (garage door opener), night vision system control module, sport differential, ionizer
9	Electromechanical parking brake control module

Fuse panel Ⓐ (black)	
10	Rear seat heating, refrigerator, rearview mirror
11	Electromechanical steering
12	Selector lever, BCM-2 voltage
13	Side assist
14	Engine control module
15	Starter
16	Left headlight (headlights with adaptive light)/headlight range control

Fuse panel Ⓑ (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Left reversible belt tensioner
2	Right reversible belt tensioner

Fuse panel Ⓑ (red)	
3	Starter diagnosis, DC/DC converter (with Start/Stop system)
4	DC/DC converter (with Start/Stop system)
5	Image processing
6	Right headlight (headlights with adaptive light)
7	ESC control module
8	Sound actuator, AEM control module/ crankcase housing heater
9	Adaptive cruise control
10	Transmission control module
11	Climate control system sensors

Fuse panel Ⓒ (brown)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Electromechanical parking brake
2	Suspension control system sensor
3	Rear Infotainment system control panel
4	Smart module (tank)
5	Front climate control system controls
6	Rear climate control system control panel
7	Networking gateway
8	Refrigerator
9	Special functions interface
10	Cell phone adapter, Bluetooth handset
11	AEM control module
12	Selector lever
13	Interior lighting
14	Rear exterior lighting
15	Fuel pump
16	Electromechanical parking brake

Fuse panel Ⓓ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Luggage compartment lid movement-activated opening
2	Luggage compartment sockets
3	Rear socket
4	Front cigarette lighter
5	adaptive air suspension
6	115 V socket

Fuse panel Ⓓ (black)	
7	Electromechanical parking brake
8	Rear seat heating
9	Rear exterior lighting
10	Rear climate control blower
11	Rear sun shade, closing aid, luggage compartment lid lock, convenience key, fuel filler door
12	Luggage compartment lid control module

Fuse panel Ⓔ (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Rear seat adjustment buttons
3	Left rear seat (pneumatic)
5	Trailer hitch control module
6	Left rear seat
7	Right rear seat
8	Trailer hitch control module
9	Trailer hitch control module
10	Right rear seat (pneumatic)

Fuse panel Ⓕ (brown)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Start/Stop system, radio receiver/sound amplifier
2	Sound amplifier
3	Start/Stop system, Rear Seat Entertainment, radio receiver/sound amplifier
5	Automatic dimming interior rearview mirror (for Start-Stop system)
6	DVD changer (glove compartment)
7	TV tuner
8	Infotainment system control panel/drives
9	Instrument cluster, analog clock
10	Infotainment system display
11	Radio receiver
12	Rearview camera, peripheral cameras (parking system)

4H0012721BD

Bulbs

Replacing light bulbs

For your safety, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi dealer replace burned out bulbs for you.

It is becoming increasingly more and more difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs since in many cases, other parts of the car must first be removed before you are able to get to the bulb. This applies especially to the light bulbs in the front of your car which you can only reach through the engine compartment.

Sheet metal and bulb holders can have sharp edges that can cause serious cuts, and parts must be correctly taken apart and then properly put back together to help prevent breakage of parts and long term damage from water that can enter housings that have not been properly resealed.

For your safety, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi dealer replace any bulbs for you, since your dealer has the proper tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise.

Gas discharge lamps (Xenon lights):

Due to the high electrical voltage, have the bulbs replaced by a qualified technician. Headlights with Xenon light can be identified by the high voltage sticker.

LED headlights* require no maintenance. Please contact your authorized Audi dealer if a bulb needs to be replaced.

WARNING

Contact with high-voltage components of the electrical system and improper replacement of gas discharge (Xenon) headlight bulbs can cause serious personal injury and death.

- Xenon bulbs are pressurized and can explode when being changed.
- Changing Xenon lamps requires the special training, instructions and equipment.
- Only an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop should change the bulbs in gas discharge lamps.

WARNING

There are parts with sharp edges on the openings and on the bulb holders that can cause serious cuts.

- If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

Tips

- If you must replace the light bulbs yourself, always remember that the engine compartment of any vehicle is a hazardous area to work in. Always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 271*.
- It is best to ask your authorized Audi dealer whenever you need to change a bulb.

Emergency situations

General

This chapter is intended for trained emergency crews and working personnel who have the necessary tools and equipment to perform these operations.

Starting by pushing or towing

Note

Vehicles with an automatic transmission cannot be started by pushing or towing.

Starting with jumper cables

If necessary, the engine can be started by connecting it to the battery of another vehicle.

If the engine should fail to start because of a discharged or weak battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of *another* vehicle, using a **pair of jumper cables** to start the engine.

Jumper cables

Use *only* jumper cables of sufficiently large **cross section** to carry the starter current safely. Refer to the manufacturer's specifications.

Use only jumper cables with *insulated* terminal clamps which are distinctly marked:

plus (+) cable in most cases colored **red**

minus (-) cable in most cases colored **black**.

WARNING

Batteries contain electricity, acid, and gas. Any of these can cause very serious or fatal injury. Follow the instructions below for safe handling of your vehicle's battery.

- Always shield your eyes and avoid leaning over the battery whenever possible.
- A dead battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 °C). If the vehicle battery is frozen, you must thaw it before connecting the jump start cables. If you do not, this increases the risk of an explosion and chemical burns. After jump starting the vehicle, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the vehicle battery checked.
- Do not allow battery acid to contact eyes or skin. Flush any contacted area with water immediately.
- Improper use of a booster battery to start a vehicle may cause an explosion.
- Vehicle batteries generate explosive gases. Keep sparks, flame and lighted cigarettes away from batteries.
- Do not try to jump start any vehicle with a low acid level in the battery.
- The voltage of the booster battery must also have a 12-Volt rating. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery. Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different "Ah" rating may cause an explosion and personal injury.
- Never charge a frozen battery. Gas trapped in the ice may cause an explosion.
- Never charge or use a battery that has been frozen. The battery case may have be weakened.
- Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different capacity (Ah) rating may cause an explosion and injury. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery.
- Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 271*.

Note

- Applying a higher voltage booster battery will cause expensive damage to sensitive electronic components, such as control units, relays, radio, etc.
- There must be no electrical contact between the vehicles as otherwise current could already start to flow as soon as the positive (+) terminals are connected. ▶

Tips

The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system. When jump starting or charging the battery, never connect the negative ground cable to the battery negative post because the battery manager system must be able to detect the battery's state of charge. Always connect the negative ground cable to the negative ground post of the battery manager control unit.

Using the jump start cable

Both jump start cables must be connected in the correct order!

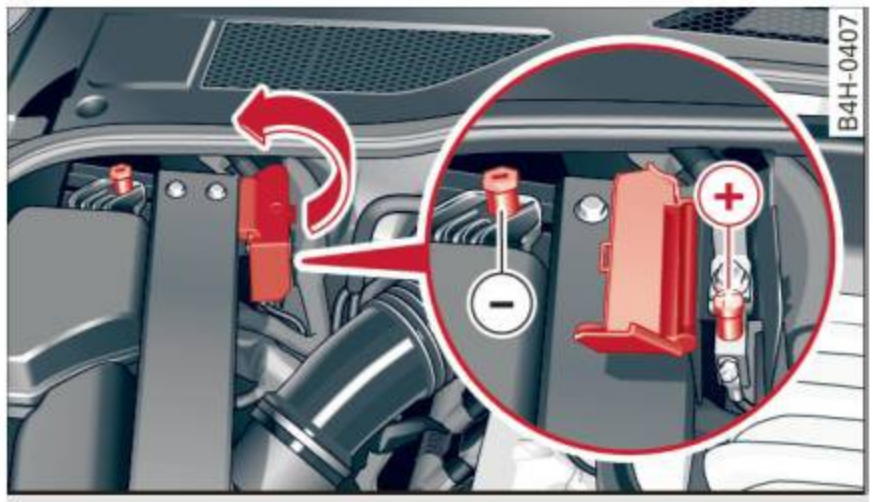


Fig. 290 Engine compartment: connectors for jump start cables and a charger

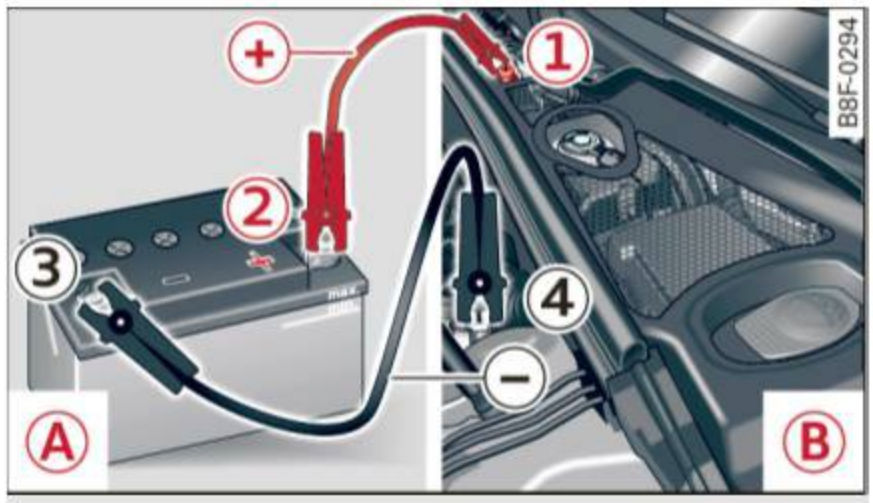


Fig. 291 Jump starting using a battery in another vehicle: A – providing current, B – drained

The procedure for connecting jump start cables that is described next is designed to help jump start your vehicle.

Vehicle with discharged battery:

- ▸ Turn off lights and accessories, move automatic transmission lever to N (Neutral) or P (Park) and set parking brake.

Connecting the positive cable (red) to the positive terminal

- ▸ Open the cover on the positive terminal ⇨ *fig. 290*.

1. Secure one end of the positive cable (red) to the jump start pin (1) ⇨ *fig. 291* (pin under the cover = “plus”) on the vehicle that needs to be started (B).
2. Secure the other end of the positive cable (red) to the positive terminal (2) on the battery providing the current (A).

Connecting the negative cable (black) to the negative terminal

3. Secure one end of the negative cable (black) to the negative terminal (3) on the battery that is providing the current (A).
4. Secure the other end of the negative cable (black) to the jump start pin (4) (hex head pin = “negative”) on the vehicle that needs to be started (B).

Starting the engine

- ▸ Start the engine on the vehicle providing the jump start (A) and let it run at idle.
- ▸ Now start the engine on the vehicle with the drained battery (B).
- ▸ If the engine does not start, stop the starting procedure after 10 seconds and then repeat it after approximately 30 seconds.
- ▸ Remove the cables when the engines are running. Remove them in reverse order from the way they were installed.
- ▸ Close the cover on the positive terminal.

The battery is vented to the outside to prevent gases from entering the vehicle interior. Make sure that the jumper clamps are well connected with their *metal parts in full contact* with the battery terminals.

WARNING

To avoid serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle, heed all warnings and instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer. If in doubt, call for road service.

– Jumper cables must be long enough so that the vehicles do not touch. ▸

– When connecting jumper cables, make sure that they cannot get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment.
– Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 271*.

Note

Improper hook-up of jumper cables can ruin the generator.

– Always connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+), and NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) ground post of the battery manager control unit.
– Check that all screw plugs on the battery cells are screwed in firmly. If not, tighten plugs prior to connecting clamp on negative battery terminal.
– Please note that the procedure for connecting a jumper cable as described above applies specifically to the case of your vehicle being jump started. When you are giving a jump start to another vehicle, do *not* connect the negative **(–)** cable to the negative **(–)** terminal on the discharged battery ④ ⇨ *fig. 291*. Instead, securely connect the negative **(–)** cable to either a solid metal component that is firmly bolted to the engine block or to the engine block itself. If the battery that is being charged does not vent to the outside, escaping battery gas could ignite and explode!

Towing with a tow truck

General hints

Your Audi requires special handling for towing.

The following information is to be used by commercial tow truck operators who know how to operate their equipment safely.

– **Never tow your Audi. Towing will cause damage to the engine and transmission.**
– **Never wrap the safety chains or winch cables around the brake lines.**
– **To prevent unnecessary damage, your Audi must be transported with a flat bed truck.**
– **To load the vehicle on to the flat bed, use the towing loop found in the vehicle tools and attach to the front or rear anchorage** ⇨ *page 329* and ⇨ *page 330*.

WARNING

A vehicle being towed is not safe for passengers. Never allow anyone to ride in a vehicle being towed, for any reason.

Front towing loop



Fig. 292 Front bumper: removing the cap



Fig. 293 Front bumper: installing the towing loop

The thread for the towing loop is on the right side of the front bumper behind a cap.

▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit.
▸ Press the cap inward with brief, forceful pressure ⇨ *fig. 292*. The cap will loosen from the bumper.
▸ Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops ⇨ *fig. 293* and then tighten it with a wheel wrench.
▸ After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit. ▶

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and that could cause an accident.

Rear towing loop



Fig. 294 Rear bumper: removing the cap



Fig. 295 Rear bumper: installing the towing loop

The threaded opening is located in the bumper on the right rear side.

- ▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit.
- ▸ Press the cap inward with brief, forceful pressure ⇨ *fig. 294*. The cap will loosen from the bumper.
- ▸ Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops ⇨ *fig. 295* and then tighten it with a wheel wrench.
- ▸ After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and that could cause an accident.

Loading the vehicle onto a flat bed truck



Fig. 296 Vehicle on flat bed truck

Front hook up

- ▸ Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
- ▸ Attach the winch hook to the front towline eye previously installed.

Rear hook up

- ▸ Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
- ▸ Attach the winch hook to the rear towline eye previously installed.

Tips

Check carefully to make sure the hook-up is secure before moving the car up the flatbed truck ramp.

Vehicle transport

Whenever you have your vehicle transported, be sure to note the following:

Note

Mount the tie-down chains/cables over the running surface (circumference) of the tires. Never secure the vehicle by the axle, the suspension struts or the front or rear towline eye. For technical reasons, the pressure in the suspension struts may change during the transport and this will adversely affect vehicle handling.

Raising the vehicle

Lifting with workshop hoist and with floor jack

The vehicle may only be lifted at the lifting points illustrated.

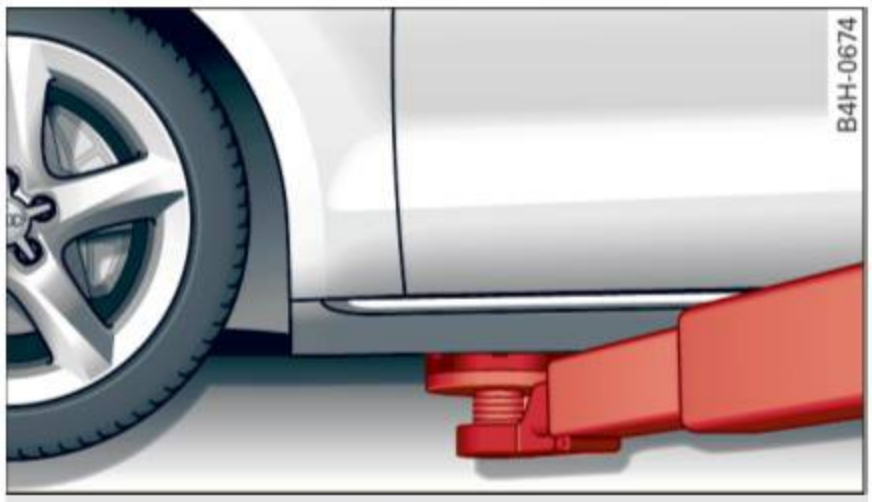


Fig. 297 Front lifting point

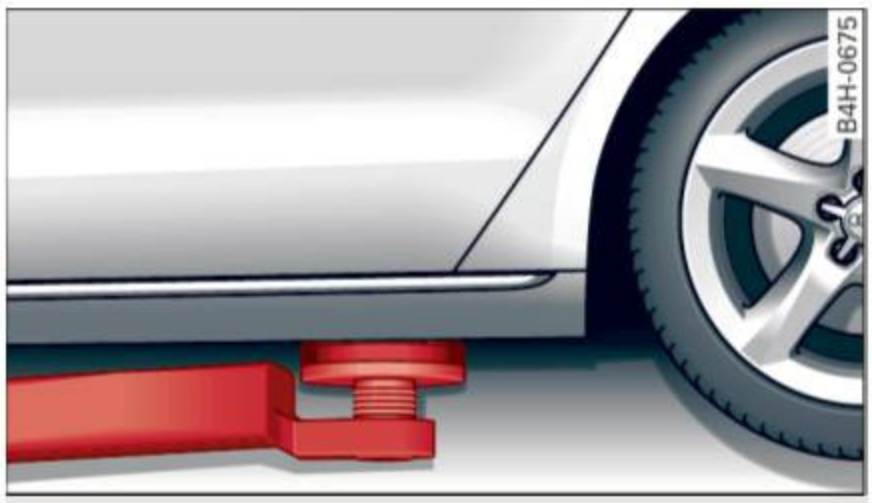


Fig. 298 Rear lifting point

- ▸ Read and heed WARNING ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Activate the vehicle jack mode in the MMI: CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Air susp.: jack mode** > **On**.
- ▸ Locate lifting points ⇨ *fig. 297* and ⇨ *fig. 298*.
- ▸ Adjust lifting arms of workshop hoist or floor jack to match vehicle lifting points.
- ▸ Insert a rubber pad between the floor jack/ workshop hoist and the lifting points.

The vehicle jack mode must be activated so that the automatic adjustment of the Adaptive Air Suspension does not make it more difficult to raise the vehicle with the floor jack.

If you must lift your vehicle with a floor jack to work underneath, be sure the vehicle is safely supported on stands intended for this purpose.

Front lifting point

The lifting point is located on the floor pan reinforcement about at the same level as the jack mounting point ⇨ *fig. 297*. **Do not lift the vehicle at the vertical sill reinforcement.**

Rear lifting point

The lifting point is located on the vertical reinforcement of the lower sill for the on-board jack ⇨ *fig. 298*.

Lifting with vehicle jack

Refer to ⇨ *page 315*.

⚠ WARNING

- To reduce the risk of serious injury and vehicle damage.
  - Always lift the vehicle only at the special workshop hoist and floor jack lift points illustrated ⇨ *fig. 297* and ⇨ *fig. 298*.
  - Failure to lift the vehicle at these points could cause the vehicle to tilt or fall from a lift if there is a change in vehicle weight distribution and balance. This might happen, for example, when heavy components such as the engine block or transmission are removed.
- When removing heavy components like these, anchor vehicle to hoist or add corresponding weights to maintain the center of gravity. Otherwise, the vehicle might tilt or slip off the hoist, causing serious personal injury.

Note

- Be aware of the following points before lifting the vehicle:
  - **The vehicle should never be lifted or jacked up from underneath the engine oil pan, the transmission housing, the front or rear axle or the body side members. This could lead to serious damage.**
  - **To avoid damage to the underbody or chassis frame, a rubber pad must be inserted between the floor jack and the lift points.**

▸

- Before driving over a workshop hoist, check that the vehicle weight does not exceed the permissible lifting capacity of the hoist.
- Before driving over a workshop hoist, ensure that there is sufficient clearance between the hoist and low parts of the vehicle.

Technical data

Vehicle specifications

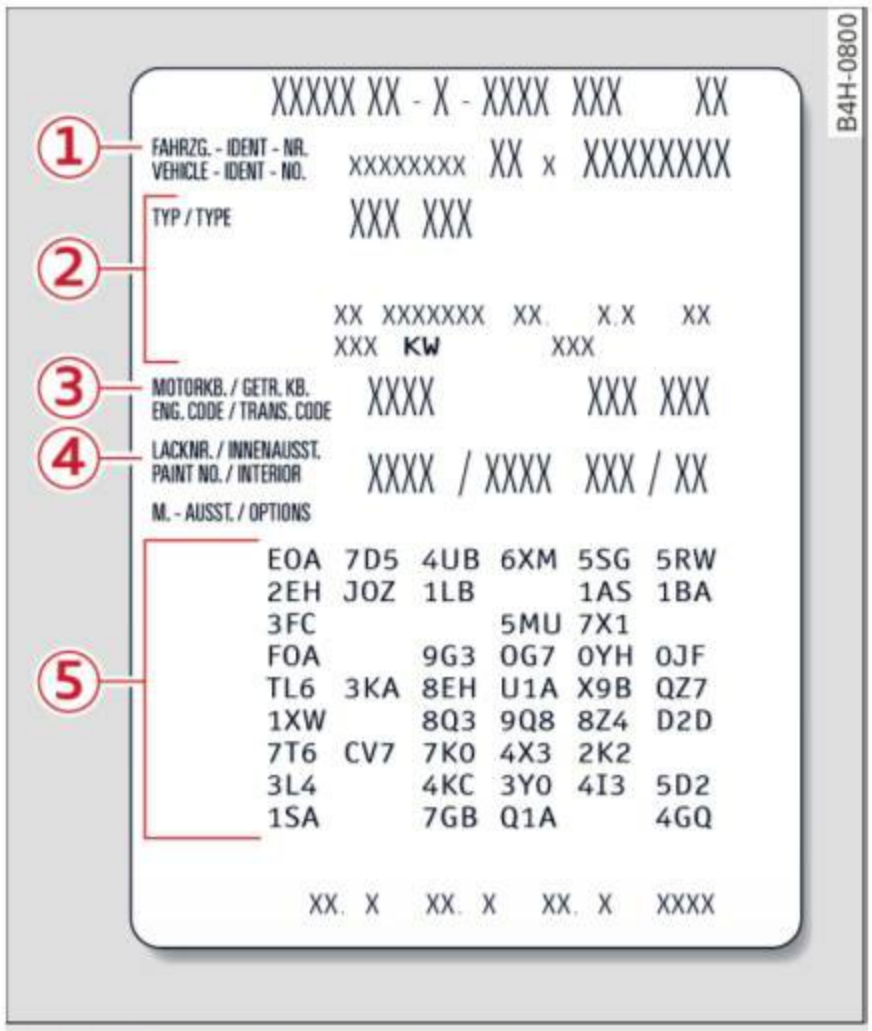


Fig. 299 Vehicle identification label

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The VIN number is located in the following places:

– In the Infotainment system: select: the CAR function button > **Car systems** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **VIN number**.
– on the vehicle identification label
– under the windshield on the driver's side

Vehicle identification label

The vehicle identification label ⇨ *fig. 299* is located in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover in the spare wheel well.

The information of the vehicle identification label can also be found in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

The sticker contains the following vehicle data:

① Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
② Vehicle type, engine output, transmission
③ Engine and transmission codes
④ Paint and interior codes
⑤ Optional equipment numbers

Safety compliance sticker

The safety compliance sticker is your assurance that your new vehicle complies with all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards which were in effect at the time the vehicle was manufactured. You can find this sticker on the door jamb on the driver's side. It shows the month and year of production and the vehicle identification number of your vehicle (perforation) as well as the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).

High voltage warning label

The high voltage warning label is located in the engine compartment next to the engine hood release. The spark ignition system complies with the Canadian standard ICES-002.

Notes about technical data

The values may differ for some markets depending on equipment installed in certain markets and the measuring methods.

Please note that the specifications listed in the vehicle documentation always take precedence.

Tips

Missing technical data was not available at the time of printing.

Dimensions

	Length (in (mm))	Width (in (mm))	Width across the mirrors (in (mm))	Height at curb weight (in (mm))
A8 L	207.3 (5,265)	76.7 (1,949)	83.1 (2,111)	57.9 (1,471)
A8	202.2 (5,135)	76.7 (1,949)	83.1 (2,111)	57.5 (1,460)
S8	202.6 (5,147)	76.7 (1,949)	83.1 (2,111)	57.4 (1,458)

When driving on poor roads, by curbs and on steep ramps, make sure that low-hanging components such as the spoiler and exhaust system do not come into contact with these or they could be damaged. This especially applies to vehicles that are equipped with adaptive air suspension and when the vehicle is at full load.

Capacities

	Approximate capacities
Fuel tank	21.7 gal (82.0 L)
Windshield and headlight washer system*	5.3 qt (5.0 L)

Weights

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for front and rear are listed on a sticker on the door jamb on the driver's side.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating includes the weight of the basic vehicle plus full fuel tank, oil and coolant, plus maximum load, which includes passenger weight (150 lbs/68 kg per designated seating position) and luggage weight ⇨ ⚠.

Gross Axle Weight Rating

The Gross Axle Weight Rating is the maximum load that can be applied at each axle of the vehicle ⇨ ⚠.

Vehicle capacity weight

The vehicle capacity weight (max. load) is listed either on the driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap.

⚠ WARNING

– The actual Gross Axle Weight Rating at the front and rear axles should not exceed the permissible weights, and their combination must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.
– Exceeding permissible weight ratings can result in vehicle damage, accidents and personal injury.

Note

– The vehicle capacity weight figures apply when the load is distributed evenly in the vehicle (passengers and luggage). When transporting a heavy load in the luggage compartment, carry the load as near to the rear axle as possible so that the vehicle's handling is not impaired.
– Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle loads or the maximum gross vehicle weight. Always remember that the vehicle's handling will be affected by the extra load. Therefore, adjust your speed accordingly.
– Always observe local regulations.

Gasoline engines

A8 3.0, 6 cylinder

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	333 @ 5500 - 6500
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	326 @ 2900 - 5300
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	182.7 (2995)
Engine oil with filter change[1)]		
Fuel	**Premium unleaded (91 AKI)**, ⇨ *page 267, Gasoline*	

A8 4.0, 8 cylinder

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	450 @ 5300 - 6000
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	444 @ 1500 - 5250
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	243.6 (3993)
Engine oil with filter change[1)]		
Fuel	**Premium unleaded (91 AKI)**, ⇨ *page 267, Gasoline*	

S8 4.0, 8 cylinder

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	520 @ 5800 - 6400
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	481 @ 1700 - 5500
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	243.6 (3993)
Engine oil with filter change[1)]		
Fuel	**Premium unleaded (91 AKI)**, ⇨ *page 267, Gasoline*	

S8 plus 4.0, 8 cylinder

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	605 @ 6100 - 6800
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	517 @ 1750 - 6000
Maximum torque SAE net with over boost	lb-ft @ rpm	553 @ 2500 - 5500
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	243.6 (3993)
Engine oil with filter change[1)]		
Fuel	**Premium unleaded (91 AKI)**, ⇨ *page 267, Gasoline*	

[1)] For specific engine oil capacities, please see the most current information for the USA at http://www.audiusa.com/help/maintenance or for Canada at http://www.audi.ca/ca/brand/ en/your_audi/audi_services_and/Care_and_Maintenance/schedule.html or call 800-822-2834.

Consumer information

Warranty coverages

Your Audi is covered by the following warranties:

– *New Vehicle Limited Warranty*
– *Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation*
– *Emissions Control System Warranty*
– *Emissions Performance Warranty*
– *California Emissions Control Warranty (USA vehicles only)*
– *California Emissions Performance Warranty (USA vehicles only)*

Detailed information regarding your warranties can be found in your **Warranty & Maintenance booklet**.

Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you plan to take your vehicle outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that:

– unleaded fuels for vehicles with catalytic converter may not be available;
– fuel may have a considerably lower octane rating. Improper fuel may cause engine damage;
– service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools or testing equipment;
– replacement parts may not be readily available.
– Navigation systems for vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries outside North America.

Note

Audi cannot be responsible for mechanical damage that could result from inadequate fuel, service or parts availability.

Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature

Audi Official Factory Service Manuals and Literature are published as soon as possible after model introduction. Service manuals and literature are available to order from the Audi Technical Literature Ordering Center at:

www.audi.techliterature.com

Maintenance

General

Your vehicle has been designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum. However, a certain amount of regular maintenance is still necessary to assure your vehicle's safety, economy and reliability. For detailed vehicle maintenance consult your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

Under difficult operating conditions, for example at extremely low outside temperatures, in very dusty regions, when towing a trailer very frequently, etc., some service work should be performed between the intervals specified. This applies particularly to:

– oil changes, and
– cleaning or replacing the air filter.

For the sake of the environment

By regularly maintaining your vehicle, you help make sure that emission standards are maintained, thus minimizing adverse effects on the environment.

Important considerations for you and your vehicle

The increasing use of electronics, sophisticated fuel injection and emission control systems, and the generally increasing technical complexity of ▶

today's automobiles, have steadily reduced the scope of maintenance and repairs which can be carried out by vehicle owners. **Also, safety and environmental** concerns place very strict limits on the nature of repairs and adjustments to engine and transmission parts which an owner can perform.

Maintenance, adjustments and repairs usually require special tools, testing devices and other equipment available to specially trained workshop personnel in order to assure proper performance, reliability and safety of the vehicle and its many systems.

Improper maintenance, adjustments and repairs can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and even void your vehicle warranty. Therefore, proof of servicing in accordance with the maintenance schedule may be a condition for upholding a possible warranty claim made within the warranty period.

Above all, operational safety can be adversely affected, creating unnecessary risks for you and your passengers.

If in doubt about any servicing, have it done by your authorized Audi dealer or any other properly equipped and qualified workshop. We strongly urge you to give your authorized Audi dealer the opportunity to perform all scheduled maintenance and necessary repairs. Your dealer has the facilities, original parts and trained specialists to keep your vehicle running properly.

Performing limited maintenance yourself

The following pages describe a limited number of procedures which can be performed on your vehicle with ordinary tools, should the need arise and trained personnel be unavailable. Before performing any of these procedures, always thoroughly read all of the applicable text and carefully follow the instructions given. Always rigorously observe the **WARNINGS** provided.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ **and** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 271.*

⚠ WARNING

- Serious personal injury may occur as a result of improperly performed maintenance, adjustments or repairs.
- Always be extremely careful when working on the vehicle. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and general common sense. Never risk personal injury.
- Do not attempt any of the maintenance, checks or repairs described on the following pages if you are not fully familiar with these or other procedures with respect to the vehicle, or are uncertain how to proceed.
- Do not do any work without the proper tools and equipment. Have the necessary work done by your authorized Audi dealer or another properly equipped and qualified workshop.
- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. It is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly - even when the engine is off. The radiator fan switches on automatically when the coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops.
- Always switch off the ignition before anyone gets under the vehicle.
- Always support your vehicle with safety stands if it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is not adequate for this purpose and could collapse causing serious personal injury.
- If you must work underneath the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, always make sure the vehicle is on level ground, that the wheels are always securely blocked and that the engine cannot be started.
- Always make sure the transmission selector lever (automatic transmission) is in "P" (Park position) and the park brake is applied.

▶

For the sake of the environment

– Changing the engine settings will adversely affect emission levels. This is detrimental to the environment and increases fuel consumption.
– Always observe environmental regulations when disposing of old engine oil, used brake fluid, dirty engine coolant, spent batteries or worn out tires.
– Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Accessories and technical changes

Additional accessories and parts replacement

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer before purchasing accessories.

Your vehicle incorporates the latest safety design features ensuring a high standard of active and passive safety.

This safety could be compromised by non-approved changes to the vehicle. For this reason, if parts have to be replaced, please observe the following points when installing additional accessories:

Approved Audi accessories and genuine Audi parts are available from authorized Audi dealers.

These dealers also have the necessary facilities, tools and trained specialists to install the parts and accessories properly.

WARNING

Using the wrong spare parts or using non-approved accessories can cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.
– Use only accessories expressly approved by Audi and genuine Audi spare parts
– These parts and accessories have been specially designed to be used on your vehicle.
– Do not use license plate brackets in the front area that are different from the one installed at the factory, or add additional license plate brackets.
– Never install accessories such as telephone cradles or beverage holders on airbag covers or within the airbag deployment zones. Doing so will increase the risk of injury if airbags are triggered in an accident!
– Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 271*.

Note

– If items other than genuine Audi spare parts, add-on equipment and accessory items are used or if repair work is not performed according to specified methods, this can result in severe damage to your vehicle's engine and body (such as corrosion) and adversely affect your vehicle's warranty.
– The innovative aluminium concept of your Audi A8 means that all servicing, repairs or other work on the vehicle body must be carried out exclusively by an Audi workshop.
– If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.
– The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage which occurs due to failure to comply with these stipulations.

Technical Modifications

Our guidelines must be complied with when technical modifications are made.

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer **before** starting work on any modifications. ▶

This will help ensure that vehicle function, performance and safety are not impaired ⇨ ⚠.

Attempting to work on electronic components and the software used with them can cause malfunctions. Because of the way electronic components are interconnected with each other, such malfunctions can also have an adverse affect on other systems that are not directly involved. This means that you risk both a substantial reduction in the operational safety of your vehicle and an increased wear of vehicle parts ⇨ ⚠.

Authorized Audi dealers will perform this work in a professional and competent manner or, in special cases, refer you to a professional company that specializes in such modifications.

⚠ WARNING

Improper repairs and modifications can change the way vehicle systems work and cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.

Note

If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.

Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunication or Electronic Systems

Radio Frequency Devices and Radiocommunication Equipment User Manual Notice.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment.

Devices

The following devices each comply with FCC Part 15.19, FCC 15.21 and RSS-Gen Issue 1:

– Adaptive cruise control
– Audi side assist
– Cell phone package
– Convenience key
– Electronic immobilizer
– Head phones
– HomeLink universal remote control
– Remote control key
– S8 plus: tire pressure monitoring system

FCC Part 15.19

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC Part 15.21

CAUTION:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

RSS-Gen Issue 1

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) this device may not cause interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

4H0012721BD

A

A/C (automatic climate control) 70
Accessories 60, 338
Active lane assist (lane departure assist) . . 102
  Cleaning the camera area 307
  Messages 103
Adapter cable (Audi music interface) 185
Adaptive air suspension/sport 110
Adaptive cruise control 94
  Cleaning the sensors 307
  Messages 101
Adjusting the sound 204
Adjusting the sound (tone) 195
Adjusting the temperature (automatic climate control system) 71
Adjusting the volume
  RSE 194
Airbag 226
Airbag system 234, 244
  Care 239
  Children 249
  Child restraints 250
  Components (front airbags) 232
  Danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat 227
  Disposal 239
  Front airbags 230, 231
  Important information 226
  Knee airbags 240
  Monitoring 236
  PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 237
  Repairs 239
  Safety instructions 238
  Side airbags 243
  Side curtain airbags 245
  Weight-sensing mat 250
Aircraft
  Transporting your vehicle 330
Air distribution (automatic climate control) . 71
Air pressure (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) 302
Air suspension 110
Alignment pin (changing the wheel) 312
All season tires 298
Alternative route 172
Anti-freeze
  Windshield washer system 281
Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) 126
Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) 126
Armrest 55
Audi connect 157
  Data connection 161
  Data protection 163
  Services (overview) 159
  Setup 157
Audi music interface 185
  Adapter cable 185
  Connecting and disconnecting 185
  Screen settings 190
Audio player
  refer to Bluetooth 183
Audio track (DVD) 190
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 336
AUTO
  Automatic climate control system 70
  Automatic headlights 43
Auto Lock (central locking) 27
Automatic belt retractor 221
Automatic climate control 69
Automatic traffic rerouting 172
Automatic transmission (tiptronic) 83
  Emergency mode 87
  Hill descent control 86
  Overboost 87
  Parking lock emergency release 88
Automatic wipe/wash system 50
Auto Safety Hotline 214
Average economy 12
Average speed 12

B

BACK button 134
Balance (sound) 205
Belt tensioners 216, 224
Blended gasoline 267
Blower (automatic climate control) 71
Bluetooth
  Audio player 183
  Connecting a cell phone 146
Booster seats 256

Brake fluid
Checking the brake fluid level 279
Brakes 128
Brake fluid 279
Electromechanical parking brake 81
New brake pads 128
Braking
Brake assist 126
Emergency braking function 81
Worn brake pads 23
Braking guard 94, 99
Messages 101
Break-in period
Tires 73
Breaking in
New brake pads 128
New engine 73
New tires 290
Browsing through album covers 190
Bulbs 326
Buttons
Multifunction steering wheel 11

C

Cable (Audi music interface) 185
California Proposition 65 Warning 272
Battery specific 280
Call 149
Call list 148
Call options 155
Capacities
Fuel tank 334
Washer fluid reservoir 334
Car carrier
Transporting your vehicle 330
Care 306
Cargo area
refer to Luggage compartment 213
Caring for and cleaning leather 309
Catalytic converter 271
CD
refer to Media 180, 189
Cell phone
Playing music 183
also refer to Telephone 146
Center armrest 55
Center console lighting 47
Central locking 27
Central locking switch 31
Convenience key 30
Emergency locking 32
Luggage compartment lid 33
Remote control key 30
Setting 32
Certification 339
Changing engine oil 277
Changing the battery 198
Charging and changing the battery 198
Child restraints 266
Danger of using child restraints in the front seat 227
Child restraint system anchors 261
Child safety 248
Guidance fixtures for lower anchorages .. 262
Child safety lock 36
Child safety seat 253
Child safety seats
Convertible child seats 255
Infant seats 254
Installing a child restraint using the LATCH system 263
LATCH system 263
Lower anchorages 262
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 263
Safety instructions 251
Child seats 254
Securing 258
Cleaning 306
Cleaning/removing ice from windows 308
Cleaning Alcantara 309
Cleaning artificial leather 309
Cleaning carbon parts 308, 309
Cleaning controls 308
Cleaning decorative parts and trim 308
Cleaning displays 308
Cleaning exhaust tail pipes 308
Cleaning plastic parts 308
Cleaning tail lights 307
Cleaning textiles 309
Clock 16

4H0012721BD

Closing
Hood 273
Panorama glass roof 39
Sunroof 38
Sun shade (panoramic sunroof) 40
Sunshade (sliding/tilting sunroof) 38
Windows 37
Closing/opening 30
Closing aid (doors) 27
Cockpit (overview) 7
Color number 333
Coming home 46
Compartments 63
Compass in the mirror 52
Compliance 339
Conference call 149
Connecting and disconnecting an MP3 player 183
Connections
refer to Media 180, 189
Consumer information 336
Consumer Information 214
Consumption (fuel) 333
Contacting NHTSA 214
Contacts 150
Importing/exporting 153
Convenience key
Unlocking/locking 30
Cooling mode (automatic climate control) . . 70
Cooling system
Checking/adding coolant 277
Coolant temperature indicator 9
Cover Flow
refer to Browsing through album covers . 190
Cup holders 63
Current economy 12

D

Data encryption 196
Data recorder 132
Date 204
Date display 16, 204
Daylight saving time 204
Daytime running lights 43
Declaration of compliance 339
Defrosting (windows) 71
DEF (instrument cluster) 10
Demo mode
refer to Presentation mode 172
Determining correct load limit 297
Digital compass 52
Digital Rights Management 180
Dimensions 334
Directory
refer to Contacts 150
Display
Brightness 196, 206
Settings 190, 196
Distance 12
Doors
Child safety lock 36
Closing aid 27
Emergency locking 32
Driver information system 12
Indicator lights 17
Service interval display 282
Driver seating position 208
Drives
refer to Media 180, 189
Drive select 110
Driving safely 207
Driving through water 73
Driving time 12
DVD
Changer 182
Drive 181
Full screen display 190
also refer to Media 180, 189
Dynamic steering 110, 129
Dynamic volume
refer to System volume 205

E

Economy tips (efficiency program) 13
Economy (fuel) 12
Efficiency program 13
Electromechanical parking brake 81
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) 126
Electronic immobilizer 28
Electronic speed limiter 26

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 126
Emergency assistance 312
Emergency braking function 81
Emergency flashers 46
Emergency locking the front passenger's door 32
Emergency operation
Front passenger's door 32
Fuel filler door 270
Luggage compartment lid 36
Panoramic sunroof 40
Sliding/tilting sunroof 39
Sun shade (roof) 40
Emergency release
Parking lock 88
Emergency starting 327
Emissions data 333
Energy consumers (efficiency program) 13
Energy management 130
Engine
Start/Stop-System 78
Starting/stopping 76
Starting with jumper cables 327
Engine compartment 271
Opening/closing the hood 273
Engine oil 274
Changing 277
Specification and viscosity 274
Engine sound 110
Entering a destination 165, 169
Entering an address 165
From the map 166
Last destinations 168
Starting point (presentation mode) 172
Entering letters (speller) 137
Entering numbers/symbols (speller) 137
Entry assistance 58, 76
Environment
Catalytic converter 271
Environmentally-friendly/economical driving 74
Fueling 269
Proper disposal of drained engine oil 277
Unleaded fuel 267
EPC (engine control) 23
ESN
refer to Serial number (radio) 178
Event Data Recorder (EDR) 132
Exterior lighting 43
Exterior mirrors 47

F

Factory default settings
Multi Media Interface 206
RSE 196
Fader (sound) 205
Fastening
Booster seats 256
Convertible child safety seats 255
Infant seats 254
Fast forwarding/rewinding (audio/video file) 190
Fast forwarding (audio/video file) 190
Favorite (navigation) 168, 172
File format (media) 186
Floor mats 212
Folding table 62
Foot pedals 212
Free text search
Telephone 151
Freeze protection
Coolant additive 277
Front airbags
Description 230
Frontal collisions and the laws of physics .. 219
Front passenger seat adjustment 58
Front seats
Adjusting 209
Child restraints in the front seat 227
also refer to Seats 54
Fuel
Additives 267
Blended gasoline 267
Current economy 12
Economy 333
Fuel filler neck 268
Fuel gauge 9, 10
Fuel tank capacity 334
Gasoline 267
Gasoline additives 268
Octane rating 267
Recommendation 267
Saving fuel 74, 110

4H0012721BD

Fueling
Fuel filler door 269
Fuel gauge 10
Fuel tank capacity 334
Full screen display (DVD) 190
Function buttons 134
Fuses 322

G

Garage door opener (HomeLink) 41
Garment hooks 63
Gas discharge lamps 326
Gas station message 172
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 285
Glove compartment 63
Valet parking function 40
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 334

H

HD radio (digital radio) 178
Head-up Display 16
Headlights
Cleaning 307
Headlight range control 43
Washer system 50
Headphones 197
Connections (RSE) 199
Headphones connected by cable (RSE) . . . 199
Wireless headphones (RSE) 197
Head restraints 210
Adjusting 210
Heating 69
Heavy clothing and safety belts 220
Hex socket 312
High beams 44
Hill descent control 86
Hill hold assist 82
also refer to Hill hold assist 82
Hold assist (hill) 82
Home address 172
HomeLink (garage door opener) 41
Horn 7

I

Ignition 76
Imbalance (wheels) 291
Immobilizer 10, 28
Importing and exporting (contacts) 153
Improperly worn safety belts 224
Indicator lights 17
Infant seats 254
Inflation pressure (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) 302
Inflation pressure (tires) 293
Information
Audi music interface 185
Infotainment display 135
Input
Using the MMI touch 136
Using the speller 137
Input level (media) 190
Inspection interval 282
Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage 265
Instrument cluster 9
Interior lighting 46
Interior rearview mirror 48
Intermittent mode (windshield wipers) 50
Internet
refer to Audi connect 157
iPod
refer to Audi music interface 185

J

Jukebox 182
Jump-starting 327
Jump start cable 328

K

Key 28
Key not recognized 78
Kick-down (automatic transmission) 86
Knee airbags 240

L

LATCH 261
Leaving home 46

Lifting jack 315, 316
Light
Coming/Leaving home 46
Daytime running lights 43
Headlight range control 43
Low beam 43
Rear fog lights 43
Side marker lights 43
Light/rain sensor
Headlights 43
Intermittent mode (windshield wipers) ... 50
Lighting
Exterior 43
Interior 46
Lights
Ambient lighting 46
Interior/reading lights 46
Listening to music
refer to Media 180, 189
Listening to the radio
MMI control panel 177
RSE 201
Locking/unlocking 30
Low beams 43
Luggage compartment 65
12 volt socket 60
Storing cargo correctly 213
Stowing luggage 213
Valet parking function 40
Luggage compartment lid 33, 36
Opening from the inside in an emergency . 36
Luggage rack 64
Lumbar support 55

M

Maintenance 336
Maintenance intervals 282
Making emergency call 150
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 25
Map
Online 171
Operating 170
Settings 172
Massage function 54, 55
Mechanical key 28, 29
Mechanical key (replacement key) 28
Media 189
Audi music interface 185
Bluetooth audio player 183
Drives (MMI) 180
Format 186
Jukebox 182
Restrictions 180
RSE 202
Supported formats 186
Wi-Fi media player 184
Media drives
RSE 200
Memory capacity
Directory 153, 154
Jukebox 182
Memory card
SD card reader 181
Memory function 59
MENU button 134
Menu language
refer to Setting the language 205
Mirror compass 52
Mirrors 47
MMI
refer to Multi Media Interface 134
MMI control panel 138
MMI touch 136
Model plate 333
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System .. 236
Multifunction steering wheel 11
Multi Media Interface 134
Mute (muting) 134, 194
Muting (mute) 134, 194
myAudi
Finding a destination 167

N

Name tag 154
Navigating 165
MMI control panel 165
RSE 200
Navigation
Address input 165
Map display 170
Online destinations 167
Route plan 174

4H0012721BD

Starting/canceling route guidance 170
also refer to Entering a destination 165
also refer to Map 170
Network connection (Wi-Fi) 160
Next/previous track 190
NHTSA
Contacting 214
Night vision assist 107
Cleaning the camera 307
Number of seats 218

O

Occupant seating positions 208
Octane rating 267
Odometer 10
OFF (automatic climate control 70
Oil
refer to Engine oil 274
Oil change interval 282
On-board computer 12
On-Board Diagnostic System (OBD) 25
On/Off knob
MMI control panel 134
RSE 193
Online services
refer to Audi connect 157
Opening 27
Fuel filler door 269
Hood 273
Luggage compartment lid 34, 36
Panorama glass roof 39
Sunroof 38
Sun shade (panoramic sunroof) 40
Sunshade (sliding/tilting sunroof) 38
Windows 37
Operating
Multifunction steering wheel 11
Multi Media Interface 135
RSE 193
Overboost (automatic transmission) 87
Overview
Menus and symbols 138
Overview (Cockpit) 7

P

Paint damage 308
Paint number 333
Panorama glass roof 39
Panoramic sunroof
Sun shade 40
Parental control
DVD 190
Parental control (DVD) 196
Parking brake
refer to Electromechanical parking brake . 81
Parking system
Adjusting the display/warning tone 124
Cleaning the sensors/camera 307
Malfunction 124
Peripheral cameras 119
Trailer hitch 124
also refer to Parking systems 115, 116
Parking systems 114
Rearview camera 116
Parking (valet parking function) 40
Parts replacement 338
Pass-through 66
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 237
Passenger protection 216
Pause (audio/video file) 190
Pedals 212
Phone book
refer to Contacts 150
Physical principles of a frontal collision . . . 219
Point of interest search 167
Polishing 308
Pollutant filter (automatic A/C system) 69
Pregnant women
Special considerations when wearing a safety belt 223
Pre sense 216
Presentation mode 172
Pressure (tires) 301
Preventative passenger protection (pre sense) 216
Prewarming 76
Prompts (settings)
refer to Voice guidance 172

Q

quattro (all wheel drive) 130
Selective wheel torque control 126

R

Radio clock 16
Rain/light sensor
Headlights 43
Intermittent mode (windshield wipers) . . . 50
Range (tank level) 12
Reading lights 46
Rear fog lights 43
Rear lid
refer to Luggage compartment lid 33
Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) 193
Rear seats 55
Rearview camera
refer to Parking systems 115, 116
Rearview mirror 48
Rear window defogger 71
Rear window sunshade 49
Recirculation mode (automatic climate control) 70
Recuperation 12
Refrigerator
Cleaning 309
Operating 67
Refueling 268
Remote control
refer to Remote control key 28
Remote control key 28
Remote control operation
Garage door opener (HomeLink) 41
Repair manuals 336
Repairs
Airbag system 239
Replacement key 28
Replacing
Light bulbs 326
Reporting Safety Defects 214, 215
Reset button (trip odometer) 10
Reset (restart) 196
Residual heat (deluxe automatic climate control) 71
Restart (reset) 196
Retractor 221
Reverse gear 83
Rewinding (audio/video file) 190
Rims 298
Cleaning 307
Road noise compensation 204
Roof load 64
Roof rack 64
Route
refer to Route plan 169
Route criteria 172
Route guidance
refer to Navigation 165
Route list 174
Route plan
Editing 169
Route list 174
Settings 174
Storing 169

S

Safe driving habits 207
Safety 207
Airbag system 226
Belts 218
Cargo 213
Correct seating position 208
Pedal area 212
Telephone 146
Safety belt position 222
Safety belts 218, 221
Cleaning 308
Securing child safety seats 258
Safety belt warning light 218
Safety equipment 207
Safety features for occupant restraint and protection 207
Safety instructions
for side curtain airbags 247
for using child safety seats 251
for using safety belts 220
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . 238
Screwdriver 312
SD card reader 181
Seat adjustment
Head restraints 210

4H0012721BD

Seat heating/ventilation 71
Seating position
Driver 208
Front passenger 209
Incorrect seat position 211
Occupants 208
Rear passengers 210
Seats
Adjusting the front seats 54
Adjusting the rear seats 55
Cleaning 309
Convenience side view 60
Correct seating position 208
Massage function 54
Seat symmetry 60
Seats (number) 218
Selecting a source
MMI control panel 189
Selector lever
Selector lever position 83
Serial number (radio) 178
Service and disposal
Safety belt pretensioner 225
Service interval display 282
Settings
Directory 156
Media 190
System (MMI) 205
Telephone 154
Voice recognition system 205
Setting the frequency band 177
Setting the language 205
Shades 40, 49
Shift paddles 86
Ship (transporting your vehicle) 330
Shuffle (media) 190
Side airbags
Description 243
Side assist 104
Cleaning the sensors 307
also refer to Side assist 104
Side curtain airbags 245
Description 245
Safety instructions 247
Side marker lights 43
SIM card reader 157
Sirius (satellite radio) 177
Ski bag 66
Sliding/tilting sunroof
Emergency closing 39
Emergency operation 40
Snow chains 298
Socket
115 volt 61
12 volt 60
Software update 196
also refer to System update (MMI) 205
Software version 196
Software (MMI)
Update 206
Version 206
Solar operation (automatic climate control system) 72
Sources of information about child restraints and their use 266
Spare tires 319
Spare tire (compact spare tire) 319
Speed-dependent volume increase 204
Speed warning system 92
Speller 137
Sport differential 110
Start/Stop-System 78
Start/Stop system 78
Messages 80
Starting/stopping the engine 79
Switching off/on 80
Station list 177
Steering 129
Steering wheel 75
Shift paddles 86
Steering wheel heating 72
also refer to Multifunction steering wheel . 11
Steps for determining correct load limit . . . 297
Stopover 169
Storage compartments 63
Subwoofer (sound) 204
Sunroof 38
Panorama glass roof 39
Sun shade
Emergency operation (panoramic sunroof) 40
Panoramic sunroof 40
Sunshade
Rear window, rear doors 49

Sun visors 49
Swapping (telephone) 149
Switching the audio output off (RSE) 195
Symbols
refer to Indicator lights 17
SYNC (Automatic climate control) 71
System settings 204
System update (MMI) 206
System volume 205

T

Tachometer 9, 10
Technical data 333
Technical modifications 338
Telephone 14, 146, 149
Connecting 147
Dialing a number 148
Memory capacity (directory) 154
Settings 154
Storing a number 149
Temperature display
Coolant 9
Tether anchors 264
Tether strap 264
Tie-downs 65, 214
Time 204
tiptronic (automatic transmission) 83
Tire mobility kit 312
Tire Pressure Monitoring System 302
Tires 283
Low aspect ratio tires 299
quattro (all wheel drive) 130
Replacing 313
Service life 291
Tire pressure 293
Tire pressure monitoring system . . . 301, 302
Tire pressure table 294
Treadwear indicators 291
Unidirectional 285
Uniform tire quality grading 300
Tires and wheels
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . 285
Tires and vehicle load limits 295
TMC/TMCpro
refer to Traffic information (TMC) 175
Tone (sound)
refer to Adjusting the sound 204
Tool kit 312
Torn or frayed safety belts 220
touch
refer to MMI touch 136
Towing
Tow trucks 329
Towing loop 329, 330
TPMS (tire pressure monitoring system) . . . 301
Traffic information (TMC) 175
RSE 201
Switching reports on and off 176
Trailer mode 89
Notes 91
Trailer towing
Operating instructions 89
Parking system 124
Technical requirements 89, 90
Train (transporting your vehicle) 330
Transmission malfunction 87
Transport Canada 215
Transporting your vehicle 330
Trip odometer 10
Turn signal 44

U

Unfastening safety belts 223
Uniform tire quality grading 300
Unlocking/locking 30

V

Valet parking function 40
Vanity mirror 49, 50
Vehicle
Care/cleaning 306
Out of service 311
Raising 331
Vehicle battery 279
Charge level 130
Charging 280
Winter operation 280
Vehicle control modules 132
Vehicle data 333
Vehicle jack 312, 315, 316

4H0012721BD

Vehicle key 28
Vehicle tool kit 312
Vehicle transport 330
Ventilation 69
Version information 196, 206
Video image settings 190
Video playback combinations (RSE) 202
VIN 333
Voice guidance 172
Voice recognition system 141
  Settings 205
Volume 134
  Input level 190

W

Warning/Indicator lights
  Airbag system 236, 237
  PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 237
Warning lights
  refer to Indicator lights 17
Warning triangle 312
Warranty coverages 336
Washing matte finish paint 306
Weights 334
Wheel bolts
  Replacing a wheel 298
Wheels 283
  Cleaning 307
  Glossary of tire and loading terminology . 285
  Replacing 313
  Tires and vehicle load limits 295
Wheel wrench 312
Wi-Fi 160
  Media player 184
Window regulator 37
Windows
  Cleaning/removing ice 308
  Defrosting 71
Windshield
  Cleaning 50
  Defrosting 71
  also refer to Windshield 50
Windshield washer system 50, 281
  Reservoir capacity 334
Windshield wipers 50
Winter driving
  Snow chains 298
  Tires 298
Winter operation
  Cooling system 277
  Defrosting the windows 71
  Seat heating 71
  Steering wheel heating 72
  Vehicle battery 280
  Windshield washer system 281
Winter tires 298
Winter use
  Car washes 306
  Removing ice from windows 308
Wiper blades 51
Wireless headphones (RSE) 198

X

Xenon-Lights 326
Xenon plus headlights 43

Z

Zoom (map) 172

It has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. AUDI AG reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured. This Owner's Manual is based on the current data available when it was printed. Text, illustrations and specifications in this owner's manual are based on the most up-to-date information available at the time of printing, and shall not constitute a basis for liability claims.

These instructions may not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without written consent of AUDI AG. All rights reserved by AUDI AG.

For the sake of the environment

Printed on eco-friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

Owner's Manual
Englisch Nordamerika 05.2016
4H0012721BD



4H0012721BD

www.audi.com